BARĀHĪN-E-AḤMADIYYA
Barāhīn-e-Aḥmadiyya
Part V

Arguments in Support of
the Divine Origin of the Holy Quran—the Book of Allah—
& the Prophethood of the Holy Prophet Muhammad ṭas

by

Ḥaḍrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad

The Promised Messiah and Mahdi ṭas,
Founder of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community

Published under the auspices of Ḥaḍrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad,
Imam and Head of the Worldwide Ahmadiyya Muslim Community,
Fifth Successor to the Promised Messiah ṭas,
may Allah the Almighty help him with His powerful support

ISLAM INTERNATIONAL PUBLICATIONS LTD.
# CONTENTS

**About the Author** ............................................................................................................. ix  
**Introduction** .................................................................................................................. xi  
**Foreword** ......................................................................................................................... xvii  
**Publisher's Note** ............................................................................................................ xix  

Preface to *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part V* ................................................................. 1  
Help of God ....................................................................................................................... 11  
Signs of the True Faith .................................................................................................... 43  
Chapter One—True Nature of a Miracle and its Need ........................................... 79  
Chapter Two—Fulfilment of Prophecies ..................................................................... 87  
Appendix to *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part V* ............................................................. 221  
Laying to Rest Doubts by Sayyad Muḥammad ‘Abdul Wahid .................................. 455  
Reply to Doubts of Rashīd Aḥmad Gangoḥī ............................................................. 497  
Epilogue ............................................................................................................................... 543  
Miscellaneous Notes ...................................................................................................... 547  

**Glossary** ......................................................................................................................... 567  
**Biblical and Quranic Names** .................................................................................... 571  
**Index of the Verses of the Holy Quran** ................................................................. 575  
**Index of Aḥādīth** ......................................................................................................... 579  
**Revelations of the Promised Messiah** ................................................................... 581  
**Index of the Topics** .................................................................................................... 589
Hadrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad of Qadian

The Promised Messiah & Mahdi"
Ḥaḍrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad as was born in 1835 in Qadian, India. From his early life, he dedicated himself to prayer and the study of the Holy Quran and other scriptures. He was deeply pained to observe the plight of Islam, which was being attacked from all directions. In order to defend Islam and present its teachings in their pristine purity, he wrote more than ninety books, thousands of letters, and participated in many religious debates. He argued that Islam is a living faith which can lead man to establish communion with God to achieve moral and spiritual perfection.

Ḥaḍrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad as started experiencing divine dreams, visions, and revelations at a young age. In 1889, under divine command, he started accepting initiation into the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community. Divine revelations continued to increase and God commanded him to announce that He had appointed him to be the same Reformer of the Latter Days as prophesied by various religions under different titles. He claimed to be the same Prophet who the Holy Prophet Muhammad as said would be raised as the Promised Messiah and Mahdi. The Ahmadiyya Muslim Community is now established in more than 200 countries.

After his demise in 1908, the second manifestation of divine power was demonstrated, and the institution of Khilāfat (successorship) was established to succeed him in fulfilment of the prophecies made in the Holy Quran, presented by the Holy Prophet Muhammad as, and in the Promised Messiah’s as book Al-Waṣiyyat. Ḥaḍrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad as is the Fifth Successor to the Promised Messiah as and the present head of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community.
INTRODUCTION

by Ḥaḍrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad, Khalifatul-Masih V,
may Allah the Almighty help him with His powerful support

Ḥaḍrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad as of Qadian published *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya* Parts I, II, III, and IV during 1880–1884 to prove the superiority of Islam over all other faiths. The Promised Messiah as documented the revelations which he received from Allah the Exalted in these Parts. This led to much criticism, which only increased when God further informed him in 1890 that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā (Jesus)—who was generally believed to still be alive in the heavens—had in fact died and that the long-awaited Messiah of the Latter Days was none other than himself.

While the Promised Messiah as continued to publish books on various matters of religion to propagate the faith of Islam, it was after a period of twenty-three years that he wrote Part V of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*. He called it the ‘rebirth’ of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*.

*Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya* Part V is filled with the same themes that permeate the entire life and mission of the Promised Messiah as: love and cognition of Allah the Exalted, divine origin and perfection of the Holy Quran, truthfulness of the Holy Prophet as and his exemplary status as a role model, and the need for respect and tolerance in interfaith dialogue. He also announced that the Latter Day prophecies about the second advent of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā as and Imam Mahdi were fulfilled in his person.
Below are some excerpts from this book that highlight these aspects.

**Love and Cognition of Allah the Exalted**

The Promised Messiah as explains that—first and foremost—the purpose of religion is to so vividly prove the existence of God through divine Signs as to behold the countenance of God Himself. He writes:

> Beholding His countenance is, in fact, the real objective; Paradise, indeed, consists only of meeting the Beloved Friend.
> (see p. 17)

> It is only through [divine] Signs that the countenance of that Hidden One is manifested; Truth be told, every proof of Godhood, lies in divine Signs.
> (see p. 20)

the true religion is, indeed, that religion which succeeds in curing man’s spiritual blindness and bestowing upon him heavenly blessings to such a degree that the evidence of their affirmation of the existence of God and sympathy for mankind is prominent in their practical lives. That alone is the true religion and that alone can carry its sincere devotee to the desired goal, the thirst for which has been ingrained in his soul. (see p. 45)

The Promised Messiah as writes that the aim of any seeker of Truth should not merely be to achieve an imperfect knowledge of the existence of God through rational arguments, but to achieve what he calls ‘perfect cognition of God Almighty’. This happens when God Himself reveals His mysteries to people who strive and purify themselves.
Perfect Teachings of Islam

Only a perfect religion can lead to that perfect cognition of God. The Promised Messiah\textsuperscript{a} gives two reasons for why Islam is that perfect faith:

**First:** That such a religion should be so comprehensive, perfect, complete, and free from defect in its doctrines, teachings, and commandments, that reason should fail to propose anything better; and no defect or deficiency be seen in it. And, in this perfection, it should triumph over all other religions; that is to say, no other religion should be its equal in these excellences. This is the claim that the Holy Quran itself has put forward:

\begin{equation}
\text{سِتَّةٌ أَسْلَمَتْ لِلَّهِ وَدَعَوْنَاهُ وَأَنْبَثَتْ عَلَيْهِمَّ مَيَالًا وَكَسَبَتْ لَهُمُ السَّكَرَةُ وَبَيَّنَتْ لَهُمُ النَّورُ الإِسْلَامُ} 1
\end{equation}

Meaning that, today I have perfected My religion for you and have completed My favour upon you, and I have chosen Islam to be your faith...

**Second:** Then, the second kind of supremacy found in Islam, and not shared by any other religion, which puts the absolute seal of certainty upon its truth, is that it manifests living blessings and miracles, which other religions are entirely deprived of. These are the kind of perfect Signs through which Islam not only triumphs over other religions, but also—by showing its perfect light—draws hearts to itself. (see pages 3–5)

These perfect teachings bring about a miraculous transformation in the life of a seeker after Truth, who becomes the embodiment of the proof of the existence of God.

---

1. \textit{Sūrah al-Māʾidah}, 5:4
The Miraculous Life of a Righteous Person

What is Islam? Self-annihilation for the sake of God; To relinquish one's own desire for the pleasure of God. (see p. 26)

Regarding the miracles evidenced throughout the life of a single righteous person, the Promised Messiah \(^a\) writes:

Bear in mind that the miraculous life of one righteous person evidences greater proof of the existence of God Almighty than the [entire] heavens and the earth insofar as no one has ever seen God creating the heavens and the earth with His own hand. (see p. 56)

The Promised Messiah \(^a\) offers his own example of such a miraculous life blessed with divine Signs and intimation of the unseen.

Prophecy about the Earthquake

In this book, therefore, the Promised Messiah \(^a\) recounts the many favours of God Almighty bestowed upon him and the many miraculous events from his life which demonstrate that God has appointed him as the Promised Messiah of the Latter Days. One such Sign is the prophecy of the earthquake.

The Promised Messiah \(^a\) received a revelation from God Almighty:

Shock of earthquake

This was followed by another revelation:
Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out.

This prophecy was fulfilled when a major earthquake struck in Kangra Valley, India on April 4, 1905. Subsequently, he received repeated revelations that another earthquake would strike in the form of a severe calamity akin to Doomsday. Thereafter, he prayed that the appearance of this severe earthquake might be delayed. Allah had accepted this supplication and had postponed the earthquake accordingly.

In time, this mighty prophecy would be fulfilled when the entire world was shaken up by the ‘earthquake’ of World War I—a calamity the like of which had never been witnessed before. In addition to the graphic description that the Promised Messiah as had given about this calamity, was included the fall of the Czar which was also manifestly fulfilled. In one of his Urdu couplets he writes:

Men, high and low, will be consumed with fear; And the Czar himself will, at that hour, be in a pitiable state.

(see p. 218)

Need for Respect and Tolerance in Interfaith Dialogues

In our present age, religion is all too often used to divide and disrespect; however, a true faith promotes civility in conduct and healthy debate for the general betterment of humanity. The Promised Messiah as writes:

Bear in mind that mere dry disputation, abusiveness, harsh words, and vulgarity is perpetrated out of selfishness under the name of religion. Such failing to remove one’s own inner evils; failing to develop a sincere bond with the True Beloved; one party attacking another party, not with civility, but rather like
dogs; and displaying all kinds of evil of the ego in the guise of defending the Faith—all this filthy conduct which is merely bone [without flesh]—is not worthy of being called ‘religion’. (see p. 46)

The Promised Messiah as acknowledged the delay of twenty-three years in writing Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya Part V as divine decree to manifest the fulfilment of the Signs and prophecies that he had recorded in the earlier Parts of the book for the entire world to witness. Many of the Signs of the truthfulness of the claims of Promised Messiah as continue to manifest even to this day. This includes the establishment of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community in 1889 and the system of Successorship, or Khilāfat, which continues the mission of the Promised Messiah as—to propagate the faith of Islam throughout the world so that others might attain spiritual life.

As the Fifth Successor of the Promised Messiah as, I urge all fair-minded people to objectively study the message of the Promised Messiah as and reflect upon it in light of the Signs of the time as revealed in all major faiths. This is a message the world cannot afford to dismiss.

May the Benevolent Lord enlighten the hearts and minds of those who read and reflect upon the message contained within this book. Āmīn.

Mirza Masroor Ahmad
Khalīfatul-Masīḥ V
London
July 2018
The process of translating and reviewing these spiritual treasures contained in the writings of the Promised Messiah as is a formidable challenge. In Wakālat-e-Taṣnīf, Rabwah, the English translation of *Barāhin-e-Aḥmadiyya*, Part V was initially performed by Raja Ata-ul-Mannan who was assisted by Dhulqarnain Bharwana and Kashif Imran. The late Chaudhary Muhammad Ali, Wakīlut-Taṣnīf, Rabwah reviewed the final version. The English Translation completed by Wakīlut-Taṣnīf, Rabwah was very thorough and reflected a deep understanding of the works of the Promised Messiah as. May Allah reward their efforts abundantly, and grant a lofty station in Paradise to the late Chaudhary Muhammad Ali for his valuable contributions.

As with Parts I, II, III, and IV, the English rendering of Part V was reviewed by Additional Wakālat-e-Taṣnīf. During this review, other English translations were also consulted, particularly from *The Sunrise* magazine by Qazi Abdul Ḥamīd and the *Essence of Islam* by Muhammad Zafrulla Khan as.

The above-mentioned translations were diligently reviewed and validated against the original text written by the Promised Messiah as. The entire review followed the process that was established by Ḥaḍrat Khalifatul-Masīh V as. My humble self was blessed with the opportunity to seek his guidance, obtain approval of the final translation as needed, and convey his decisions to the reviewers and other departments as necessary. Relevant queries were continually routed to and from the Arabic and Persian Desks in London, the Research Cell, Wakālat-e-Taṣnīf, and Naẓārat Ishā’at in Rabwah, Pakistan.
From the English Translation Section of Additional Wākālat-e-Taṣnīf, the review process was led by al-Ḥāj Munawar Ahmed Saeed. I would also like to acknowledge the contributions of Dr. Waseem Ahmad Sayed, Dr. Khalil Mahmood Malik, Naser-ud-Din Shams, and Jaleel Ahmad Akbar who assisted in the revision process.

The supporting team that contributed to this immense task included Faraz Hussain, Hassan Faiyaz Khan, Naveed Ahmed Malik, Abdul-Wahab Mirza, and Attiya Mirza. I would also like to acknowledge the contributions of Sabahat Ahmad Cheema who helped me in Additional Wākālat-e-Taṣnīf.

May Allah the Almighty reward all of these individuals as well as their families and the other devotees of the Promised Messiah as working in the departments mentioned above for their sacrifices in this noble endeavour, and may He bless them abundantly in this world and in the Hereafter. Āmīn.

Al-Ḥāj Munir-ud-Din Shams
Additional Wākīlut-Taṣnīf
London
July 2018
Please note that, in the translation that follows, words given in parentheses ( ) are the words of the Promised Messiah as. If any explanatory words or phrases are added by the translators for the purpose of clarification, they are put in square brackets [ ]. Footnotes given by the publisher are marked ‘[Publisher]’.

The translators’ primary objective was to adhere to the author’s original text as strictly as possible. Contemporary nineteenth century lexicons were utilized to precisely define Urdu, Arabic, and Persian words and phrases. To preserve the author’s writing style, and particularly his points of emphasis, we have retained his original underlined and bold text styling. However, to facilitate readability for an English speaking audience, punctuation and pauses were inserted as considered necessary, and lengthy paragraphs and sentences were broken into smaller ones. Grammatical rules, literary conventions, and presentation were generally applied in conformity to The Oxford Guide to Style.

References to the Holy Quran contain the name of the Sūrah [i.e. chapter] followed by a chapter:verse citation, e.g. Sūrah al-Jumu‘ah, 62:4, and count Bismillāhir-Rahmānir-Rahīm [‘In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful’] as the first verse in every chapter that begins with it.

Where we have included verses from the Bible, all references are taken from the King James Version (KJV).
The following abbreviations have been used:

\(\text{ṣas \textit{sallallāhu ʿalaihi wa sallam}, meaning ‘peace and blessings of Allah be upon him’, is written after the name of the Holy Prophet Muhammad}^{\text{ṣas}}.\)

\(\text{ṣa \textit{ʿalaihis-salām}, meaning ‘may peace be upon him’, is written after the names of Prophets other than the Holy Prophet Muhammad}^{\text{ṣas}}.\)

\(\text{ronte \textit{radiyallāhu ʿanhu/ʾanha/ʿanhum}, meaning ‘may Allah be pleased with him/her/them’, is written after the names of the Companions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad}^{\text{ṣas}} \text{or of the Promised Messiah}^{\text{ṣas}}.\)

\(\text{ronte \textit{rahmatullāh ʿalaihi/ʿalaihā/ʿalaihim}, meaning ‘may Allah shower His mercy upon him/her/them’, is written after the names of those deceased pious Muslims who are not Companions of the Holy Prophet Muhammad}^{\text{ṣas}} \text{or of the Promised Messiah}^{\text{ṣas}}.\)

\(\text{onta \textit{ayyadahullāhu Tāʿālā binaṣrihil-ʿAzīz}, meaning ‘may Allah the Almighty help him with His powerful support’, is written after the name of the present head of the Ahmadiyya Muslim Community, Ḥaḍrat Mirza Masroor Ahmad}^{\text{onta}}, \text{Khalīfatul-Masih V}.\)

Readers are urged to recite the full salutations when reading the book. In general, we have adopted the following system established by the Royal Asiatic Society for our transliteration.

\(\text{at the beginning of a word, pronounced as } a, i, u \text{ preceded by a very slight aspiration, like } b \text{ in the English word } honour.\)
\textit{th} – pronounced like \textit{th} in the English word \textit{thing}.

\textit{h} – a guttural aspirate, stronger than \textit{h}.

\textit{kh} – pronounced like the Scottish \textit{ch} in \textit{loch}.

\textit{dh} – pronounced like the English \textit{th} in \textit{that}.

\textit{s} – strongly articulated \textit{s}.

\textit{d} – similar to the English \textit{th} in \textit{this}.

\textit{t} – strongly articulated palatal \textit{t}.

\textit{z} – strongly articulated \textit{z}.

\textit{’} – a strong guttural, the pronunciation of which must be learnt by the ear.

\textit{gh} – a sound similar to the French \textit{r} in \textit{grasseye}, and to the German \textit{r}. It requires the muscles of the throat to be in the ‘gargling’ position to pronounce it.

\textit{q} – a deep guttural \textit{k} sound.

\textit{‘} – a sort of catch in the voice.

Short vowels are represented by:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{a} for \textit{ا} (like \textit{u} in \textit{bud}).
  \item \textit{i} for \textit{i} (like \textit{i} in \textit{bid}).
  \item \textit{u} for \textit{و} (like \textit{oo} in \textit{wood}).
\end{itemize}

Long vowels by:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{ā} for \textit{ا} or \textit{ا} (like \textit{a} in \textit{father}).
  \item \textit{i} for \textit{ي} or \textit{ی} (like \textit{ee} in \textit{deep}).
  \item \textit{ū} for \textit{و} (like \textit{oo} in \textit{root}).
\end{itemize}

Other vowels by:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{ai} for \textit{ي} (like \textit{i} in \textit{site}).
  \item \textit{au} for \textit{و} (resembling \textit{ou} in \textit{sound}).
\end{itemize}
The consonants not included in the above list have the same phonetic value as in the principal languages of Europe. As noted above, the single quotation mark ‘ is used for transliterating ١ which is distinct from the apostrophe ’ used for ُ.

We have not transliterated some Arabic words which have become part of English language, e.g. Islam, Quran, Hadith, Mahdi, jihad, Ramadan, and ummah. The Royal Asiatic Society’s rules of transliteration for names of persons, places, and other terms, are not followed throughout the book as many of the names contain non-Arabic characters and carry a local transliteration and pronunciation style.
Part V
Facsimile of the original Urdu title page for Part V, printed in 1908.
The truth has come and falsehood has vanished away; and falsehood was bound to vanish.

Those people who attack my claims, And needlessly quarrel with me out of ignorance—

Would they but cast a single impartial glance into this book, They would certainly abandon their enmity and denial.

I cannot believe that they would not come to me apologetically; But it is a different matter if they abandon shame and decency.

BARĀHĪN-E-AḤMADIYYA

PART V

viz.

& the Prophethood of the Holy Prophet Muhammad

From among the fresh bounties of the Lord God and enduring good works of Ḥaḍrat Mirza Ghulam Ahmad, the Promised Messiah

Printed at the Anwār-e-Āhmadiyyah Press, Qadian, under the auspices of the Proprietor Shaikh Yaqub Ali Turab,
on 15 October 1908

1,600 copies printed

Price per copy: 12 Anas

Translation of the original title page for Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part V, printed in 1908.
After this [praise to the Lord], let it be known that what will be written after this preface is the Fifth Part of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya. Through the wisdom and providence of God Almighty, it so happened that the publication of this book was delayed for approximately twenty-three years after its four parts were published. It is even more surprising that I composed nearly eighty books during this period, some of which were quite voluminous, yet I was unable to attend to the completion of this book. Many a time I experienced heartfelt pain that a long time had elapsed in completing Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya. Nevertheless, despite the utmost effort and urgency caused by the demand for the book from its

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful. [Publisher]
2. We praise Him and invoke blessings upon His Noble Messenger. [Publisher]
buyers, and the strong criticism filled with the filth of ill-suspicion and obscene language during this protracted time, and such a prolonged period of delay—and [such objections] could genuinely arise in minds because of such a prolonged delay—the wisdom of divine providence did not enable me to complete this book. This shows that man does not have the power to step outside the limits established by divine decree and determination. I regret the fact—indeed, my heart aches to think of the fact—that so many people who had agreed to buy this book passed away from this world even before it could be completed; however, as I have already written, man is subject to divine decree. If the will of God does not coincide with that of man, then man cannot achieve his plan even if he exerts himself in a thousand ways. But when the time comes for the fulfilment of the Will of God, those very things that appeared to be the most difficult occur with the greatest of ease.

At this point the question naturally arises: Since there is wisdom and appropriateness in all that God Almighty does, then what was the wisdom that a book of such tremendous religious service—wherein the purpose was to refute all the opponents of Islam—remained incomplete for approximately twenty-three years? The answer to this is best known to God alone. No man can comprehend all His mysteries, but to the extent that I understand, it is that the first four parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya that had been published consisted of such matters that, until those matters had been manifested, the arguments of the four Parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya would have remained hidden and concealed. Therefore, it was essential that the writing of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya remain deferred until such time when, with the passage of time, those concealed matters became exposed and the arguments contained in the four parts became apparent; for, the word of God that lay hidden here and there in the four parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya—that is to say, His revelation to this humble one—stood in need of being explained. Moreover, it was necessary that the truth of the prophecies contained therein should become manifest to the people. Therefore, the All-Wise
and All-Knowing God caused the publication of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya* to be deferred until the time that all those prophecies were fulfilled.

Bear in mind that to establish the truth of any religion—that is to say, to prove the fact that that religion is from God—it is necessary that it must possess two types of supremacies.

**First:** That such a religion should be so comprehensive, perfect, complete, and free from defect in its doctrines, teachings, and commandments, that reason should fail to propose anything better; and no defect or deficiency be seen in it. And, in this perfection, it should triumph over all other religions; that is to say, no other religion should be its equal in these excellences. This is the claim that the Holy Quran itself has put forward:

\[
\text{الَّذِيْنَ اِلَّمِينُ بِهَا وَ اَلْوَلَّدُونَ وَ اَلْوَلَّدُونَ اَنْتَهِيْتُمُ الْيَوْمَ ۚ وَ اَلْيَوْمَ ۚ وَ الْيَوْمَ ۚ وَ الْيَوْمَ ۚ}
\]

Meaning that, today I have perfected My religion for you and have completed My favour upon you, and I have chosen Islam to be your faith; that is to say, you should be established upon that reality which is contained in the word ‘Islam’, an explanation of which has been given by God Almighty Himself with reference to the word ‘Islam’.

In this verse it is stated clearly that only the Holy Quran has conferred the **perfect teaching** and in the time of the Holy Quran alone could the perfect teaching have been bestowed. Thus, this claim of perfect teaching that the Holy Quran has made was its unique **right**; apart from it no other heavenly book has made such a **claim**.

As is manifestly clear to all observers, both the Torah and the Gospel refrain from making this claim. The Torah contains a statement of God Almighty that I will raise a Prophet from among your brethren and will put My Word in his mouth, and whosoever will not hearken unto his Word I will require it of him.\(^2\) So it is quite clear that if heeding the

---

1. *Sūrah al-Mā‘ād*, 5:4 [Publisher]
2. See Deuteronomy, 18:18–19. [Publisher]
Torah were sufficient to meet the requirements of the coming time, there would be no need for the advent of another Prophet, nor would deliverance from divine chastisement be dependent upon sincerely heeding the Word revealed to him.

Similarly, the Gospel has nowhere claimed that its teaching is perfect and comprehensive. On the contrary, it has clearly and openly admitted that there were yet many more things worthy of being said, but you cannot bear them; however, when the Paraclete comes, he shall disclose all things.¹

Now, it should be noted that Haḍrat Mūsā [Moses], having acknowledged the deficiency of his Torah, drew attention to the teachings of the coming Prophet. Similarly, Haḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus] having admitted the incompleteness of his teachings, presented the rationale that it was not yet time for disclosing the perfect teaching, but when the Paraclete comes, he would disclose the perfect teaching. But the Holy Quran, unlike the Torah and the Gospel, has made no reference to anyone else; rather, it has proclaimed to the entire world that its teachings are perfect by declaring:

\[
\text{دِينًا الْإِسْلَامَ لَكُمُ رَضِيْتُ وَ نِعْمَتِيْ عَلَيْكُمْ اَتْمَمْتُ وَ دِينَكُمْ لَكُمْ اَكْمَلْتُ اَلْيَوْمَ}
\]

Thus, it is clear that the Holy Quran is the only one to make the claim of a perfect teaching. I shall explain at its proper place that just as the Holy Quran has made this claim, so has it demonstrably fulfilled it, and it has presented such a perfect teaching which neither the Torah could present, nor the Gospel could express. This is, therefore, a magnificent argument to prove Islam’s truth that, by virtue of its teaching,

---

1. See John 16:12–13. [Publisher]
2. This day have I perfected your religion for you and completed My favour upon you and have chosen for you Islam as religion (Sūrah al-Mā’idah, 5:4). [Publisher]
it is triumphant over every single religion; and no religion can compete with it in regard to the perfection of its teaching.

SECOND: Then, the second kind of supremacy found in Islam, and not shared by any other religion, which puts the absolute seal of certainty upon its truth, is that it manifests living blessings and miracles, which other religions are entirely deprived of. These are the kind of perfect Signs through which Islam not only triumphs over other religions, but also—by showing its perfect light—draws hearts to itself. It should be borne in mind that the first argument of the truth of Islam, which I have just written—that is, its perfect teaching—is really not a manifestly clear argument to understand that the religion of Islam is from Allah since a bigoted denier, whose observation is not very keen, can say that it is possible that a perfect teaching might indeed exist, yet it may not be from God Almighty. Thus, although this argument brings an intelligent seeker after truth closer to certainty by affording him relief from many doubts, nevertheless, until the second argument mentioned above is joined and assimilated with it, it cannot enable him to ascend the tower of perfect certainty.

The light of the true religion reaches its perfection through the combination of these two arguments. Even though a true religion contains thousands of Signs and lights within itself, these two arguments—without need of any other argument—quench the heart of a seeker after truth with the water of certainty and totally confound the deniers. Hence, in the presence of these two types of arguments, there remains no need for any other argument. I had originally intended to document three hundred arguments in Barahiin-e-Ahmadiyya as proofs of the divine origin of Islam, but when I diligently reflected upon it, I realized that these two kinds of arguments are the equivalent of thousands of Signs. Thus, God turned my heart away from the earlier intention and bestowed upon my heart the contentment to write the above-mentioned arguments.

If I had been hasty in completing the book Barahiin-e-Ahmadiyya, it would have been impossible for me to demonstrate the divine origin
of Islam to people in such a way because the earlier parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya* contain many prophecies that are strong evidence for the truth of Islam, but the time had not yet come for those promised Signs of God Almighty to be openly manifested to the world. Every wise person can understand that composing miracles and Signs is not within the power of man and, in reality, the single greatest means of recognizing a true religion is that blessings and miracles are found in it; for, as I have just said, being a perfect teaching alone is not a sufficiently complete and manifestly clear sign of a true religion that can lead to the highest degree of satisfaction. So, if Almighty God so wills, I shall complete the book by documenting these two types of arguments in this book.

Although the manifestation of Signs was promised in the previous parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, it was not within my power to manifest any Sign through my own strength, and there were some statements in the earlier parts of the book whose explanation was beyond my ability, but when, after twenty-three years, the time came, all means were made available by God Almighty. Moreover, in conformity with the promise recorded in the previous parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, the divine insights and verities of the Holy Quran were disclosed to me, as Allah the Exalted has said:

1. ُلَّـٰمَآ إِلَّا الَّـٰلِهَةُ الْكُٰرِمَةُ 1

And thus, many a great Sign were manifested.

Those who seek God with a sincere heart know well that cognition of God can only be attained through God Himself; they can recognize God only with God, and only God can fulfil His own argument. It is not within man’s control. Man can never attain His nearness merely by cultivating a repugnance for sin through some contrivance, so long

---

1. *It is God* the Gracious Who has taught the Quran (*Sūrah ar-Rahmān*, 55:2–3). [Publisher]
as perfect cognition of the Divine is not acquired. At this point, no atonement is of any use, nor is there any way to be cleansed from sin with the exception of that perfect divine cognition which generates perfect love and perfect fear. And perfect love and perfect fear are the only two things that stop one from sin; for, when the fire of love and the fear [of Allah] is set ablaze, it reduces the rubbish of sin to ashes. This pure fire can never coexist with the filthy fire of sin. In short, man can neither refrain from evil nor advance in love until he has the good fortune of perfect cognition, and perfect cognition is not attained until man is granted living blessings and miracles from God Almighty. This indeed is such a means of recognising the true religion that it silences all opponents. And such a religion which possesses within it both kinds of arguments mentioned above—that is to say, a religion whose teaching is perfect in every aspect, in which there is no omission, and moreover, God Himself testifies to its truth through Signs and miracles—this religion is forsaken only by him who has absolutely no regard for God Almighty and gives preference to a temporary life and the vain relationships with people over the Day of Judgment.

Faith in God—who is just as Powerful today as He was Powerful ten thousand years ago—can only be attained on the very condition that knowledge be attained of His fresh blessings, fresh miracles, and fresh manifestations of His Power; otherwise, it would have to be said that He is not the same God as He once was, or, that He has lost the powers that He once used to possess. Hence, the faith of these people—deprived of fresh blessings and fresh miracles of God and who believe His powers are left behind and did not advance [to the future]—amounts to nothing at all.

Finally, it should also be remembered that the twenty-three year delay in the publication of the remaining part of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya was not meaningless and in vain. Rather, there was this wisdom in it that the fifth part was not to be published in the world until all those matters became manifest regarding which there are prophecies contained in the earlier parts of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya; for, the earlier
parts were full of magnificent prophecies and the lofty purpose of the fifth part was that those promised prophecies would come to pass. And it is a special Sign of God that, by His sheer grace, He kept me alive until the time when those Signs became manifest and the time came that the fifth part be written. The divine help that was manifested at the time of this fifth part must necessarily be mentioned by way of gratitude. It is to express this matter that at the time of the writing of Part V of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya—which, in fact, should be referred to as the rebirth of this book—I also named this part Nusratul-Haqq ['Help of God'], so that this name may forever remain a reminder of how it came into being merely through the help and assistance of God Almighty, despite the existence of hundreds of barriers and hurdles. This is why the title Nusratul-Haqq appears in the header of the first few pages of this part, but then, thinking that people should be reminded that this is the same Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya, four parts of which have already been published, all the subsequent pages had Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya, Part V written in their header. I had initially intended to write fifty parts of this book, but then instead of fifty I contented myself with five, and since the difference between five [5] and fifty [50] is merely a dot [0], that promise was fulfilled by the five parts.

The other cause for this twenty-three year delay, during which Part V was not written, was that God Almighty willed to expose the inner thoughts of those people whose hearts were afflicted with the disease of ill-thinking, and this is exactly what happened insofar as the long delay caused people of weak understanding to grow in suspicion, so much so that some of the evil natured from among them even started using foul language. And of the four parts of this book that had been published, some were sold at different prices, while others were distributed free. So, many of those who had made payments, even vilified me and also took their payments back. Had they not behaved so in their haste, it would have been better for them. However, the extent of this delay served to test their true nature.

Yet another cause for the delay was that God Almighty may make
it clear to His servants that this endeavour is in keeping with His Will, and that all these revelations which have been written in the earlier parts of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya were indeed from Him and not from any human being. Had this book not been in accord with the will of God Almighty and had all these revelations not been from Him, it would have been contrary to the practice of the Just and Holy God that a man who, according to Him, is an impostor and has sinned by making fabrications and calling them revelations from Allah and the revealed word of God, should be spared for twenty-three years so that he may complete—up to the extent that Allah may please—the remaining part of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya; and not only that, but that God should also do him the favour of bringing into existence from Himself factors which were necessary for its completion that were also beyond human control. It goes without saying that God Almighty does not treat a person whom He knows to be an impostor with such kindness and favour. Thus, the extent of this delay and postponement also caused the Sign of Allah’s help and succour in my favour to be manifested.

During this long period, many who called me a kāfir [disbeliever], a dajjāl [deceiver], and a kazzāb [liar]; considered me to be outside the pale of Islam; and cursed me by way of mubahalah [prayer duel], passed away from this world, but God kept me alive and helped me to such an extent that—not to talk of liars—there must be very few true and righteous people who received such divine help. This, therefore, is a manifestly clear Sign of God, but only for those who do not shut their eyes and are ready to accept the Signs of God Almighty.

Mirza Ghulam Ahmad Nas of Qadian, The Promised Messiah
Gratitude to the Lord of Honour and Glory is beyond expression,
Through whose Word [Holy Quran] we have been guided to Him.

The light that we find in this Book
Can never be found in a thousand suns.

Our hearts and bosoms were cleansed through it;
It became the very mirror reflecting His countenance.

It [the Holy Quran] bestowed upon the tree of the heart the fruit of divine cognition;
It cleansed every bosom of doubt, and transformed every heart.

It revealed the countenance of God,
Rendering futile the schemes and whisperings of Satan.

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful. [Publisher]
The path that reveals the Being of Honour and Glory,
   The path that cleanses and purifies the heart,

The path that attracts the Beloved whom people had lost,
   The path that offers the pure drink of certainty,

The path that is the solid proof of His existence,
   The path that is the perfect means to attaining Him—

It has shown that very path to everyone;
   It has erased all doubts and misgivings.

The constriction that had beset the bosoms was dispelled;
   The darkness dwelling in the hearts was totally transformed into light.

The season of autumn was transformed into spring;
   A sweet breeze began to blow through the favours of the Beloved.

The season of cold winter departed with its arrival;
   The fire of the love of God permeated every single heart.

All trees that were living turned lush green,
   Bearing so much fruit that they were heavily laden with it.
Its surging waves rent asunder the veils of doubts
And levelled the dunes of disbelief and sin.

The Holy Quran leads to God; it is the Word of God.
Without it, the garden of divine cognition remains incomplete.

People shivering from the frigid cold of doubt
Find wonderful warmth from this Sun [the Holy Quran].

All are storytellers—they possess not an iota of spiritual light.

But this Word manifests the light of God;
It draws us towards Him through the splendour of Signs.

The faith that relies solely on past anecdotes
Is not a religion but a storyteller.

Truly speaking, what reliance can be placed on anecdotes?
Anecdotes contain innumerable lies and errors.

The only [true] religion is the one which is not a mere storyteller.
It shows the path of certainty through living Signs.
The only [true] religion is the one whose God manifests Himself
And shows through His own powers where He is.

The miracles you hear in the form of anecdotes
Are presented by everyone in debate and dispute.

Every sect that exists engages in this very occupation:
They go on narrating ‘miracles’ in the form of anecdotes,

But they demonstrate no Sign of their faith whatsoever,
As if the Lord of the earth and heavens is now powerless—

As though He no longer possesses might or power—
That sovereignty, that strength, and that majesty no longer remains,

Or [as if] that mercy no longer exists in God—
The intention [of His] has changed—that kindness no longer remains.

Such thoughts are false, for His Being is Holy;
These conjectures ultimately lead to ruin.

The truth, indeed, is that these very religions have died;
There is nothing in them now, for life has departed from them.
The worldly people are fettered by such religions.
They are oblivious to the charm of the Beloved and intoxicated with the [love of the] world.

Their purpose in life is to amass worldly wealth;
They are not believers, for their ways are sinful.

You can see how their hearts are stained with rust;
The world is their sole objective—they are ashamed of religion.

What is the worth of the religion that does not guide,
Whose 'God' possesses no sign of Godhood?

How can it preserve the magnificence of the true path,
And what distinction can it claim for the purity of its followers?

What sign is there in it of the Light of God?
It merely possesses dry talk of Tauhid [the Oneness of God], but none of its blessings.

O people! Hearken! For the Living God is not that god
Who does not have the eternal ability to manifest His Signs.
Those who follow mere tales worship a corpse; 
That is why they are beset by degradation and defeat.

Without seeing—O friends!—the heart cannot find comfort. 
Indeed, how can the flawed self be purified with mere anecdotes?

Such stories are not lacking among the Jews, 
Yet look how they became one with Satan.

Man stands in need of a fresh Sign every moment; 
How can the ‘miracles’ narrated as anecdotes have any effect?

How can the Eternal Beloved be discovered through stories? 
Should one Sign be manifested, it yields the fruit of a lifetime.

The impact of anecdotes is the complete corruption of hearts— 
Faith [professed] upon the tongue, but opposition to God within the bosom.

These hearts have died due to their greed and lust for the world; 
They spent their whole lives in a state of heedlessness.

O sleeping ones! Awaken, for it is the season of spring. 
Now, come and look—that Beloved is at our door!
What joy is there in life if we do not find Him?
Cursed indeed is the life of estrangement from Him.

Beholding His countenance is, in fact, the real objective;
Paradise, indeed, consists only of meeting the Beloved Friend.

O lovers of worldly rank! This is not the place to dwell [permanently],
For none of the earlier people has survived.

Just go and cast a glance over their graves;
Reflect, where have your ancestors gone now?

One day, you too will go to the same place;
One day the dawn of your life will turn to dusk.

One day people will carry your bier;
Then—having buried you—will return home grieving.

O people! Enjoying worldly pleasures is not at all permanent.
Do you have no fear of death, and no thought of annihilation?

Reflect! Where have your forefathers gone?
Who beckoned them; why did they all pass away?
That day—O friends!—is destined to befall you one day as well.

Rejoice not; for the time to depart is near.

Seek the path which purifies the heart and bosom,

Which turns the baser self into dust in submission to God.

You cannot find this path—O dear ones!—through mere anecdotes.

That light comes, from time to time, through divine Signs.

Worthless is the religion that has nothing but anecdotes;

Let every blessed and noble soul stay away from them.

A hundred pities! This age relies upon anecdotes;

They base the truth of their religion entirely upon anecdotes.

But there is absolutely no trace of evident miracles.

So, this god of anecdotes is not the God of the universe.

Such anecdotes have totally destroyed the world;

By making them polytheists, imparted disbelief and disgraced them.

He who seeks to find the Omnipotent God,

For him it is forbidden to fall for the anecdotes.
As it is, in fact, his duty to seek the light of God
So that all doubt and uncertainty may disappear from his heart;

So that the light of certainty descend upon his heart;
So that he be accepted in the presence of the Lord of Honour and Glory.

Will it ever be possible to attain purity through anecdotes?
Know for sure that this approach is absolutely impossible.

When was salvation from sin attained through anecdotes?
Union with God is impossible through this path.

When was there hope that the dead could grant life?
He himself cannot even walk upon the path—

That path which leads to the Lord of Honour and Glory,
That path which cleanses and purifies the hearts,

That path which finds and brings back the lost Friend,
That path which offers the holy elixir of certainty,

Those fresh manifestations of divine power that are proof of God's existence,
Those living powers which are the way to certainty of faith.
Clearly their trace cannot be found in mere anecdotes;
   The storyteller is not aware of the way to God.

It is only through [divine] Signs that the countenance of that Hidden One is manifested;
   Truth be told, every proof of Godhood, lies in divine Signs.

Let someone tell us: Is it to be found in others at all?
   What relish [of the Signs of God] lies in the syrup of anecdotes?

Where is this in those religions? Please show us!
   Or else, do not be led astray by the extravagant anecdotes.

Ever since anecdotes became the objective in the path,
   People have continually advanced in sin.

You see how virtue no longer prevails in people—
   That sincerity, that purity, that righteousness [of old] have all departed.

Signs of the true believer are wanting;
   The love for that Imperceptible Beloved no longer remains.
The flood of sins rages viciously,
And people do not hear anything at all due to the turbulence of evil.

Why have evil deeds grown so rampant upon the earth?
Why—O dear ones!—have all these people become blind and deaf?

Why is your heart now devoid of that truth and sincerity?
Why is there so much sin that no fear or shame exists?

Why has sinfulness permeated their way of life?
Just take a single glance—what kind of an age is this?

Indeed, the cause of this is that heedlessness has spread all over;
Love of the wretched world overwhelms the heart.

Whatever garbs of taqwa [righteousness] remained, all were rent asunder;
Whatever thoughts dwelt in hearts, they became impure.

Every moment, the heart becomes shrouded with evil and sin;
The sun of faith has vanished from their sight.

He who has no certainty of faith in the Lord of Honour and Glory—
That unfortunate one has no religion whatsoever.
But the fortunate ones who witness the Signs,
They, by meeting Him, attach their hearts to Him alone.

They have become His—through Him alone do they live.
At every moment they drink a goblet from His very hand;

They are intoxicated with the wine they have drunk.
All their opponents are powerless against them.

They are so enamoured by the beautiful countenance of the Beloved;
They never fear the onslaught of the enemy.

All of God's works through them are miraculous.
This is because they are lovers of the Peerless Beloved.

God has granted them distinction over others;
For them the Perfect Maker manifests a Sign.

When they are harassed at the band of the enemies,
When evildoers torment them in any way,

When they hatch schemes to destroy them,
When they come out to wage war against them—
Then does the Holy God manifest His miraculous Sign,  
And through His Sign inflicts His awe upon the others.

He [God] says, ‘This is but a servant of the Most High;  
Fight Me if you have the strength to fight!’

Whoever attaches his heart to that Holy Being,  
Ultimately finds His mercy to be exactly like this.

Those who have the good fortune to receive a Sign from the Lord God,  
Draw constantly closer towards that Holy Being.

They are so drawn [towards Him] as to become oblivious to the world;  
They beheld such a light that they became solely His.

Without seeing [God], how can man be cleansed of sin?  
People escape from this pit [of sin] by [developing a] longing for Him.

A picture of a lion does not scare any sheep,  
Nor is there any fear of harm from a dead snake.

Therefore, from the ‘God’ who lies like a corpse,  
What hope or fear can be inspired?
How can the fear of such a ‘God’ purify the heart?

How could there kindle any ardour of love for him in the bosom?

Without beholding it, how can one fall in love with a beautiful face?

How can anyone fall in love with an imaginary beloved?

If sight be not possible, some words may suffice!

Along with some traces of the comeliness and beauty of the beloved!

So long as you are unaware of the Living God,

You will remain unrestrained and defiant, without any fear [of God] in your heart.

This very union with God is the cure for a hundred maladies;

Within this bondage lies freedom from every sin.

But for the ‘God’ whose existence is not supported by any Sign whatsoever—

How could any life become devoted to such a one?

The light of God is manifest in everything,

And yet that Beloved is far away from the heedless.
He who mingles with the dust finds that Intimate Friend.

O you who experiment! Test this prescription as well.

[True] lovers are those who find the Beloved after suffering death upon death;

When dead [to their selves], they are drawn towards Him.

This is a narrow path, but it is the only path;

The Beloved watches every moment over those who die [for Him].

Impure is the life that is spent in separation [from Him];

The wall of dry piety eventually crumbles.

They alone are alive who are close to God;

Being accepted by Him, they are His dear and beloved ones.

Far from God are those who are far from taqwā [righteousness];

Every moment they are in the clutches of vanity, pride, and arrogance.

Taqwā—O friends!—is indeed this, that you renounce vanity;

Shun the habit of pride, arrogance, and avarice.

Abandon the path of luxury for the sake of that Beloved.
ی راہ سو لعنت کو چھوڑ دو

This is an accursed path, so let go of this curse,
Or else give up the thought of [finding] the Lord of Honour.

یالِ حضرتِ عزّت کو چھوڑ دو

Accept a life that is arduous with sincerity
So that the angels from the high heavens descend upon you.

اعلّم چیز کیا ہے خدا کیلئے نہ ترک رضاشت ہوئی شنی مرشد نہا
What is Islam? Self-annihilation for the sake of God;
To relinquish one's own desire for the pleasure of God.

بہ مرگے انسان کے نشیبیں ہیں ہی حیات

Those who die are the very ones in whose destiny is life—
In this path one does not attain life except through death.

شوقیت و کبر ویں لسیمن کا شعار ہے آدم کی نسل وہہ ہو ہو ناکارہ ہے
Impertinence and pride are the traits of the Accursed Satan;
The seed of Adam is he who is humble.

اے کرم خاک چھوڑ دے کبر فورہ کو زیبا ہے کبر حضرت رپہ شوہ کو
O worm of dust! Abandon pride and arrogance;
Greatness only befits the Lord God, Jealous for His Honour.

بدتر نہ ہو ایک سے اینہ نشیبی مسیں

Think of yourself as inferior to everyone else;
Perchance, thereby, you may enter the Place of Union.

چھوڑو فورہ و کبر ک کنجوئی ای سمیں ہے
Abandon pride and arrogance, for in this indeed is taqwā;
Become dust, for in this is God's pleasure indeed.
The root of taqwá is humbling oneself for God,
Piety—which is the condition of faith—lies entirely in taqwá.

Those who make suspicion their habit,
Stray very far from the path of taqwá.

Their tongue carelessly maligns;
In an instant it displeases God—the Knower of everything.

With a single utterance they squander all their deeds;
And then sow the seeds of insolence every single moment.

These, our countrymen, have fallen into such a slumber
That they do not wake up, though we have adopted hundreds of strategies.

All [their] limbs have become lax—heedlessness has spread;
All their energy is concentrated in the tip of [their] tongue.

They either speak evil or they think evil;
They care not for the condition of Islam.

Even when you see evil, avoid ill-thinking,
Remaining fearful of the retribution of the God of the universe.
Perhaps your own eye may have erred;
Perhaps he is not evil who seems evil to you.

Perhaps your own understanding is at fault;
Perhaps it is a trial from the Forgiving Lord.

You would then have destroyed yourselves through your own ill-thinking,
Bringing the wrath of the Holy God upon your own selves.

If such impertinences have left no sense of decency in you,
What then is the meaning of righteousness? Just think about it.

Even Mūsā [Moses] was put to shame due to ill-thinking;
Just read in the Quran what Khīḍr did.

There are a hundred thousand secrets of God in His servants;
You neither know, nor is their reality made known.

In short, you uttered just one word and ruined yourself;
What kind of intelligence was it that you opted for the dangerous path?

Most unfortunate of all the world is indeed he
Who uttered one thing and hurled himself into Hell.
Therefore, save your tongue from mischief;
Remain fearful of the punishment of the Lord of mankind.

Whoever safeguards two of his limbs out of fear
Will go straight to Paradise by the grace of God.

One is the tongue, the other the private parts;
This is the hadith of our Master—Sayyedul-Warā [the Leader of Mankind].

But those who call me a liar and a charlatan,
And an impostor, a disbeliever, and an evildoer—
For them should suffice this very Sign from God;
Namely, His graces that are upon me every moment.

Look, God has inclined the multitude [towards me];
Finding me unknown, [He] made me renowned throughout the world.

I was a poor man, and He gave me beyond measure.
Whatsoever I wished for, He bestowed it all.
There is absolutely nothing from among the blessings of this world
That He did not grant me through His favours.

That He should treat 'evil' people in this way,
Is this not something outside the practice and miracles [of God]?

Why this alliance with an 'impostor'?
Can anyone recall a precedence of this kind of favour?

Everyone attacked me in their own way,
But they were ultimately humiliated at the end of the fray.

Everyone maligned me to their heart's content
And all of them desired that I see the path of ruin.

They wanted to dispatch me to annihilation,
Or to destroy me by having me hanged through the rulers,
Or—at the very least—that I be imprisoned,
Or be brought down and humiliated by insults.

Or—by carrying tales—they might cause me to suffer some other calamity,
Or that some prayer [of theirs] may be heard.
یہ ایہ ہے کہ اوردوں سے کرے مقدمات چھا گیا کہ دن مرا ہوجائے مجھ پہ رات

So with such intentions they filed cases,

Seeking to turn my day into night.

کو شک کی ہو ہوئے کہ پچھان میں نہ ہو گیا چھا کی ہو اتفاق ہو کہ زناں میں نہ ہو گئی

Their efforts were such as never occurred in this world,

And so was their solidarity without parallel in the world.

بچھا کو پاک کر چکے نہ ہو گئے چھا چکے ہیں یہہ سب اپنے سب تک ہو گئے

In order to destroy me they all became one;

They deemed me evil and themselves as the righteous.

آخر کو ہو نہا ہو کر کرپر لیے ہیں جو عالم القلوب و علیم و خیر پہ

Ultimately, the God who is Benevolent and All-Powerful—

Who knows what is in the hearts and is All-Knowing, All-Aware—

آئیا میں میرے کل ہیں کہ محمد یاد ہے رہ گئے رہے دوامرے یہ دوزے و نام

Came down for my help, remembering [His] promise,

And they all ended up disgraced and frustrated.

گھی ایہا فضل حضرت رب اوریا ہوا سب و شغول کے دو منے ہو ہے خطا

Such was the grace manifested by the Lord of mankind—

Seeing which—all enemies were left bewildered.

اک قطرے اس کے فضل نے دویانی با ہے منہ خاک نہا اسی نے ہیں پتا دیا

His grace transformed a single drop of water into an ocean;

I was mere dust; He Himself transformed me into the Pleiades.

منہ تنا غرب و تاک و گم ہم و بے ب Sharon کوئی نہ جانتا ہیں کہ ہے قادیان کد دیا

I was poor, helpless, unknown, and unskilled;

No one knew where Qadian was.
People did not look towards this direction at all;
No one knew even of my existence.

But now you see how the world has turned this way;
This very Qadian has become the rendezvous of the elect.

Even then, those whose eye is shut by prejudice—
In their sight—my condition is displeasing.

In their sight and estimation I am an imposter;
The good of the world lies in my death and decline.

The imposter is cursed in the Book of God;
Not even an iota of respect does he enjoy in His presence.

In the Torah as well as in the Glorious Word [the Holy Quran],
It has been decreed as severe chastisement,
That whoever speaks the least bit of a lie against God,
Shall be killed—that is the only punishment for this crime.

This, then, is surprising negligence on the part of the Omnipotent God
That He sees such a mischievous one,
Who has been occupied in fabricating lies for twenty-five years—

Every day and every single night this has been his occupation—

Every day he fabricates a lie from himself

And claims, ‘God said this to me last night’;

And yet He does not punish such an insolent man,

As if He does not recall what He had previously said.

Again it is all the more strange that when the ‘helpers of the Faith’

Try to kill or help bring about such a one’s murder,

He [God] does not help them at the time of their designs

So that by the killing of the ‘impostor’ the whole story may come to an end,

Whilst His own promise lay totally abandoned on the shelf,

He casts not even a glance upon the effort and exertion of others.

Is He not that God who is the God of the Furqān [Holy Quran]?

Why then should He be so faithful to an ‘impostor’?

What—after all—is this? Here is an ‘impostor’

Whom God acquits on every occasion!
When his enemies try to ensnare him with great effort—
Effort so great they almost kill themselves in the process—

Conspiring together, they fabricate allegations,
And accuse him of a hundred lies and deceptions—

Even then—they remain unsuccessful in their objectives,
And that which they say a hundred times goes to no effect.

They desire disgrace; [while] here honour is bestowed.
Is this the end that an impostor is supposed to meet?

O leaders of the nation! O ‘helpers’ of the Faith!
Think! Why does God not help you?

You have no mercy, no justice, nor piety!
So—for this reason—God is not with you.

You may well remember the time of [Henry Martyn] Clark,
When he falsely accused me of murder by way of mischief,

When you conspired with him thinking
That, with your help, you may facilitate his fight,
But the God who is the God of the humble and the meek—

He inclined the heart of the Magistrate towards me.

You were bent upon getting me killed,

And thought within your heart that this would be an easy task;

You wanted this man to be hoisted upon the cross

So that you might have this tale to exult about:

'He was a liar, he was an impostor; wherefore, he received this punishment.'

In the end, God Himself stood up in my support.

The entire account of [my] exoneration became evident to [the Magistrate, Captain] Douglas;

Thereupon, I was honourably acquitted from there.

I was accused of murder—a serious matter indeed!

This charge issued forth from a priest.

However many witnesses there were—they were all against me.

There was even a maulawi [religious cleric] who would boast this:
'Look! This man will get his punishment now—

Now, he will not escape without severe punishment!

There are so many witnesses that his guilt has become evident;

One of two things is now certain—prison or the cross.

Some even engaged in [praying for] curses with great enthusiasm—

So much prayer that their noses were worn down in prostration.

In short, they spared no effort whatsoever;

There was trickery on one side, while prayer and prostration on the other.

In the end, God delivered me from that fire;

However many enemies there were—He cared not one bit for them.

What is this [strange] kind of ‘grace’ visibly apparent from Him

That He has [now] become the Helper of an ‘impostor’!

It was His obligation that—remembering His promise—

He would Himself smite the neck of the ‘wicked liar’.

If He had fallen short of displaying His own hand,

Then at least He could have easily lent you a hand.
Is not the ‘triumph of truth’ the promise of God?
Just open and see the Holy Word of the Mighty One!

Why, then, was this [promise] reversed only in my case?
Or was it that your own mantle of taqwā [righteousness] was rent asunder?

Is it not strange that despite you being [His] ‘friends’,
Everything transpires in my favour?

Again, it is not only this single instance;
At every step I am blessed with the favours of God.

Look at the man from Bheen, whose name is Karam Din—
Who even lost sleep in his fight with me—
For whose help there was great passion among the people,
Whose faults were glossed over by every enemy of truthfulness,

Who was supported by all unjust and erring people,
For whose help maulawis had come forward—

Among whom there were such who would come rushing forth,
And would display great cunning in presenting their testimonies.

The plaintiff, too, was displaying cleverness,
Fabricating hundreds of statements contrary to the facts.

He received the punishment in consequence of his evil deeds
Along with which, he was also labelled a liar.

‘Great Liar’ remained his title in the official records;
The conceited cleverness that he boasted came to naught.

O people of sense and reason! Beware!
Cleverness is useless; taqwā accomplishes the tasks.

God Himself is the Helper of the one who is righteous;
The end of the transgressors is the punishment of Hell-fire.
Piety is the root of all virtue and good fortune;
In whomsoever this root remains intact—all his deeds remain intact.

It is indeed the believers who ultimately triumph;
Exactly thus will you find in the Word of the Omnipotent One.

Now, show us any impostor in the world
Upon whom is bestowed this grace, this favour, this bounty!

The punishment of this evil deed is death, not love!
So how could God come to like this behaviour?

Was this treatment the reward for imposture?
Was this the promise given regarding an impostor’?

Why is He such a friend of an ‘impostor’?
Or is He unaware of the fault and has been deceived!

After all, there must be something which earned His friendship,
For no one loves an evildoer.

Having accused me of evil; even then you were seized.
These, too, are Signs that have been manifested.
Nevertheless, there are other Signs we possess,
Which we now set forth fearlessly with God's favour.

The heart in which His name is saturated with love
Is itself a Sign; moreover, all its works are Signs.

What insults have I not endured from this generation—
From men as well as from the uninformed womenfolk?

In their estimation, I have become evil and wretched,
In their eyes I have become a kāfir [disbeliever] and a dājjāl [deceiver].

I even became an impostor in their sight;
Became faithless, corrupting the path of truth!

But may my life be sacrificed for such 'kufr' [disbelief],
From which is attained God—Creator of the world and mankind.

Accursed be such a faith that is less than this 'kufr'—
A hundred thanks that I have become the beloved of the Supreme [God].
Through this very path the Omnipotent God takes one by the hand;
How could those captivated by anecdotes know of its value?

God’s revelation is indeed obtained through this luminous path;
Through this very path is revealed the Beloved’s pristine beauty.

O accuser! The Omnipotent God is not with you;
This ‘kufr’ [of mine] is a thousand times better than your ‘faith’.
Thousands upon thousands of thanks be to that Benevolent Lord, who has bestowed upon us a religion which is such a means of attaining the knowledge of God and the fear of God, the like of which has never been found in any age; and thousands of blessings be upon that immaculate Prophet through whom we entered this holy religion; and thousands of mercies be bestowed upon the Companions of the Noble Prophet who irrigated this garden with their blood.

Islam is such a blessed and God-revealing religion that if any person chooses to follow it truly and acts upon the teachings, guidance, and admonitions contained in the Holy Word of God Almighty—the Holy Quran—he would behold God in this very life. For the recognition of that God, who is hidden from the sight of the world behind thousands of veils, there is no other means except the teaching of the Quran. The Holy Quran guides towards God Almighty through reason and heavenly Signs in a very easy and simple manner. It possesses a blessing and magnetic power which perpetually attracts a seeker of God towards God, bestowing light, peacefulness, and satisfaction. And

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful. [Publisher]
2. We praise Him and invoke blessings upon His Noble Messenger. [Publisher]
a true believer in the Holy Quran does not—like the philosophers—merely hold on to the conjecture that there ‘ought to be’ a Creator for this most ingenious universe; rather, acquiring a personal insight and being honoured with a holy vision, he sees with the eye of certainty that that Creator ‘actually exists.’

He who is bestowed the light of this Holy Word does not merely guess like those who rely upon dry reason alone that God is One without partner, but through hundreds of brilliant Signs which grasp him by the hand and pull him out of the darkness, such a person actually witnesses for himself that—in reality—God has no associate in His Being or in His attributes. And not only this; such a one is able to practically demonstrate to the world that he believes God to actually be such, and the majesty of the Oneness of God so fills his heart that in his estimation—when placed in contrast to the will of Allah—the whole world amounts to no more than a dead insect and indeed to nothing at all.

Human nature is like a tree, the branches of a part of which are immersed in a pit full of filth and urine, while the branches of the other part lie in a pool that is full of fine fragrances like that of keorha\(^1\) and roses and the like. When a wind blows from either side, it causes either the scent or the stench to spread as the case may be. Similarly, the wind of carnal passions spreads the stench, while the breeze of divine grace gives form and manifestation to the hidden fragrance. Thus, if the divine breeze—which descends from heaven—is obstructed, being battered from all directions by the fierce and forceful winds of human carnal passions, man becomes buried under their stench, and thus, turns his back on God Almighty, becoming the very embodiment of Satan, and is cast among the lowest of the low. No virtue remains in him and he ultimately perishes due to the poisons of infidelity, disobedience, transgression, sinfulness, and all kinds of corruption. The life of

---

1. A plant (*Pandanus odoratissimus*) with a strong-scented flower that is native to South and South East Asia. [Publisher]
such a one is hellish and, at last, he plunges into Hell after death. But if the grace of God Almighty comes to one’s aid and the divine breeze blows from heaven to purify and perfume him and—through special guidance—constantly grant light, vitality, and holy capacities to one’s spirit, that person is drawn to such lofty heights by the power granted to him from on High, that he surpasses even the status of angels. This proves that man has the propensity to both fall down as well as to rise up. In this regard someone has truly said:

\begin{quote}
ست امّے تواند خرشدن حضرتِ انساں کہ حدِّ مشترک را جا مع ایح

Human capacities encompass a union of two extremes—

He may choose to be a messiah or a donkey!
\end{quote}

However, the difficulty here is that it is easier and seemingly quite natural for man to descend, just as you observe that a stone goes up with great difficulty, requiring the effort of someone else, but when coming down it falls naturally, requiring no effort from anyone. Then, surely man stands in need of a powerful hand if he is to ascend. This very requirement proves the need for the succession of Prophets and the [revelation of the] Word of God. Although worldly people have involved themselves in thousands of intricate debates in the process of evaluating the truth of a religion, they still have not reached any satisfactory conclusion. However, the fact of the matter is that the true religion is, indeed, that religion which succeeds in curing man’s spiritual blindness and bestowing upon him heavenly blessings to such a degree that the evidence of their affirmation of the existence of God and sympathy for mankind is prominent in their practical lives. That alone is the true religion and that alone can carry its sincere devotee to the desired goal, the thirst for which has been ingrained in his soul. Most people merely believe in the kind of imaginary ‘God’ whose powers did not march forward, but were left behind, and whose capability and power are only spoken of in the form of tales and fables.

So, that is the very reason why such a fictitious ‘God’ cannot
restrain them from sin; rather, by following such a religion their audacity and brazenness in sin and iniquity continue to increase as their prejudice continues to build up. Their carnal passions surge like a river that breaks its embankment and floods the surrounding area, destroying many houses and fields of farmland. The Living God who possesses the light of His powerful Signs and continues to prove His existence through fresh and rejuvenating miracles and powers—it is He alone—finding and discovering whom restrains one from sin; bestows true peace, contentment, and satisfaction; and grants steadfastness and true courage. He becomes the Fire that burns sin and the Water that washes away worldly desires. This is exactly what is called ‘religion’—to search for Him and experience heavenly ecstasy in that quest.

Bear in mind that mere dry disputation, abusiveness, harsh words, and vulgarity is perpetrated out of selfishness under the name of religion. Such failing to remove one’s own inner evils; failing to develop a sincere bond with the True Beloved; one party attacking another party, not with civility, but rather like dogs; and displaying all kinds of evil of the ego in the guise of defending the Faith—all this filthy conduct which is merely bone [without flesh]—is not worthy of being called ‘religion’. Alas! Such people do not realize why we came into this world and what the true and main purpose of our brief lives is. Rather—perpetually holding on to a blind and impure nature—they put the label of ‘religion’ upon their superstitious whims. They flaunt their bad manners and rattle their loose tongues in defence of an imaginary ‘God’ for whose existence they have no proof whatsoever. What is the worth of a religion which does not worship the Living God, but a ‘God’ who is the bier of a dead body that only moves with the support of others and falls to the ground if the support is removed. If there is anything to be gained from such a religion, then it is only bigotry. True fear of God and sincere sympathy for humanity—which are the best of virtues—absolutely disappear from their characters. If they encounter opposition from any individual who is against their faith and creed, then, merely due to this opposition in their hearts, they become the enemy of his
life, property, and honour; and if the affair of someone from any other people is entrusted to them, they seek to obliterate him altogether, abandoning [all sense of] justice and compassion. That mercy, justice, and sympathy—which is the sublime excellence of human nature—disappears entirely from their disposition, and they are filled with an unholy beastliness due to overzealous bigotry. They do not know the true purpose of religion. The real ill-wishers of a faith and of a people are indeed those corrupt ones who have no regard for truth, divine cognition, or purity, and simply give the name ‘religion’ to selfish passions. They are ever engaged in idle quarrels, disputes, and vile talk, and the time which should be spent with God in solitude does not even occur in their dreams. They remain ever busy denigrating and reviling holy people while they are themselves filled with filth as a septic tank is filled with excrement. There is much babble on their tongues but their hearts are far removed from God; they are totally immersed in the vices of the world, yet they claim to be the reformers of the nation. But as is said:

[How can a sleeping man awaken a sleeping man!]

Such people can neither listen to anyone with God-fearing hearts, nor answer them with civility. They believe that there is nothing good in Islam and that all of it is objectionable. Strangely enough, they are quite content with this condition of theirs. Moreover, having inflicted harm upon someone of a different faith, they think they have accomplished an act worthy of great reward or demonstrated great courage and manliness. But sadly, it is this bigotry that most people in this age identify as religion. I do not even consider the ordinary Muslims to be free from this evil habit. Indeed, they are more worthy of punishment in the eyes of God, for He has given them that religion whose name is Islam, the meaning of which God has Himself revealed in the Holy Quran as He says:
This means that Islam has two parts: (i) To lose one’s self in the pleasure of God in such a way as to renounce all one’s desires and to lie prostrate at His threshold to seek His pleasure; and (ii) To do good to all of mankind in general. Look at the beauty of this faith and the virtuous and holy principles on which it was based, but—alas!—they have strayed very far away from it. This corruption emerged at the time when they deviated from the teachings of the Holy Quran either deliberately or by mistake, since deviation—be it doctrinal or practical—deprives one of divine grace. What I mean here by ‘doctrinal deviation’ is that a person should be in absolute denial of the Word of God, and ‘practical deviation’ means that though he may not be in apparent denial, he is so overwhelmed by customs, habits, selfish desires, and the precepts of others that he has no regard whatsoever for the Word of Almighty God.

In short, these are two evil diseases. It is necessary to follow the True Faith in order to be safeguarded from them. The first disease is to deny that God is One without partner and Possessor of all the perfect attributes and powers, and thus turn away from one’s obligations to Him, and to deny—like an ingrate—His bounties that permeate each and every particle of our bodies and souls. The second [disease] is to be negligent in fulfilling one’s obligations to mankind, or to become like a poisonous serpent for hurting anyone who is of a different race or religion or is opposed to his [race or religion], and to disregard human rights altogether. Such people are in fact dead and are unaware of the Living God. To have living faith is definitely impossible so long as a person is not bestowed the magnificent Signs and manifestations of the Living God. Although all people—barring the atheists—believe in the existence of God in one form or the other, their belief is reducible to

1. Nay, whoever submits himself completely to Allah, and is the doer of good (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:113). [Publisher]
certain self-coined notions, and is not the result of the personal manifestation of the Living God. This is the reason that a living faith cannot be attained through such self-conceived notions. So long as one does not hear from God Almighty, in miraculous and extraordinary ways and with mighty powers, the emphatic proclamation اَنَا الْمَوْجُوْد ['I am present'], and unless this is accompanied with the actual manifestation of powerful Signs, it is impossible to have faith in that Living God. Such people give the name ‘God’ or Parmeshwar to something which they have learnt only through hearsay. They merely repeat what has been passed on to them, uttering empty boasts with no knowledge of what they are saying.

True knowledge about God depends entirely upon reaching the Living God who articulates with the utmost clarity to those who are close to Him and bestows satisfaction and contentment upon them with His majestic and pleasant speech. He speaks to them as one man speaks to another and converses with them as a certainty that is beyond doubt or suspicion. He listens to them and responds to them. He hears their supplications, and informs them of their acceptance. He proves to them that He is indeed God, on the one side through His majestic and pleasant words, while on the other side through His miraculous works and His powerful and mighty Signs. To begin with, He promises them His support, help, and special guidance by way of prophecy, and then—on the other side—in order to amplify the grandeur of His promises, He causes a multitude of people to oppose them. Those people employ all their power, every deceit, and every single kind of device to frustrate those promises of God regarding the support, help, and supremacy of His chosen ones, but God brings all their efforts to naught. They sow mischief but God uproots it. They kindle a fire but God extinguishes it. They exert themselves down to their fingernails but ultimately God causes their designs to recoil upon themselves. The sincere and chosen ones of God are simple and straightforward and, in the presence of God Almighty, they are like children in the lap of their mother. The world opposes them because they are not of this world. All
sorts of plans and devices are employed to destroy them. Nations unite to cause them distress, all unworthy ones shoot arrows at them from the same bow, and all manner of calumnies and charges are fabricated against them so that somehow they might be destroyed and not a trace of them would remain, but ultimately God Almighty manifests the fulfilment of His words. In this way these matters continue throughout their lives. On the one hand, they are honoured with God’s true word which is clear and conclusive and they are given knowledge of hidden matters—which is beyond the ability of man—through the clear word of God, the Mighty and Powerful. On the other hand, through miraculous events which establish the truth of that which they had been told, their faith is strengthened and is further illumined as light upon light. To the extent that the human mind demands a certain degree of understanding to recognize God with complete conviction, that is satisfied with divine manifestations of word and deed so much so that not even an atom’s weight of obscurity remains in the way. This is God, through whose manifestations of word and deed—which contain within themselves thousands of blessings and forcefully impact the heart—a person has the good fortune of obtaining a true and living faith and—having developed a sincere and holy bond with God—of eradicating the filth of the carnal self. All weaknesses having been removed, the piercing rays of heavenly light dispel one’s inner darkness and a wonderful transformation comes into being.

Therefore, the religion which does not present this God who is proven to possess these attributes and which confines faith merely to ancient tales and fables and such accounts as are not seen or heard is certainly not a true religion. To follow such a fictitious god is like expecting a corpse to function like the living. The existence or non-existence of such a ‘God’ who does not himself prove his own existence afresh at all times is the same, as if he is an idol that does not speak, does not hear, and does not reply to a question, nor can he manifest his almighty power in such a manner that even a resolute atheist cannot doubt it.
It should be borne in mind that just as the sun rises afresh each day to give us light, and we could not attain any benefit nor any satisfaction through a story if we were sitting in complete darkness with no sign of any light anywhere, and we were told that though the sun does exist, it only used to rise in some past ages and is now hidden forever. The same is the case with the True Sun which illumines the hearts: It rises afresh every day vouchsafing to man a share of its divine manifestations of word and deed. Only that God is true and only that religion is true which give the good news of the existence of such a God and demonstrate the existence of such a God; it is only through such a Living God that the soul is purified.

Do not carry the hope that any other design can purify the human self. As darkness can only be dispelled by light—in the same way—the only remedy for the darkness of sin are the divine manifestations of word and deed, which descend upon a fortunate heart in a miraculous manner from God with powerful rays, show him that God exists, remove the foulness of all doubts, and bring satisfaction and contentment. So, by the mighty attraction of that Supreme Power, that fortunate one is raised to heaven. Other than this, all other remedies that are put forward are fake spectacles. But for complete purification, divine cognizance alone is not enough; rather, this must be accompanied simultaneously by persistent ongoing prayers filled with anguish because God Almighty is Self-Sufficient and Independent, and to attract His grace there is an acute necessity of such prayers that are accompanied by weeping and sincerity and the painful anguish of the heart. You see that though a suckling infant fully recognizes its mother and loves her and the mother also loves it, yet its crying has a great deal to do with the release of the mother’s milk. On the one side the infant cries bitterly out of hunger and on the other side the mother is so affected by its crying and weeping that milk is released from her breasts. In the same way, every seeker should prove his spiritual hunger and thirst by his weeping and crying so that the spiritual milk might be released to satiate him.
Thus, divine cognizance alone is not enough to cleanse and purify oneself. Rather, grief-stricken weeping and crying like children is also necessary. Do not lose hope and do not be discouraged by the thought: ‘Our souls are so defiled with sin; of what value are our supplications and what impact would they have?’ The human soul has, in fact, been created for the love of God and although the fire of sin may intensely excite him, even then he possesses such power of repentance that it can extinguish that fire. Just as you observe that however much water is heated, when it is poured over a fire it still extinguishes the fire.

Ever since God Almighty created people, their hearts have always been cleansed and purified through this means alone. In other words, man cannot be purified from sin through any means besides the Living God Himself—through His own manifestations of word and deed—revealing His existence, His power, and His Godhood, and displaying His shining awe.

Even by way of reason this very fact is clear and proven that man only values—and his heart is only awe-inspired by—such an object whose greatness and power he learns through the means of complete cognition. For instance, it is evident that man will never insert his hand into a hole wherein he is certain that a snake lies, nor will he ever eat a thing that he knows to be poison. How is it then, that he does not fear God Almighty in the same way and brazenly commits thousands of sins and transgressions, and remains fearless even after reaching old age? The reason for this is simply that he is totally unaware of the existence and entity of the True Requiter who can punish sin.

It is a pity that most people have not paid attention to this principle out of their misfortune, and such absurd means of being delivered from sin have been hewn out of their imaginary whims, which only increase their audacity in committing even more sin. Take for example, the belief that asserts that having faith in the crucifixion of Haḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, and considering him to be God is obligatory for the forgiveness of all mankind’s sins. Can such a notion be expected to engender true hatred of sin? It is obvious that each and
every thing can only be countered by its opposite: Heat drives away cold, and the remedy for removing darkness is light. Then what kind of remedy is it [to propose] that X is cleansed from sin through Y’s being crucified? Such doctrines are nothing but man-made fallacies that find their way into people's hearts in times of heedlessness and material worship. The same selfish and base motives that led to the prevalence of idol worship in the world are responsible for the prevalence of the doctrines of Crucifixion and Atonement among the Christians.

The essential fact is that the human self is somewhat designed to give greater preference to the path in which there is no effort and struggle. True purity, however, requires much pain and striving, and that pure life cannot be attained until man drinks the cup of death. Therefore, just as it is the propensity of mankind to avoid difficult and narrow paths and to seek ways that are easy and simple, in this very manner these people, too, have chosen the way of the Cross that requires only verbal confession and places no hardship upon the soul. This is the reason why the love of God has grown cold [in their hearts] and they do not desire to develop a loathing for sin in order to bring about a pure transformation within themselves. In reality, belief in the Cross is the kind of doctrine which pleases those who do not wish to attain true purity and are constantly searching for a formula in which a filthy life may coexist with the forgiveness of sins. Consequently, in spite of [their indulgence in] excessive impurity, they imagine that they are cleansed from sin merely through believing in the blood of Christ. Such purity is actually like a boil that is full of pus, even though it appears shining on the surface. Should there be discerning minds, the falsity of the prescription of the Cross can be made clear from the condition of the devotees of the Cross themselves—to what extent have they become absorbed in the love of God Almighty, abandoning the desires and passions of the world? Anyone who tours European countries will see for himself the extent to which the most ardent defenders of the [Christian] faith—not just the ignorant people but also the educated and refined among them—indulge in carnal pleasures, licentiousness,
drunkenness, self-indulgence, and other sins. Many among the clergy, who exceed all others in stressing the blood of Messiah, are given to alcoholism which is the mother of all evils, with the result that such shameful and outrageous stories regarding them are frequently published in the newspapers that the less said about them, the better. For example, just today I read in a newspaper that a pastor who committed fornication with girls was arrested in England and is being sent back [to India]. That pastor’s name is Dr. Sandilands and he was the Principal at a missionary orphanage in Bhandara, Nagpur. On the night of 24th August, he was found with a girl in his room. Failing to justify his action, he resigned and left [the country]. It was later discovered that he had committed fornication with 17 girls. Further police investigation revealed that he was also guilty of performing illegal surgeries; namely, abortions. The warrants for his arrest were issued, he was taken into custody in England, and upon his arrival in India his trial will be held at the Bombay High Court. See the Pioneer [Mail] and Akhbār-e-Ām of 8th February 1905, first column; and 9th February 1905, page 6, column 2. Now it is obvious that if this is the state of the so-called great ‘Holy Fathers’ who are in the first [and foremost] position to benefit from the blood of Christ, then what good would the other poor folks derive from this prescription [of salvation]? So remember well that this is certainly not the way to attain true purity. The time is approaching—nay rather, it is near at hand—when people will awaken themselves to the error of this path. The true path is only the one which I have already stated. Every single person who came to God Almighty entered through this very door. Yes, this door is very narrow and those who enter through it are very few in number, for death is its threshold and, having seen God, remaining steadfast in His path with all their power and all their being, is its frame. So very few indeed are those who wish to enter through this door. Alas, that in our country the notion of the blood of Christ has led the Christians astray from this door, while the Āryas have been deprived of this door on account of their belief in reincarnation and their denial of the acceptance of repentance; for, in their
view there is no other way to be cleansed from sin during this life except through undergoing diverse cycles of rebirth. Repentance—meaning, to turn oneself to God with total sincerity and inflicting upon oneself a state of death, and, having inflicted this death-like state, to willingly offer one’s own sacrifice—is, in their eyes, an absurd idea. Thus, both these groups are deprived of the true path.

The Āryas face additional difficulties, for they have no way open for acquiring certainty about God Almighty—neither through rational means, nor through heavenly means. The rational means are unavailable to them because they believe that souls, with all their powers, are self-subsisting, and all the particles of the universe, with all their properties, are self-existing. Then which rational argument remains to support the existence of Parmeshwar? For, if everything exists on its own, then what is there to prevent them from combining and dividing themselves on their own as well? So this religion is very close to atheism, and if God does not destine these people to repent of their erroneous path, some day they will all end up becoming atheists. Likewise, they are incapable of recognizing God through heavenly means, since the heavenly means consist of heavenly Signs that serve as fresh proof for the existence of God. These Signs are continuously witnessed by one who believes in the Living God and is fully convinced of His control over all things, but these people [the Āryas] are in complete denial of any such Signs. Therefore, both doors that lead to divine cognition are closed to them. Although they do show a lot of bigoted zeal in religious debates and are even a few steps ahead of the missionaries in verbal abuse, vilification, and sharpness of tongue, they are totally bereft of divine cognition. For, Almighty God is first recognized rationally through His power of creation, but according to them, Almighty God is not the Creator and, hence, they have no proof of His existence insofar as created things are concerned. The other means of recognizing Him is through heavenly Signs, but they deny even these and are utterly ignorant of this path. They cling to the word Parmeshwar without being aware of His existence. Alas, these people do not realize that although
a person may babble a thousand times with his tongue, it is of no use until he attains such a recognition of his God that brings death upon his infernal life, and until his heart becomes filled with the love of God Almighty and he begins to hate sin.

As such, anyone may claim to possess these qualities, but God’s true worshippers have the distinction that they are blessed on account of their pure love for God and are attended by His manifestations of word and deed. That is to say, they become those who converse with God Almighty and His miraculous acts are manifested in them. And God Almighty manifests many such revelations upon them in which He gives them advance tidings of His help, and then comes the time when that help materializes. Thus do they recognize their God and stand distinguished from others through special Signs. They are granted a charismatic quality that attracts people towards them, and the love of God rains down upon their countenances. Without such a distinction, even a scoundrel, who is secretly an adulterer, sinner, and a drunkard, may be called virtuous; what, then, would be the difference between a truly righteous person and a pretender? It is in order to preserve this distinction that God eternally bestows a miraculous life upon the righteous, and His help always accompanies them in a way that is altogether miraculous.

Bear in mind that the miraculous life of one righteous person evidences greater proof of the existence of God Almighty than the [entire] heavens and the earth insofar as no one has ever seen God creating the heavens and the earth with His own hand. By only observing the exceedingly intelligent design of this universe and the culmination of its structure into the highest perfection and stability, sound reason can comprehend the necessity of the fact that there ought to be some Creator of these incomparable creations. However, reason by itself cannot reach the point that that Creator actually exists because it has not seen this Creator creating. Further, the entire basis for rationally recognizing God is simply the need for a Creator, not that His existence is personally experienced; whereas, the miraculous life of a righteous one
demonstrates the existence of God Almighty in the manner of practical experience and through the adornment of personal witness since the initial condition of a righteous one is like an insignificant particle or like a mustard seed sown by a farmer, lying destitute in the most despicable circumstances. Thereupon God declares to the world through revelation: ‘Behold! I will create him. I will make him shine like the stars and I will exalt him like the heavens, and I will make a mountain out of this mote.’ Thereafter, despite the fact that all of the world’s evildoers wish that divine plan to remain a suspended event and fight down to their fingernails to prevent that command from coming to fruition, it cannot be hindered until it is fulfilled and the hand of God—removing all obstacles—brings it to completion. He transforms a solitary unknown man into an enormous jamāʻat [community] in accordance with His own prophecy. He draws all worthy people towards him. He grants that unknown man the kind of renown that his forefathers never had the good fortune to enjoy. He takes hold of his hand in every field of battle and bestows victory upon him in every single conflict, and subjugates a whole world to his service, causing hundreds of thousands to gravitate towards him and his teaching to be entrenched in their hearts. Moreover, He helps them through the Holy Spirit. He becomes the Enemy of his enemies and the Friend of his friends, and He Himself fights his enemy. This is why I say that the miraculous life of a righteous person is greater proof of the existence of God than the heaven and earth insofar as people have not seen the heaven and earth being built by the hand of God with their own eyes, but they do see with their own eyes that God builds the edifice of prestige for a righteous person with His own hand. He informs the world well in advance: ‘I will do so, and I will make him as such.’ Then, despite formidable obstacles and fierce resistance arising from evil people, He manifests it to transpire exactly as He had promised.

Assuredly, this is the Sign that advances a seeker of truth to the level of Haqqu'l-Yaqin [True Certainty] and serves as categorical proof for the existence of God, but it is only for those who seek God, who
are not arrogant, and who—having found the truth—accept it with the utmost humility. In this age, too, God has brought together many such Signs. Alas! Would that people reflect over them and—enlightening themselves with the lamp of certainty and knowledge—become worthy of salvation. However, it does not fall upon the lot of the evil people to attain guidance through the Signs of God, for they shut their eyes upon seeing the light lest it illuminate their eyes and show them the way. An evil man witnesses a thousand Signs but turns away, and persists in harping upon the one topic which he fails to understand out of his very own folly. The person who comes from God Almighty is not obligated to show such Signs whereby stars fall upon the earth, the sun rises from the west, or goats are turned into men; he does not ascend to heaven before people’s eyes to bring back a written book which they can hold in their hands and read, or convert all his dwellings into gold. Nor does he cause people’s deceased ancestors to come to life out of their graves speaking, screaming, and cursing their sons with abhorrence for having furiously rejected this true Messenger of God, and telling them that they have seen for themselves that his follower goes directly to Paradise, while whoever rejects him is cast into Hell in the utmost disgrace; and so that they organize gatherings in the town and invite all deniers to these events and say to their progeny, ‘You know that we are your fathers and grandfathers, and you know how much we opposed this man, but when we died we were thrown into Hell on account of our hostility to him. Look how our bodies have been burnt and blackened by the Fire. We have come forth out of the graves before your very eyes so that we may bear witness that this man is from God and is a true Prophet.’ Remember, no dead people ever came out of their graves to deliver such lectures and never, in any age, did such gatherings take place. It has never happened that some people’s ancestors came out alive from their graves and then a place was appointed for a gathering to which all the people of the town were invited and the newly returned from the dead addressed thousands of people loudly in these words: ‘O people! We are grateful that you have come to listen to our lecture. All
of you know and recognize us well. We lived in such and such locality; we were the fathers or grandfathers of so and so; we died some years ago from the plague or cholera, or some other disease and you took part in our funerals. You were indeed the ones who buried or cremated us. Thereafter, with extreme contempt, you rejected this noble Prophet who presides over this gathering and labelled him a liar and demanded that he show a miracle whereby the dead come back to life. So, through his prayer, we were brought back to life and are standing before you now. Gentlemen, open your eyes and look carefully: We are those very ones. You can ask us what our stories are. Having come back to life, we can bear witness that this man is true and that we burned in Hell for having rejected him. Accept, therefore, our eyewitness testimony so that you may be saved from Hell.’ Can anyone in his right mind and conscience, possessing an enlightened heart, accept that someone ever returned from the dead and delivered such a lecture and yet people did not believe him?

Anyone who still does not understand to what extent Signs are shown is himself a dead man. If Signs required such speeches by the dead, faith would have no meaning because faith is called faith at the point that something is perceived manifest in one way while simultaneously perceived hidden in another way; meaning that, its proof can be discovered through fine observation, but if it is not looked at with fine observation, the truth can remain concealed upon cursory observation. However, when the entire veil [of concealment] has been lifted, then who would not accept something so openly obvious? So by ‘miracles’ is meant the supernormal phenomena that are proven through deep and judicious perception, and which none but those supported by God are capable of showing; it is for this reason that they are called supernormal phenomena. The eternally unfortunate, however, cannot benefit from such miracles. The Jews, for instance, witnessed many miracles at the hands of the Messiah, may peace be upon him, but failed to benefit from them. Instead they objected that some of his prophecies had not been fulfilled such as the prophecy that had been made about the
twelve thrones for his disciples, of whom one later became an apostate. His claim of being the King of the Jews was also proved baseless, so then he had to give the interpretation that he meant ‘Heavenly Kingdom’. Ḥaḍrat Masih [the Messiah] had also prophesied that the people of that time would still be alive when he would return to this world, but this, too, proved to be clearly false. Likewise, it had been prophesied by the previous Prophets that the Messiah would not come until Ilyās [Elijah] returned to this world, but Ilyās did not come. Nevertheless, Jesus son of Mary claimed to be the Messiah who had been promised even though Ilyās did not return to the world! When he was asked about the promise regarding Ilyās, he said that Yūḥannā [John the Baptist]—that is, the Prophet Yahyā—was Ilyās so that he might somehow qualify himself to be the promised Messiah; all this despite the fact that the previous Prophets had made no such interpretation and the Prophet Yahyā himself believed that the coming Ilyās mentioned in the prophecy was meant to be the same Ilyās who had passed away. But the Messiah—that is, Yasū‘ ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary]—opposed the consensus of the previous Prophets and all the sages in declaring Yahyā—his own mentor—to be the Ilyās who was supposed to return. Strangely enough, Yahyā himself denies being Ilyās, but Yasū‘ ibn Maryam insisted on propping him up as Ilyās nevertheless.

Now, it is a point worth considering that the Jews derived no benefit whatsoever from the Signs shown by the Messiah, may peace be upon him. To this day they claim that he worked no miracles; it was only trickery and deceit. This is why the Messiah was forced to say that the adulterous generation of his age sought a Sign from him; there shall no Sign be given unto them.

The example of miracles is, in fact, like the light of a moonlit night, a part of which is obscured by clouds; however, this light is of no use to a night-blind person who cannot see anything at night. It can never happen—nor has it ever happened—that miracles will manifest in this world in the same manner in which they will manifest on the Day of Resurrection. For example, it can never happen that two or three
hundred corpses should rise from the dead bringing with them both the fruits of Paradise and the flames of Hell’s fire as they go from town to town testifying to the truth of a Prophet who is, at that moment, present among his people, and the people should recognize them as actually having died while now being brought back to life as they raise hue and cry through their sermons and lectures that this person who claims prophethood is, in fact, truthful. So remember that such miracles have never been manifested, nor will they ever manifest in the future until the Day of Judgment. Anyone who claims that such miracles have ever been manifested, is simply deluded by baseless myths and is totally unaware of the way of Allah. Had such miracles ever happened, this world would cease to be what it is, and all veils would have been lifted, leaving faith with no reward whatsoever.

Keep in mind that miracles are only granted to the men of God to demonstrate the difference between truth and falsehood. The real purpose of a miracle is none other than that a distinction between a truthful one and a liar be established in the view of the wise and just, and a miracle is manifested only to the extent that is sufficient to establish such distinction. And this extent is determined by the need of the time, and, besides, the nature of the miracles also corresponds to the condition of that age. It does not mean that whenever a prejudiced, ignorant, and evil-minded person demands a miracle, it must be shown no matter how contrary it is to divine wisdom or the need of the moment. Were it so, it would be as harmful to one’s own faith as it would be contrary to divine wisdom. For, if the realm of miracles were to be stretched to the extent that whatever has been put off until the Day of Resurrection can be entirely witnessed in this world, then no difference would be left between this world and the Hereafter. It is due to this very difference that reward is earned for the righteous actions and true beliefs adopted in this world, but if the same beliefs and actions are adopted in the Hereafter, they will not earn even one iota of reward. As declared in the Scriptures of all Prophets as well as in the Holy Quran, no belief or deed will be of any avail on the Day of
Judgment, and all affirmations of faith will be futile; for, faith is only called faith at the point when something hidden is believed. But when the veil has been lifted and the spiritual realm has appeared like daybreak, and all affairs have been decisively manifested which leave no doubt about the existence of God and the Day of Judgment, then to accept something—which is called ‘faith’ in other words—at that time is like trying to achieve what has already been achieved. In short, a Sign is not something so openly self-evident that the entire world is obliged to accept it without any disagreement, excuse, or hesitation; and no one, regardless of his disposition, is left with any doubt about it and even the dullest of the dullest men accepts it without a qualm.

A Sign or a miracle, therefore, is not a self-evident phenomenon for men of every disposition so that it should be accepted as soon as it is witnessed; rather, the fact is that only the wise, just, righteous, and truthful people derive benefit from Signs. They are the ones who, on account of their intuition, far-sightedness, keen observation, fair-mindedness, fear of God, and righteous conduct, come to realize that these phenomena are not the ordinary phenomena of this world, and that an impostor has no ability to show them. They know that such things are well beyond human fabrication and transcend the reach of mortals, and within them exist such uniqueness and distinctive characteristics, against which the ordinary abilities of man and his elaborately planned schemes are powerless. And these people, by virtue of their profound wisdom and light of intuition, understand that these phenomena possess a certain light and fragrance emanating from the hand of God, which cannot be mistaken for any cunning, deceit, or trickery. Thus, just as sunlight alone is insufficient for one to believe in the light of the sun—rather, it is equally vital to possess the eyesight with which to see the light—similarly, in order to believe in the light of a miracle, the miracle itself is insufficient and the light of intuition is equally necessary. Unless he who witnesses the miracle is naturally endowed with true insight and the light of sound reason, it is impossible for him to believe in it. But the wretched one bereft of the light
of intuition finds no satisfaction in miracles that are only meant for making a distinction; and persists in his demand that he will not accept any miracle except that which is as clear as Doomsday. He demands, for instance, that someone should go to heaven and return before his very eyes holding a book in his hand. Not only that, he also says that he will not believe unless he himself takes the book in his own hand and reads from it. Or, for instance, that the one who descends should bring with him a piece of the moon or the sun to illuminate the earth. Or, better still, he should descend from heaven accompanied by angels, performing supernormal acts as angels do. Or that ten or twenty dead people should be resurrected through his prayer, and they should be recognized as fathers or grandfathers of so and so, who had died at such and such a time. As if all this was not enough, it also being necessary that these resurrected people must hold rallies in different cities and deliver lectures, loudly proclaiming that they are the dead who have been brought back to the world in order to testify to the truth of a particular religion or to bear witness that a certain person who claims to be from God is indeed from Him, for they have heard from God Himself that he is truthful.

Such are the self-conceived miracles that the majority of ignorant people, who are totally unaware of the essence of faith, are in the habit of demanding. They also demand other similarly unreasonable and absurd phenomena that are far removed from the true will and intention of God. For example, some time ago a man from among the Āryah by the name of Lekh Rām came to Qadian and demanded just such a Sign from me. I endeavoured to make him understand that the Signs are meant to distinguish between truth and falsehood, and that they are only shown insofar as they serve this purpose. But he had been so deprived of sense and deluded by his prejudice that he failed to understand this fact. Eventually, on account of his denial of Signs, he himself became the very target of the Sign of God while he was in Lahore. As I had prophesied in response to his false prophecy, he died within six years. This divine decree was communicated five
years in advance to hundreds of thousands of people, yet no one could stop it from happening. It was a Sign that distinguished Islam from the Āryah faith, for I professed the truth of Islam while Lekh Rām stood for the truth of the Āryah faith. In support of his claim, he had written in his book—which still exists—that Parmeshwar [God] had informed him through revelation that I would die of cholera within three years. As against this, I, on the authority of sure information from God, had published the notice that Lekh Rām would be killed within six years and had appointed the day and date of his death. And it came to pass accordingly. This is the distinguishing Sign that bears testimony to the truth of Islam, but, unfortunately, the Āryas derived no benefit from it.

In short, true religion is not merely beholden to reason, for this would bring it into discredit and give rise to the suspicion that its texts have been plagiarised from men of letters—of whom there has been no dearth in this world. Rather, in addition to rational arguments, a true religion also demonstrates its intrinsic quality—that is, heavenly Signs. This is indeed the hallmark of a true faith.

The truth is that the self-concocted miracles and wonders which are tales of extreme exaggeration that ignorant people commonly attribute to some religions or personalities, cannot be a source of pride for any religion; on the contrary, they are a source of disgrace and humiliation. No other Prophet has had so many fictitious miracles attributed to him as have been attributed to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, to the extent that some ignorant ones even imagine that he had revived thousands—rather, hundreds of thousands—of the dead. The Gospels have documented such highly exaggerated accounts even to the point that on one occasion all the dead buried in a graveyard, which had existed for thousands of years, were revived and all of them walked into the city alive.

Now, anyone with intelligence can judge: Who would believe this degree of hard-heartedness that despite millions of people suddenly coming to life and entering into the city, recounting their stories to
their descendants and confirming the truth of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, but the Jews still did not believe! Moreover, if the revival of thousands of corpses was, in fact, the vocation of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, reason dictates that all of those corpses would not have been deaf and dumb. Some of them must have been the brothers, fathers, sons, mothers, grandmothers, grandfathers, or other near and dear relatives of those to whom these miracles were shown. For this reason a vast scheme had been opened for Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, to convert disbelievers into believers. Many of those [revived] corpses who were relatives of those Jews must have accompanied Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, and he must have arranged for them to deliver public addresses in a number of cities that must have been heard with the utmost interest and eagerness. When a corpse would stand up to address the audience: ‘O ye before me! Many of you present here at this time recognize me as you buried me with your own hands. Now I come before you having heard from the mouth of God that Jesus the Messiah is true, and he is the very one who revived me’—then this would have had an amazing effect, and it is obvious that such lectures from the dead would have had a massive impact upon the hearts of the people of the Jewish nation. Thousands upon thousands of Jews would have believed. Yet the Holy Quran and the Gospels affirm that the Jews had totally rejected Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him; in spiritual reform he was the least successful of all Prophets, and almost all the Jews considered him a deceiver and an impostor.

Ponder over it, O intelligent ones: Should this have been the result of such a supreme and magnificent miracle! Given that thousands of resurrected corpses testified to the truth of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him—even affirming that they have seen Heaven inhabited only by the Christians who follow Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, and seeing Hell filled with the Jews who rejected Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā—who could dare have even the slightest doubt in the truthfulness of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā after all of these testimonies? And should anyone have doubted, then his ancestors—having been revived—would have been there to kill them saying, ‘O
ye wretches! You doubt after our testimonies?’ Therefore, understand with full conviction that such ‘miracles’ are pure fiction. There is no doubt in the phenomenon of a miracle itself, but it only occurs to the extent that I shall henceforth explain in detail.

It is a great pity that the Muslims attribute such miracles to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, that go against the norms set by the Holy Quran. They walk upon the road leading to a dead end. Not only do they go to the extent of believing the old Christian tales regarding Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, but for the future they also believe that—contrary to the experience of the whole world—his descent from the heavens will occur at any moment, and they claim that in the coming Latter Days (although according to the age of the world—which is seven thousand years—these are the very Latter Days!), Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā will descend from the heavens alongside angels, creating a great spectacle. A swarm of hundreds of thousands of people will gaze upon the sky and people looking from afar will say, ‘He’s come! He’s come!’ as he descends near a white minaret in Damascus. However, the wonder is that such marvels are attributed to a weak and meek man who was not only unable to bring the Prophet Ilyās back to the world as proof of his own prophethood, but also to the point of even being hung upon the cross! Such phenomena are readily spoken about him. If such stories merit acceptance, then why do they deny the miracle of Ḥaḍrat Sayyed ‘Abdul-Qādir Jīlānī that is so well known among the masses, whereby he pulled a boat out of the bottom of the sea twelve years after it had sunk while carrying a wedding party, and all the people emerged forth alive, singing and rejoicing with bands and drums beating as they had been when the boat had sunk? Similarly, in another miracle it is said that once the Angel of Death took away the soul of one of his followers without his permission. When he learnt of this, he immediately flew up to the heavens, seized the angel, hitting him with a stick and breaking his leg. Thus, all the souls that the angel had extracted that day were set free and came to life again. The angel tearfully complained to God Almighty, but Allah Almighty said that ‘Abdul-Qādir occupies the
station of *Mahbūbiyyat* [being the beloved of God], so that none could get in his way, and even if he had revived every corpse that had ever passed away, he would be entitled to do so.

Now, whereas such well-publicised marvels have not been accepted while there was not much harm in accepting them, then why are such accounts—which are not only against the purport of the Holy Quran but also aid the idolatry of worshipping Jesus—attributed to a person whose worship has deprived 400 million people from the *Tauhid* [Oneness] of God Almighty? I cannot understand what superiority or uniqueness Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary] holds over other Prophets. Consequently, how egregiously wrong it is to assign him a ‘uniqueness’ which is the basis for idolatry from which a vast nation of people has been ruined! Alas! How sad that they have ruined themselves by relying upon a purely fabricated atonement, never giving any thought to the fact that only he will cross the ego’s river of fire who builds his ark with his own hands, and only he will get wages who does his work himself; and only he will save himself from loss who carries his own burden. How ignorant it is for a man to abandon all of his own efforts—depending upon another for his success—and to consider the physical strength of another to be of any benefit to his spiritual life!

It is the law of God that He has not made any human being unique in any aspect, and no one can say that he has such and such characteristic that no one else has. Had such been the case, this would form the basis for holding such a person as being worthy of worship. During the time of our Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, some Christians presented the uniqueness of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, as being born without a father, upon which Allah Almighty immediately replied through this verse of the Holy Quran:

\[
فَيَكُوْنُ كُنْ لَهٗ قَالَ ثُمَّ تُرَابٍ مِنْ خَلَقَهٗ اٰدَمَ كَمَثَلِ اللّٰهِ عِنْدَ عِيْسٰى مَثَلَ اِنَّ
\]

1. *Sūrah Al-e-'Imrān*, 3:60 [Publisher]
Meaning: ‘The case of ‘Īsā [with Allah] is like the case of Adam. God created him from dust and said to him “Be”, and he was.’ In the same way was ‘Īsā born of Maryam’s blood and Maryam’s fluid, and when God said ‘Be’, he was. What is so divine and unique in this trivial matter? In the rainy season, thousands of insects are born without a father or mother, and come out of the earth on their own; no one declares them to be God, no one worships them, no one prostrates before them. So if it is not ignorance to create such an uproar over Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him—without rhyme or reason—then what is it?

And to say that he is still alive to this day while all other Prophets have passed away goes against the Holy Quran. Allah the Almighty categorically affirms his death in the Holy Quran, so how can he be alive? It is also proven from the Holy Quran that he will never return. The verse 1
tَوَفَّيْتَنِيْ فَلَمَّا
establishes both these points because the meanings of the entire verse from beginning to end are that on the Day of Judgment, God will question Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, whether he told people to worship him and his mother. To this he will reply: ‘As long as I was present among my people, I was aware of their condition and was a witness, but when You caused me to die, You alone were aware of their circumstances.’ In other words, after my death I knew nothing about their circumstances. Now, this verse categorically proves two points:

1. First, that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, admits in this verse that as long as he was present among them, he was their guardian and they did not transgress in his presence, but after his death they went astray. Thus, if it is assumed that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, is still alive in heaven to this day, then it will also have to be admitted along with it that the Christians have not yet gone astray to this day; for, in this verse their going

1. But since You did cause me to die (Sūrah al-Mā‘idah, 5:118). [Publisher]
astray has been established to be a result of the sentence \( \text{تَوَفَّيْتَنِيْ فَلَمَّا} \); that is, it has been made contingent upon the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him. However, since it is obvious that the Christians have indeed gone astray, it must be necessarily admitted along with it that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, has also died. Any other interpretation would constitute the rejection of a Quranic verse.

2. Second, it is clearly stated in this verse that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, will deny any knowledge of the Christians’ transgression and will say that he knew of their condition only up to the time he was present among them, but ever since he had been caused to die, he was completely unaware of what happened after him. Now, it is evident that his excuse would be sheer perjury in the event he had returned to this world any time before the Day of Judgment and learnt that the Christians had gone astray. If that were so, the retort from God Almighty should have been: ‘O insolent man! Why are you lying in front of My face in My court, and why are you falsely claiming that you had absolutely no knowledge of their transgression, whereas you know that I had sent you back again into the world before the Day of Judgment and you fought wars against the Christians, breaking their cross and killing their swine! Yet [you dare] so much falsehood before Me as if you know nothing!’ Now, it is obvious how disgraceful for Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, is the belief that he would return to this world, and—God forbid—thereby expose him to the charge of perjury.

If, however, you should ask: ‘How, then, are we supposed to interpret the \text{ahādīth} \ [pl. hadith] wherein it is written that ‘Īsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary] will descend?’, the reply is: ‘Interpret them in the

---

1. But since You did cause me to die (Ṣūrah al-Māʾidah, 5:118). [Publisher]
same manner that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā interpreted the second coming of Ilyās [Elijah]. Moreover, it is clearly documented in the ahādīth that ‘Īsā [of the Latter Days] will be someone from within this Ummah and no one else. It is not written that he will come again; rather, it is written that ‘he will descend.’ If coming again had been the intention, the word رجوع [rujū‘—‘return’] would have been used instead of نزول [nuzūl—‘descent’]. And if, for the sake of the argument, some hadith were to go against the Holy Quran, then it deserves to be rejected; not that the Holy Quran should be rejected on account of any hadith.

Here it should be borne in mind that the Holy Quran came to remove the errors and disputes of the Christians and the Jews. So when we interpret any verse in the Holy Quran that pertains to the Christians and the Jews, we must first examine the dispute that existed between them, for which the Holy Quran pronounces the judgment. In view of this principle, a fair-minded person can readily understand the meaning of the verses:

For, according to the Jewish belief, a person who is killed on the cross becomes accursed and is not spiritually exalted towards God; rather, he goes down towards Satan. Now, God Almighty had to settle in the Holy Quran whether Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was spiritually exalted towards God or not. Hence, God first removed this misconception of the Jews that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was killed on the cross, declaring that it was merely a conjecture which God had cast into their minds.

‘Īsā was not killed through crucifixion so he cannot be considered accursed; rather, he was spiritually exalted as other believers are. Obviously, God Almighty had no need for the useless debate and

---

1. They slew him not, nor crucified him, but he was made to appear to them like one crucified; ... On the contrary, Allah exalted him to Himself (Sūrah an-Nisā‘, 4:158–159). [Publisher]
decision whether Ḥaḍrat Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā bodily ascended to the heavens or not, for this was not the point in dispute by the Jews. The Jews do not believe that a crucified person does not physically ascend to heaven, for such a belief would imply that one who is not crucified ascends physically to the heavens. Nor do the Jews believe that a faithless and accursed man cannot ascend in his physical body to heaven whereas a believer ascends to heaven with his physical body. Even with regard to Mūsā [Moses], who was the greatest Prophet in the opinion of the Jews, they do not believe that he physically ascended to heaven. In short, the whole dispute was about spiritual exaltation. The Jews, in keeping with their doctrine, held that Ḥaḍrat Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was accursed—God forbid—as he was not granted spiritual exaltation for having been killed on the cross, and this was the very error that God had to correct. So He adjudged that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was not accursed; rather, he was spiritually exalted like other believers.

Remember that the word ملعون [malʿūn—‘accursed’] is the antonym of مرفع [marfūʿ—‘exalted’]; where exaltation carries a spiritual connotation. Thus, according to those who hold Ḥaḍrat Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to be accursed for having been crucified, the meaning of ملعون [malʿūn] is only that such a person is not spiritually exalted. Even the Christians made the error of believing that Ḥaḍrat Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was accursed for three days, meaning that he was not spiritually exalted for three days. So if—according to their belief—Ḥaḍrat Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā went to Hades in the condition of being accursed without his physical body, then why was the physical body required in the condition of being exalted? The same rule ought to apply to both conditions. We hold the Christians accountable, too, for having erred with regard to the meaning of exaltation. They believe to this day that, according to the Torah, crucifixion resulted in a spiritual consequence—becoming accursed—which, in other words, means the absence of exaltation. So, according to their belief, this absence of exaltation was a spiritual phenomenon. Therefore, the exaltation should also have been a spiritual phenomenon if there is to be any congruence between the two states.
The Christians believe that, while accursed, Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā descended to Hades and deteriorated to Hell only in the spiritual sense and his body did not accompany him. This being so, why, when it came to exaltation, was it necessary for his physical body to join and accompany him? Furthermore, all the Prophets and rabbis of the Torah have long held that the curse of crucifixion meant the negation of spiritual exaltation. Even today they believe that the one who is killed on the cross is not exalted towards God.

Laʾnāt [‘Curse’] means the absence of exaltation. In any case, since God Almighty had to counter the objection of the Jews, who hold non-exaltation to have a spiritual context to this day—meaning, they say that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā was not spiritually exalted towards God, being a liar—then why did God neglect the essential point, going in another direction as if—God forbid—God Almighty did not even understand the fundamental dispute of the Jews, giving a verdict like a judge who delivers a judgment that has no bearing on the facts of the case? Should such an opinion be deliberately held about God, then what doubt is there in kufr [disbelief]?

Besides, even if we concede that God disregarded the Jews’ fundamental dispute in this verse and stated something quite novel that was irrelevant and unnecessary—namely, that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā was taken to the second heaven with his physical body—such a notion is negated as follows: First, because it is nowhere written in the Holy Quran that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā was bodily taken to the second heaven, but rather the words of the Holy Quran are in fact 1اِلَيْهِ اللّٰهُ رَّفَعَهُ بَلْ meaning that, God exalted ʿĪsā to Himself. Now, think for yourself: Is God seated upon the second heaven in the manner of material objects? It is obvious that exaltation towards God is always indeed spiritual. And so have all Prophets taught that God is not a physical being towards whom one could ascend physically. This is the idiom used throughout the Holy Quran, that whenever it is said of a person that he went towards God

---

1. Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:159 [Publisher]
or was exalted towards Him, it invariably means that he was spiritually exalted, as is evident from this verse wherein Allah Almighty says:

Meaning: ‘And thou, O soul at peace, return to thy Lord.’ So does this mean return with the physical body?

Moreover, here the question arises that if this verse does not speak of spiritual exaltation and does not decide the dispute whereby the Jews denied that Ḥaḍrat Masīḥ was spiritually exalted and—God forbid—declared him accursed, one will naturally ask: Then where is the verse in which God answered this objection as was necessitated by His own promise? In view of all this, it is sheer stubbornness and stupidity to declare the exaltation of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to be a physical ascension. Rather, this is the very exaltation that is imperative for every true believer after he dies, in accordance with the divine promise, whereas the command for the disbelievers is:

Meaning that, the doors of Heaven shall not be opened for them; in other words, they shall not be exalted. Likewise, it is also said in another verse:

Thus, to pervert a straightforward statement is contrary to piety and purity, and amounts to twisting the Word of God.

Everyone knows that at the time of Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah

1. Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:28–29 [Publisher]
2. Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:41 [Publisher]
3. With their gates thrown open to them (Sūrah Ṣād, 38:51). [Publisher]
be pleased with him, the *ijma‘* [consensus] of all the Companions had been established that all Prophets had passed away. This is exactly what the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, understood from the verse:

\[\text{وَمَا مَهَّدَّلَ إِلَّا رَسُولٌ مِّنْ قَبْلِهِ إِلَّا مُحَمَّدٌ لَّا يَمْنَعُهُ عَنْ مِّلَامِحِ الْوُجْدُ}^{1}

Meaning that, all Messengers have passed away.

Was Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā not a Messenger that he should have been exempted from death? To follow the thinking of the Dark Age despite this consensus [of the Companions], is far removed from honesty. This was also the very doctrine of Imām Mālik ῥa that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus] had passed away. Since this was the belief of the predecessor of the Imams, then the same must be the belief of the others. As for past divines who had erred in understanding this truth, their error is worthy of overlooking in the estimation of God Almighty, for there were many such mysteries in this religion that remained concealed during the Medieval Period. However, it was essential for all such errors to be exposed during the time of the Promised Messiah since he would come as the Ḥakam [Arbiter]. Had such errors not crept in during the interim period, the coming of—and the waiting for—the Promised Messiah would have been useless because the Promised Messiah is a Mujaddid [Reformer] and Mujaddids only come to correct errors. How could he whom the Messenger of Allah, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, had named the Ḥakam, be the Ḥakam if no rectification was brought about at his hand? This is indeed the truth; blessed be those who accept it and fear God.

Returning again to our previous subject, I say that the miracles and marvels that the masses have attributed to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā are contrary to the way of Allah. Just as one group has taken themselves to one extreme

---

1. And Muhammad is only a Messenger. Verily, all Messengers have passed away before him (*Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān*, 3:145). [Publisher]
by rejecting miracles altogether, so has the other gone to the opposite extreme by employing extreme exaggeration regarding miracles—both sides having abandoned the middle path. It is evident that without miracles there would be no sure and categorical Sign for the existence of God Almighty, but if miracles are said to be of the kind just described, they deprive one of all the fruits of faith, so that faith can no longer be called faith, and it leads one to the verge of idolatry.

Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, has strangely been the target of the ignorant. During his lifetime, the irreligious Jews called him a disbeliever, a liar, a deceiver, and an impostor, and denied his spiritual exaltation. When he died, he was deified by those who were dominated by the disposition to worship man, whereas the Jews continued to deny even his spiritual exaltation. Now, against this came the doctrine of his physical ascent to heaven and it became widely publicised that he ascended bodily to the heavens, as if to say that the previous Prophets were exalted to heaven spiritually after death, but Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, while yet alive, went to sit in heaven with his physical body, along with his clothes and all his bodily necessities.

This was a hyperbolic response concocted to counter the antagonism and rejection of the Jews with which they denied spiritual exaltation, yet this reply was entirely illogical because the Jews had no concern with bodily ascension whatsoever. It was a doctrine of their shariah [religious law] that those who die on the cross are accursed, disbelievers, and faithless; they are not spiritually exalted towards God Almighty. The doctrine of the Jews was that upon death, the soul of every believer is carried to heaven by angels and the doors of Heaven are opened for him, but the soul of a disbeliever is not raised to heaven. A disbeliever is accursed and his soul goes downwards. Since Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā was put on the cross, and also because some of the disagreements in their religious verdicts, the Jews had declared Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, to be a disbeliever; since, in their view, he had been killed through crucifixion and it was clearly decreed in the Torah that whoever is thus killed on the cross is accursed; therefore, on the basis of
these reasons, they had declared Ḥaḍrat Ḥaqq to be a disbeliever and had rejected his spiritual exaltation.

In the opinion of the Jews, the plea that the Messiah went up to the heavens in his physical body was laughable. As a matter of fact, this fabrication was perpetrated by those who were not acquainted with the teachings of the Torah. The very idea in itself is the greatest degree of gibberish, which exposes God to criticism. For, while the Messiah, may peace be upon him, had not yet conveyed his message to all of the tribes of the Jews, which had been divided into various sects, and not even a single sect had been guided through his hand up until that point, to leave the work of preaching incomplete and for Ḥaḍrat Ḥaqq to ascend to heaven is totally against good judgement and tantamount to dereliction of his official responsibility. Moreover, it is self-evident that for Almighty God to arbitrarily seat him in heaven is a frivolous and useless act that can never be ascribed to Almighty God.

In short, it is a slander against Ḥaḍrat Ḥaqq, may peace be upon him, to say that he ascended to heaven with his earthly body. Just as his enemies had slandered him during his lifetime as a disbeliever and a liar, so have those who had gone to the other extreme in his excessive praise—being his foolish friends—bodily lifting him up to the heavens, as has been said: ['Saints do not fly; their disciples give them wings'].

And not only that, but they even declared him to be ‘God’. And then, after more time had elapsed, another doctrine was fabricated to the effect that he will descend from heaven with the same body, the last days of the world will be his, and he will be Khātamul-Anbiyā’ [Seal of the Prophets]. Thus, in no other Prophet do we find anything like the false miracles and marvels that are ascribed to Ḥaḍrat Ḥaqq, may peace be upon him. Stranger still, despite all the supposed miracles, he stands in first place when it comes to the failure and ineffectiveness in spreading the faith. Such a degree of ineffectiveness has not been seen in the case of any other Prophet. However, keep in mind that the religion that is now spreading in his name is not his religion.
The commandments to eat pork and belief in three gods are nowhere to be found in his teachings in the Gospels. Rather, this is the same idolatrous teaching that was opposed by the Prophets. The Torah contained only two major and eternal commands. First, not to deify a man. Second, not to eat [the flesh of] swine. Both commandments were violated by the teachings of St. Paul. 

Surely, to Allah we belong and to Him shall we return.¹

I would now like to elaborate on what a miracle is, and why a miracle is needed. In the first chapter of this book I will lay down the true essence and need of miracles. In the second chapter I will cite some examples of miracles in keeping with my claim. The third chapter would sum up the subject to conclude the book.

---

¹ A phrase from the Holy Quran which is recited by Muslims to express their deepest sorrow. [Publisher]
CHAPTER ONE

In Explanation of the True Nature of a Miracle and its Need

The true nature of a miracle is this: A miracle refers to an extraordinary phenomenon the like of which an opposing party is unable to produce although superficially it may appear to be well within human capabilities, just like the miracle of the Holy Quran which was presented before all the denizens of the land of Arabia. Thus, although superficially it seemed entirely within human capacity, the entire population of Arabia was frustrated in their efforts to produce its like. Therefore, to understand the essence of a miracle, the text of the Holy Quran is a shining example. It may appear, at a cursory glance, to be a literary composition just as human literature is. However, with respect to its eloquent expression; with respect to its exceptionally delectable, pure, and florid diction, everywhere meticulously adhering to truth and wisdom; moreover, with respect to its brilliant arguments which triumph over the entire world’s opposing arguments; and, even further, with respect to its compelling prophecies—it is such a matchless miracle that despite the passage of thirteen hundred years, no adversary has been able to challenge it to this day, nor does anyone have the ability to do so. Of all the books in the world, the Holy Quran holds the distinction of expressing miraculous prophecies in passages that are
themselves miraculous—being full of truth and wisdom—with the highest degree of fluency and eloquence.

In short, the primary and principal purpose of a miracle is to demonstrate the difference between right and wrong or true and false. Such a distinguishing phenomenon is called a miracle or, in other words, a Sign. A Sign is such a vital matter that without it, it is not possible to fully believe even in the existence of God Almighty, nor is it possible to reap the fruit that can be attained with full certainty. It is therefore evident that the fundamental truth of a religion is linked to the knowledge of the existence of God Almighty. One of the necessary and important essentials of a true religion is that it should possess the Signs that conclusively and definitively prove the existence of God Almighty, and that it should possess such an overwhelming force that unites the hand of its follower with the hand of God Almighty. I have already explained that it is not sufficient for the perfect cognition of God to merely look upon creation and feel the need of a Creator without becoming informed of His actual existence. Those who are confined to this degree cannot develop a true bond with Almighty God, nor can they purify their selves from carnal passions. If anything can be understood from this, it is only to the extent that this impregnable structure and perfection ought to have some Creator; not that the Creator actually exists. It is evident that simply feeling the need is a conjecture which cannot merit the same rank as actually seeing, nor can it produce the holy effect of witnessing first-hand. Therefore, any religion which stops man’s cognition of God short at the incomplete destination of just ‘ought to be’ cannot be the remedy to his practical condition. In reality, such a religion is a dead religion; entertaining hope of any pure transformation from it is wishful thinking.

It is evident that rational arguments alone cannot embody the complete evidence for the truth of a religion, and this is not the kind of seal that any counterfeiter is incapable of forging; rather, this can be understood as nothing more than the alms bestowed by the ordinary fountain of reason. Who then will decide whether the rational arguments
written in a book have their origin in revelation or have been plagiarised from some other book? And even if, suppose, they have not been plagiarised, how can they serve as an indisputable proof of the existence of the Exalted Maker? And how can a seeker of truth be fully satisfied that the rational discourse alone will definitely lead towards God, and how can he be satisfied that it is absolutely free from error? Thus, if a religion simply presents some rational or philosophical arguments as a proof of its truth and is unable to show heavenly Signs and miraculous phenomena, the follower of such a religion is either self-deceived or a deceiver. He will die in darkness.

In short, even the existence of God Almighty cannot be proven with certainty solely through rational arguments, let alone the truth of any religion be proven through them. Further, until a religion takes upon itself the responsibility to address this issue—proving and demonstrating God’s existence with complete certainty—that religion amounts to nothing of value whatsoever, and unfortunate is the one who is seduced by such a faith. The mark of curse is branded upon the forehead by every religion which cannot advance human cognition to the level at which one can—so to speak—see God, transform oneself from a carnally dark spiritual state, and acquire fresh faith through the fresh Signs of God; and attain a holy life—not in a manner of mere boasting, but in reality. In order for a person to attain true purity, it is absolutely essential for him to recognize the Living God, who can destroy the disobedient in an instant and walking under whose pleasure is tantamount to the instantaneous recompense of Paradise. Just as it is not enough for a religion to prove its excellence by only presenting some rational arguments, in the same way it is not enough for an apparently pious person to merely claim that he abides by the commandments of Almighty God. Rather, a distinguishing Sign is necessary for him which testifies to his piety, for anyone can claim that he loves Almighty God and that his character is free from every kind of sin and transgression, but how can one be satisfied that such a claim is, in fact, true in reality? If a person is magnanimous, it could be out of a desire for fame. If a person
is a devoted worshipper, then pretence could be his motive, and if one has succeeded in avoiding sin and transgression, it could be on account of his lack of means. It is even possible that one may become pious for fear of people’s reproach, while his heart remains unmoved by the grandeur of Allah. Thus, it is obvious that even if noble behaviour should exist, it still cannot serve as a complete proof of true purity because the conduct may be different in privacy. Therefore, true piety requires the testimony of Almighty God who is the Knower of the unseen. And if it were not like this, then the condition of the pure and impure would become indistinguishable in the world and nothing would be safe and secure. This is why a distinguishing Sign of the highest order is necessary. And know for certain that the religion which does not ordain the honourable robe of Signs as a gift upon the righteous, is not upright and is totally bereft of light. Any Book that comes from God contains within itself the Signs of its own distinction, and also grants distinctive Signs to its follower.

In short, without a distinguishing Sign, there cannot be any crystal clear differentiation between a true religion and a false one, nor can there be a clear and vivid difference between a truthful claimant and an impostor; for, it is quite possible that a person might in fact be corrupt, depraved, and sinful but his misdeeds may not have been exposed. Given this scenario, if this kind of individual also makes claims of piety—as such claims are constantly made throughout the world—then what shining Sign does Almighty God grant for the truly pious one that will set him apart from such charlatans and make him recognizable as clear as daylight? As a matter of fact, since ancient times and ever since the foundation of the world was laid, it has been divine practice as well as the law of nature that in all things good and bad there have been placed distinguishing signs, just as you see that gold and brass are similar in appearance to the point that some ignorant people are even deceived by this; however, the Infinitely Wise has placed within gold a distinguishing sign which a goldsmith immediately recognizes. Similarly, there are many clear and brilliant stones that greatly
resemble diamonds and some naïve people, thinking them to be diamonds, end up losing thousands of rupees, but the Creator of the universe has placed a distinctive sign for diamonds which an astute jeweller can recognize. Likewise, look at all of the world’s jewels and fine commodities and see that although they may seem to resemble objects of discarded and worthless grades, every unblemished and valuable gem manifests its own uniqueness through its distinctive sign. Were this not the case, the world would have plunged in disorder. Look at humanity itself; although man bears resemblance in shape with many animals such as a monkey, there is a distinguishing feature on account of which we can never call any monkey a man. Therefore, since in this material world—which is frail and fickle and whose loss is nothing whatsoever in comparison to the Hereafter—God the Infinitely Wise has established a distinctive sign for every excellent and exquisite jewel whereby that jewel is easily recognized, then how can we believe that there is no unequivocal and conclusive Sign for the recognition of a religion—whose error leads all the way to Hell—and, likewise, for the existence of a righteous man of Allah—the denial of whom casts into the pit of eternal damnation? Who, then, can be more foolish and naïve than the one who contends that God has established no distinctive characteristic for a true religion or for a truly righteous person? However, the fact is that Almighty God Himself says in the Holy Quran that the Book of God, which forms the basis of religion, contains within itself distinctive characteristics, the like of which no one can produce. Moreover, He says that every believer is granted a distinction through which he is recognized. Thus, know it for certain, that a true religion and a truly righteous person does possess such distinctive characteristics. These are the Signs which, in other words, are called miracles, wonders, and supernormal phenomena.

It is proven through my explanation herewith that a true religion is certainly in need of a miraculous quality that is not found in any other religion, and a truly righteous person necessarily requires that such calibre of miraculous succour from Allah should encompass his
circumstances whose likeness cannot be found in others, lest weak mortals who stumble from the slightest doubts be deprived of the treasure of acceptance [of the truth]. Just ponder and look at the case of those given to doubt and negligence; their predicament is such that despite the true appointees of God manifesting hundreds of Signs, and God ordaining their support from every direction, even then they get caught up in their confusion out of their own misfortune and, failing to attain any benefit from thousands of Signs, become fixated in various types of suspicion. What, then, would be their condition in the event that there were no distinguishing Sign from the heavens for an appointee of Allah, but reliance was placed merely upon the display of dry piety and superficial worship, thereby opening the door of suspicions? So God, who is Gracious and Merciful, did not will that the world should perish by rejecting a divinely approved religion or person. Therefore, He stamped the true religion with the seal of perpetual Signs, and granted to the truly righteous ones the Sign of His acceptance through His extraordinary works. The fact is that God has not withheld anything in granting distinguishing Signs to His chosen faith and His chosen man. He has caused them to shine brighter than the sun, and has demonstrated such marvels in their favour as have never been seen or heard in the entire world. God does indeed exist, but the mirror in which His countenance can be seen are the faces of those showered with His love, and with whom God speaks just as friend speaks to friend. They have comprehended the perfect reality of Ta’līhūd [the Oneness of God] by effacing all trace of duality through the predominance of love [for Allah]. Ta’līhūd does not just mean to know God as One while being separated from Him. Even Satan acknowledges such Ta’līhūd. Rather, in addition, it is also necessary that one should practically—that is, with absolute passion of love while effacing one’s own existence—arrive at the Oneness of God. This is the perfect Ta’līhūd upon which salvation depends and which is vouchsafed to godly persons. So, it would not be inaccurate to say that God descends into them, because a vacuum, by nature, wants to fill itself. His descent, however, is not physical, but
rather in a manner that transcends the bounds of how and why. Thus, by God’s special manifestation, the righteous are imbued with the blessings that belong to God. And their life becomes a miraculous life. They are transformed. And their being becomes a new being which the world cannot see. But the fortunate do see its effects. Because now that manifestation is present and such Signs of divine support are evident which differentiate me from others, I will now invite seekers of truth towards Almighty God by writing down some Signs which accord with the way of God in respect of His appointees and which complete the argument of God against the perverse bigots.

[And I have no power other than with Allah, the Benevolent, the All-Powerful].
CHAPTER TWO

In explanation of the Signs that were fulfilled by virtue of the prophecies published in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya twenty-five years before this time

Let it be known that Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya is the book from my compositions which was published in 1880 CE; that is, 1297 AH. At the time of its publication, as is apparent from the contents of the book itself, I lived in such a state of obscurity that there were very few people who were even aware of my existence. I was at that time a solitary figure and no one was acquainted with me. I lived a life of solitude and was quite happy and contented, when out of the favour of the Eternal Divine, I had this sudden experience: One day, towards evening, in this very house and at the exact spot where I am now standing while writing these lines, I was overcome by a slight slumber and received this revelation from Almighty God:

یَا أَحْمَدُ بَارَكَ اللُّٰلْلَٰهُ فِیْكَ۔مَا رَمَیْتَ اِذْ رَمَیْتَ وَلٰکِ اللَّٰلْلَّٰ رَمٰی۔ اَلرَّحْمٰنُ عَلَّمَ الْقُرْاٰنَ لِتُنْذِرَ قَوْمًا

Meaning that, O Ahmad! God has blessed you. You did not throw

1. See Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, p. 239* (Author)

*In the 2008 edition of Rūhani Khazā’in, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, page 265. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part III, this text appears on page 207. [Publisher]
when you threw, but it was Allah who threw. It is God who taught you
the Quran—that is to say, He informed you of its true meaning—so
that you might warn a people whose ancestors had not been warned,
and so that the way of the guilty ones might become manifest and they
may be held accountable for rejecting you. Tell them: I have come from
Almighty God having been commissioned by Him, and I am the first
of the believers.

Upon descent of this revelation, on the one side I was moved to
express my gratitude for the limitless favours of God Almighty in hav-
ing chosen a man like me who had no ability whatsoever within himself
for such a great mission, while on the other side I was also assailed by
the thought that, in conformity with divine practice, every commis-
sioned one must have a community of followers so that they may assist
him and be his helpers. It is also necessary to have financial resources
to be spent for the religious needs that arise. Further, in keeping with
the way of Allah, the presence of enemies is also essential, and it is also
essential to overcome them in order to remain protected from their
evil. In addition, it is also necessary that the preaching should be effec-
tive, so that it may serve as proof of the truth of the claimant, and so
that he may not fail in the mission that has been entrusted to him.

As I pondered over these matters, a host of difficulties loomed large
and a very frightful scenario appeared, for when I looked at myself, I
felt that I was absolutely unknown and a solitary figure among the

1. ☆ There are three splendid manifestations for the Holy Quran: it came down
through Our Master Ḥaḍrat Muḥammad Muṣṭafā [the Chosen One], may
peace and blessings of Allah be upon him; the Companions, may Allah be
pleased with them, spread it in the earth; and many of its secrets were re-
vealed through the Promised Messiah. وَلِكُلِّ اَمْرٍ وَقْتٍ مَّعْلُوْم۔ [There is an appointed
time for everything]. Just as it descended from heaven, so did its light reach
up to heaven. In the time of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of
Allah be upon him, all its commandments were completed, and during the
time of the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, every aspect of its
teachings was widely published, and in the time of the Promised Messiah its
spiritual blessings and secrets were manifested to perfection. (Author)
people. This is because I was neither the successor of a saint nor affiliated with a shrine, so that those who were devoted to my ancestors should rally around me and make my task easy; nor had I descended from some renowned scholar, thereby retaining the link with hundreds of his disciples; nor had I received formal education or certification from a scholar, so that I might have relied on my accumulated wealth of knowledge. I was not a monarch nor lord or ruler of any land, so that the awe, inspired by my governance, might have made thousands of people follow me. Instead, I was a humble man with no means, living in a remote village, completely cut off from the distinguished people who are—or can be—the centre of people’s attention.

In short, I did not enjoy any such kind of respect, popularity, or renown which would make me think that this burden of spreading the message could be easy for me to accomplish. Naturally, I perceived this mission to be extremely difficult and seemingly impossible. Besides this, other difficulties appeared as some aspects of this message were of a nature that there was absolutely no hope that people could accept them. There was not even so much as the expectation that the people could acknowledge the fact that the descent of non-law-bearing revelation had not ceased after the time of the Prophethood [of the Holy Prophet] and would continue until the Last Day. On the contrary, it was clearly known that upon a claim of revelation, the gift received from them would be a declaration of apostasy, and all the ulema would present a united front to persecute and destroy such a claimant; for, in their view, after our holy master—the Protector of the Quranic Recitation and the Messenger of Allah, may peace and blessing of Allah be upon him—a seal has been placed on divine revelation until the Last Day, and now it is completely impossible for anyone to experience converse and discourse with Allah.

In short, they believe that this blessed Ummah has been eternally denied the kind of blessings whereby God Almighty may honour them with His converse and promote the growth of their spiritual knowledge and inform them directly of His existence. Now, in their blind
following, they are merely beating the drum that they have inherited, yet they do not possess an iota of spiritual knowledge based on personal experience. True, some of them hold the absurd belief that although revelation may be received by the pious, there is no way of telling if it is from God or from Satan. Now, it is obvious that a ‘revelation’ that can also be attributed to Satan, cannot be counted among God’s favours that are beneficial to one’s faith. Instead, the dubious nature of such revelations and their resemblance to the words of Satan is a curse that can land someone in Hell. If God has accepted the prayer, 

from any of His servants and has admitted him into the fold of the blessed, then, in keeping with His promise, He must have granted him a portion of the spiritual reward which consists of definitive converse and discourse with Allah.

In short, this was the very issue that would have provided an opportunity for the people in this blind world to vent their fury and wrath. So, for a helpless and lonely person like me, the combination of all these factors portended failure.\(^2\) Indeed, it seemed that I was facing

1. The path of those on whom You have bestowed Your blessings (Sūrah al-Fātiha, 1:7). [Publisher]

2. \(*\) One difficulty from among the many I faced in inviting people was on account of my claim of being a Messenger, being a recipient of divine revelation, and of being the Promised Messiah. It was to express my anxiety in this regard that this revelation was sent down:

The word مخاض [makhād] here means matters that lead to fearful results. And جذع النخلة [trunk of a palm-tree] refers to the people who are descended from Muslims but are themselves only Muslim in name. So the interpretive translation would be, ‘The most painful invitation to the people that would result in his people becoming his mortal enemies led the ordained one to the people who had become dry like the trunk or branch of a palm-tree.
complete disaster, because no aspect was favourable for success. The first requirement is money, but at the time of this revelation of God, all our landed property had been lost, and there was not a single person with me who could provide financial support. Secondly, I was not the scion of some distinguished family who could have an impact on anyone. I was helpless on all counts. It was but natural for me to have been overawed by this revelation. At that time, I stood in great need to be comforted by Almighty God’s glorious promises, to safeguard me from dying of unbearable anxiety. I, therefore, cannot find words to adequately express my gratitude to the Benevolent and Omnipotent Lord, who did support me with His glad tidings in my hour of helplessness and anguish, and subsequently fulfilled all His promises. If the help and succour of God Almighty had come about without prior prophecies, they could have been attributed to good luck or chance, but now they constitute such extraordinary Signs that only a person of satanic nature would dare deny them.

Thereafter, God fulfilled all the promises that He had made a long time ago in the form of prophecies. He helped and supported me in every way. All those difficulties, the mere thought of which may well have broken my back, and the anxieties from which I feared for my life—He removed them all. And as He had promised, so did He bring forth. Although He could have shown me His help and support without informing me beforehand, He chose not to do so. Instead, He granted me prophecies about His support and help at a time of hopelessness that could be likened to the period in the life of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, when he walked in the streets of Makkah all alone with no one by his side, and with no apparent sign of success.

In the same way, the prophecies made during the period when I was unknown were regarded by people as ludicrous, unreasonable, and like

Then, out of fear, he said, would that I had died before this and had become a thing quite forgotten.’ (Author)
the ravings of a maniac. Who knew that a time would actually come in which thousands would come to visit me in Qadian as was ordained in those prophecies, and several hundred thousand individuals would enter into the pledge of allegiance with me, and I would not remain alone as I had been at the time? God gave me these tidings during the time when I was unknown and alone so that they should stand out as great Signs in the sight of a man of understanding and a seeker after truth, and so that those searching for truth may know with complete conviction that this enterprise is not of human origin nor can it possibly be of human origin.

At that time I was unknown, alone, and a man of meagre means—means so meagre that my ability was not even worth mention—and I did not belong to any such distinguished family that people would be expected to readily gather around me. At such a time and in such a predicament, who could have made the kind of prophecies that were published in *Barâhîn-e-Ahmadiyya* twenty-five years\(^1\) ago, some of which I reproduce here by way of specimen:

---

1. \(^\star\) Actually, many of the prophecies in *Barâhîn-e-Ahmadiyya* were revealed about thirty years ago, so twenty-five years is the time since *Barâhîn-e-Ahmadiyya* was written, not since the prophecies were revealed. (Author)

Translation: When the help of Allah and victory comes and the world will turn towards me, it will be said: Was this enterprise not from God? And despair not of the mercy of Allah. That is, do not think that I am just an unknown and solitary person—a man who is one among the people—how would it happen that the people of the world will join together with me? For, God has willed that it be exactly so and His help is nigh. The roads by which monetary assistance and letters of allegiance shall arrive, those streets shall become broken and rutted. That is to say, all kinds of financial resources will arrive, and they will come from far-off places, and there will also come many letters professing allegiance from far-off places. Moreover, so many people will come to you that the roads upon which they will travel will become rutted.

God will help you from Himself. Such people will help you whose hearts We Ourself shall inspire from the heavens. You are before Our eyes [under Our watchful care]. God will exalt your praise and perfect His bounty upon you in this world and the Hereafter. You are to Me like My Tauhid [Oneness] and Tafrid [Uniqueness]. Thus has the time come when you will be helped and your name will be proclaimed throughout the world. And why do you marvel that God will bring this about like so? Was there not a time when you were absolutely non-existent and there was no trace of you in this world? Is it then beyond God's power to grant you such help and bring about the fulfilment of these promises? And give the glad tiding to those who believe that in the eyes of God their steps are the steps of truth [i.e. they firmly stand upon truth].

And recite to them whatever has been revealed to you from your Lord. Remember that a time is coming that people will come to you in large numbers. It is incumbent upon you not to be discourteous towards them and you must not get tired of receiving them in large numbers. There will even be such people
who will migrate from their homes to dwell in your quarters. These are the very ones who are called *Aṣḥābūs-Suffāh*¹ in the estimation of Allah. And do you know how faithful and glorious a people they will be—those who are called by the name *Aṣḥābūs-Suffāh*? They will be exceedingly strong in faith. You will see their eyes shedding tears; they will call down blessings upon you. They will supplicate: ‘O our Lord! We have heard the cry of a Caller, calling people to faith. So we have believed.’ Write down all these prophecies, for they will be fulfilled at the appointed time.

The prophecies in these few lines comprise so many Signs that they would exceed one million. And the Signs themselves are so manifest that they constitute extraordinary miracles of the first order. In order to elucidate the matter, I will first state the types of prophecies, and then I will provide evidence that these prophecies have been fulfilled. They are indeed extraordinarily supernormal Signs. And even if they were to be counted very strictly and carefully, the Signs that have been manifested would still exceed one million.

Among the different types of prophecies:

1. The first is the prophecy that is indicated in the revelation in which God Almighty says that: We will wage war against the opponents. The opponents will desire that this dispensation should fail, and that people should neither be drawn to it nor accept it, but We desire that people should turn towards it.

---

¹ In one corner of the Prophet’s mosque in Madinah, a covered platform was prepared which was known as ‘Suffah’. This served as the resting place of indigent Emigrants who dedicated themselves to the worship of Allah, the company of the Holy Prophet⁵⁵⁸, and recitation of the Holy Quran. They became known as *Aṣḥābūs-Suffāh*. [Publisher]
Ultimately, Our will shall prevail and people will turn towards it and they will go on accepting it.

2. The second kind of prophecies are those in which God gives tidings of financial support that will arrive from far-off places and of letters that shall arrive from distant lands. And financial support shall come with such continuity and abundance that the roads upon which it will come will become worn and rutted.

3. The third prophecy is that God declares that so many people shall come to Qadian—motivated by love and devotion—that the roads on which they will travel to get here will become damaged and worn out.

4. The fourth prophecy is that God says that people will try to kill and destroy you, but that We shall remain your Guardian.

5. The fifth prophecy is that God says that He shall grant me renown throughout the world and my fame shall reach far and wide, and that I shall be helped.

6. The sixth prophecy is that God says that people shall come to me in such large numbers that I may well-nigh get tired or that, because of their large numbers, I might be impolite towards them.

7. The seventh prophecy is that God says that many people shall migrate from their homelands and come to me in Qadian. They will stay in various parts of my houses and will be called Ashābus-Suffah.

These are the seven prophecies foretold in the words of these divine revelations, and every intelligent person can understand that all seven of them have been fulfilled in the present time. This is so because many religious scholars and custodians of shrines prepared edicts of
apostasy against me and hatched all kinds of schemes, exerting themselves down to their fingernails to prevent people from coming to me. They flung modesty aside and waged war against God Almighty, sparing nothing of cunning, fraud, and deception. Some have secretly sent false accusations against me to somehow incite the Government, and some have incited ignorant Muslims so that they would keep tormenting me. But, in the end, all of them remained frustrated. This seedling could not remain hidden within the earth and it arose in the form of a jamā’at [community]. There is no need to prove this, for it is all too obvious.

The second prophecy was that financial support would pour in from every direction. To date, more than fifty thousand rupees has arrived as financial assistance. Rather, I am sure it has almost reached a hundred thousand, for which the records of the Post Office are a sufficient proof.

The third prophecy was that people shall come to me in great numbers. Accordingly, they have come in such great numbers that if we were to count the daily visitors, as well as those who come on special occasions, they would be in the range of several hundred thousand. The staff of the Police Department, who have orders to be vigilant over these matters, know it well and it is also well known to the residents of Qadian.

The fourth prophecy was that God promised: ‘I will save you from people’s onslaughts and will keep you before My eyes.’ This, too, has been manifested. For example, in the lawsuit instituted by Dr. Martyn Clark, they conspired to get me hanged. Similarly, Karam Din, who filed baseless criminal cases against me, also had the same desire that I should somehow be sentenced to confinement with hard labour. He was not alone in these lawsuits; rather, many maulawis [religious clerics] and other jealous worldly people were with him who made donations to him, but God saved me and demonstrated the truth of His prophecies.

Then the fifth prophecy was that God would grant me honour and
fame throughout the world. Its fulfilment also requires no explanation. The sixth prophecy was that so many people would come to me that I would very nearly tire of them or be impolite to them due to the strain of so much hospitality. The fulfilment of this prophecy is also very apparent. All those who have had occasion to visit Qadian can testify that, actually, at times so many people are gathered here and there is so much coming and going that if I did not have this commandment in mind at all times, I would be in danger of becoming impolite or lax in my duties as a host, owing to the frailty of human nature. To greet everyone cheerfully and to be polite to everyone despite a gathering of hundreds of people cannot be done by every person except with the help of God. The seventh prophecy relates to the Ashābuṣ-Suffah who have migrated to Qadian; whomsoever wishes may come and see for himself.

These are the seven kinds of Signs, each of which comprises within it thousands of Signs. For instance, there is the prophecy:

\[
\text{یَأْتِیْكَ مِنْ كُلِّ فَجٍّ عَمِیْق}
\]

Meaning that, financial and material assistance shall come to me from everywhere and from far-off countries, and letters, too, shall come.

Now, therefore, whenever money or clothes or other gifts come from anywhere, each one of them constitutes a Sign in itself, since all this was foretold at a time when human reason considered such abundance of support unthinkable and impossible. Similarly, there is another prophecy:

\[
\text{یَأْتُوْنَ مِنْ كُلِّ فَجٍّ عَمِیْق}
\]

Meaning that, people would throng to me from far-off places, so that the roads they travel upon would be rutted. This prophecy has also been fulfilled in these times. Accordingly, several hundreds of thousands of people have visited Qadian, and if I also include the letters
that I receive, whose profusion was foretold at a time when I was all alone, their number may perhaps be as high as ten million. But I only count the instances of financial support and those who have pledged allegiance to me, and thus I come to the figure of around one million.

No Prophet was ever able to rein in the tongue of an audacious man, but those who are the seekers after truth can understand that twenty-five years ago I was completely unknown. I amounted to nothing and did not enjoy any kind of fame, nor did I belong to a renowned family of shrine keepers so that people would be easily drawn towards me. Can this be the work of any man to have given such manifest news of my future success and progress at that time, and then for those tidings to have been exactly fulfilled after such a long period? Can it be possible for any liar or impostor to accomplish this?

If anyone should first take an impartial look at the time when Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya was written and not yet published, and personally come here and investigate for himself in the manner of a judicial investigation to discover what my worth was at that time and the seclusion and anonymity in which I was languishing, and how isolated I was—like an abandoned outcast—and then look at how the prophecies made in the conditions of that time have been fulfilled, and deliberate over them with due consideration, he will arrive at such certainty in the truth of those prophecies as if the day has dawned. But why would one who is given to meanness, prejudice, egotism, and arrogance bother to make such an effort? Such a one will instead readily adopt the path of rejection which is rather easy, and exert his utmost to remain deprived of accepting these Signs.

*Aside from the grace of God Almighty, there is no cure for the misguided; Even miracles do not benefit those of ill fortune.*
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

Even if the heavens were to shine with hundreds of suns and moons,
Those bereft of sight cannot see the light.

O man of wisdom! Fear God to whom you must return.
Why love this world? Do you even know the time of your death?

Do not—for the sake of the world—rebel against the commandments of the One God.
O wretched one! Do not—for a few days of pleasure—buy yourself ill fortune.

Should you desire honour and wealth in both worlds,
Then give yourself to God and obey Him with all your heart.

Become His slave and rule the world!
For, those who worship God fear no one else.

Advance to the Beloved with all your heart, and He will advance to you;
Such is the magnetism of spirituality that one love draws another.

God helps those who help His faith;
Such has been the way of His magnificent court since eternity.
If you do not believe this, read the accounts that I have written,  
For you will see how God had helped me at every difficult time.

Whoever gains something from His threshold does so through serving Him;  
He who is heedless is punished, and he who serves is rewarded.

In my case, however, I am totally wonder struck,  
For I have been granted favour and honour without any service on my part.

I am hidden beyond hidden beyond hidden beyond hidden;  
How then can the arrogant know anything of me?

I hear words of grace from the Almighty all the time;  
If an insect were to curse me, it would have no meaning.

It is up to you whether or not to join the community of God’s people;  
I have written all this with compassion, for I have been ordained only to convey the message.

The prophecies that I have written above are not recorded in just one place in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya; indeed, God has caused them to be mentioned twice or even three times in various places in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya for the sake of emphasis and in order to reveal that they have been ordained in heaven. Some additional prophecies have also
been mentioned that are separate from the above. In order to fully satiate the thirst of seekers of truth, I shall quote those prophecies here as well.

It should be remembered that the miracle here is not just that those prophecies were fulfilled a long time afterwards despite strong opposition by antagonists, but an additional miracle is that, in keeping with the revelation of God Almighty recorded in this book:

\[يَا أَحْمَدُ بَارَكَ اللهُ فِیْكَ\]

Meaning that, ‘O Aḥmad, God shall bless your life and your work,’ God saved me from death until he had fulfilled all those prophecies. And, despite all the ailments and afflictions that have attended me like two yellow sheets—one in the upper part of my body and the other in the lower part of my body, as were mentioned in authentic hadith as a sign of the Promised Messiah—God has blessed my life, by His grace, just as He had promised, and I recovered from many grave life-threatening ailments.

Moreover, many enemies persistently plotted and conspired to ensnare me in some complication that would hasten my departure from this world, but they remained frustrated in their machinations. The hand of my God continued to support me and His holy revelation—in which I believe as firmly as I believe in all the Books of God Almighty—consoled and comforted me every day.

These, then, are God’s Signs through which one can behold His face. Blessed are those who reflect over them and are fearful of rebelling against God. Had this been the work of man, it would have fallen apart on its own and come to an end—wound up like a scroll—but this is all from that same God who created the heavens and brought the earth into being. Does man have the right to object as to what He does or does not do? And is God such that He can be held accountable for His works? Does man have knowledge greater than His? Does He not know the meaning of the prophecy regarding the Messiah’s descent?
Now, in what follows will be written those prophecies that serve to support and highlight the above-mentioned prophecies:

Now, in what follows will be written those prophecies that serve to support and highlight the above-mentioned prophecies:

Translation: ‘O Ahmad, you have been blessed and this blessing was indeed yours by right. Your status is wonderful and your reward is near.’ In other words, all those promises that were made shall be fulfilled soon. And so it came to pass.

And then He says: ‘The earth and heaven are with you as they are with Me.’

This points to the fact that widespread acceptance of me will appear in the future and the people of the earth will turn towards me, and heavenly angels shall accompany me, just as it is transpiring these days.

Then He says: ‘Holy is that God who bestows many blessings and is Most High. He has raised your status. The mention of your forefathers will be cut off and from now on the line of genealogical descent shall originate from you. Your progeny will spread throughout the world and your fame will spread across nations. You will be the foundation stone of your family’s edifice. God is not such that He would leave you until He manifestly distinguishes the pure from the impure. And God prevails over every one of His decrees, but most know not the power of God.’

1. In the 2008 edition of Rūḥānī Khazā’īn, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, pages 579–590. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on pages 365–371. [Publisher]
Within these prophecies I was promised a large progeny just as Ḥaḍrat ‘Ibrāhīm was promised. Accordingly, on the basis of this promise, I was blessed with these four sons who are still alive. Further, the prophecy that He would not leave me until He distinguishes between the pure and the impure has been manifested in this very age in such a manner that despite your fierce opposition and your prayers against me, you witness how God has not forsaken me and has remained my Protector in every conflict.

Every stone that was hurled at me—He struck down with His own hands; every arrow that was shot at me—He returned the same to the enemy. I was helpless; He gave me shelter. I was alone; He protected me under His robe. I was nothing whatsoever; He conferred renown upon me with honour, inspiring hundreds of thousands to become my devotees.

He further says in the same holy revelation that when My help reaches you, and the words from My mouth are fulfilled—that is, when My servants turn to you and all kinds of financial help materialize—then will it be proclaimed to the deniers: ‘Behold! Have those words not been fulfilled in relation to that which you desired to hasten?’

Accordingly, today all those words [of prophecy] have found fulfilment. There is no need to mention that God kept His promise, inspiring hundreds of thousands of people to turn towards me, and granting me the financial support that was beyond anyone’s dream or imagination.

Therefore—O my opponents!—may God have mercy on you and open your eyes. Just think: Could all this be human trickery? These promises were made at the time Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya was written, when the mere mention of them in front of people was dismissed as laughable, and my own means did not even amount to so much as the weight of a mustard seed. Can any of you refute me in this statement? Can any of you prove that even a single one of these thousands of people was with me at that time? I was a man so thoroughly unknown at
the time Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya was published, that my book, Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya, used to be printed in a press located in Amritsar which belonged to a Christian pastor named Rajab Ali. I would travel all alone to Amritsar to check the proofs and would return alone; no one—while coming or going—would even ask me who I was, nor was I acquainted with anyone, nor did I enjoy any dignified status of competence.

Even the Aryas of Qadian are witness to these circumstances of mine. One of them, Sharampat by name, lives in Qadian to this day. He accompanied me a few times to Pastor Rajab Ali’s press in Amritsar where my book Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya was being printed. All the prophecies were transcribed by Rajab Ali’s scribe. Upon reading the prophecies, the pastor himself expressed his amazement stating, ‘How could it be possible that a whole world would turn towards such an ordinary man?’ But since those words were from God—they were not mine—they came to fruition in their own good time and continue to do so. At one time, human eyes marvelled at them [in disbelief], while at another time they actually beheld their fulfilment.

The remaining translation is that God Almighty proclaims: ‘I desired to establish a Khalifah [Vicegerent] of Mine upon the earth, so I created this Adam.’ I was given the name Adam in this divine revelation because I was created at a time when the human race had become corrupt and the earth was—so to speak—empty of human beings. And just as Adam was born a twin, so, too, was I born a twin, for a girl was with me who was born before me, and I, after her. This alluded to the fact that with me would come to an end the series of perfect men. There was yet another indication in giving me the name Adam in another revelation—namely, the divine revelation which came to me in the words of the Holy Quran—and that revelation is:

قول إني جاعل في الأرض خليفة قالوا أتجعل فيها من يفسد فيها قال إني أعلم ما لا تعلمون

Meaning that, God gave tidings about me through my very own self
in *Barāḥīn-e-Aḥmadiyya* that He will create a Khalīfah in the form of Adam. Then, upon hearing this news, some opponents, finding my particulars inconsistent with some of their beliefs, said in their hearts that, ‘O God! Will You make such a person Your Khalīfah who is a mischievous man, breeding dissension among the people with falsehood and violating the accepted doctrine of the ulema?’ Then God replied: ‘I know what you know not.’ This is the Word of God that has descended upon me. In truth, there are such subtle mysteries between me and my God that the world knows nothing of and I have an inner relationship with God that defies description; the people of this age remain oblivious to it. Hence, this is the meaning of the revelation of God:

قَالَ اِنّی اَعلم ما ل تَعلمون۔

[He said, ‘I know what you know not.’]

Then, the remaining translation is that God says: ‘This person drew close to Me and attained My complete nearness. And thereafter he turned towards mankind out of sympathy for them and became a link between Me and My creatures, like two bows with one string. And for this reason, being placed in that intermediary position, he will rejuvenate the Faith anew and establish the Shariah [Islamic Law].’ That is to say, he, in his capacity as the *Hakam* [Arbiter], will remove all the errors that have gained currency among the Muslims and which are falsely attributed to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. In addition, he will present the Shariah in its purity just as it was pure in the beginning.

Then there are also some more revelations in *Barāḥīn-e-Aḥmadiyya* pertaining to these same prophecies, as Allah Almighty says:
Translation: You will be helped; divine support will be with you, and such support will be that true reality will be openly manifest. Then will the opponents say: ‘Now there is nowhere to escape.’ They will say, ‘We are a large party who can retaliate.’ But soon will they run away turning their backs. Upon witnessing the Signs of God, they will say, ‘This is a clear deception.’

---

1. ☆ In *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, Part IV, the word غَرَسْتُكَ is mentioned as غَرَسْتُ. See *Rūhānī Khaza‘īn*, vol. 1, p. 602, Sub-Footnote Number Three. [Publisher]

2. ☆ This word can either be read as ِكَفَّارَة [deny] or كَفَّارَة [accuse of disbelief]. One who uses the label of ِكَفَّارَ [‘disbeliever’—i.e. for the claimant] will anyhow be a denier [of the claimant], and one who denies the claim will no doubt designate [the claimant] a ِكَفَّارَ. Also, the word ُبَحَمَان alludes to the word ُهَامَان, and ُهَامَان is said of one who wanders alone and aimlessly in the wilderness. (Author)


4. ☆ This verse:

[And if they see a Sign, they turn away and say, ‘A passing feat of magic.’ *Sūrah al-Qamar*, 54:3)]

This verse appears in the Quran in the context of the miracle of the splitting
So say to them, ‘If you love Almighty God, then come follow me, that God too may love you, and know with certainty that God will revive this dead land’; meaning that, of the inhabitants of this earth who have [spiritually] died, many shall attain guidance, giving rise to a spiritual revolution, and many people shall enter this organization. The one who becomes God’s, God becomes his. Say to them: ‘If I have falsely imputed against God, then I have committed a great sin for which I will be punished.’ In other words, an impostor is punished in this very world and never prospers; everything he does or had done ultimately fails. However, a truthful one succeeds, for the roots of truth are deep in the earth.

He then says:

O My Ahmad! You are My purpose and remain with Me. I have planted the tree of your greatness with My own hand—in other words, you are truthful and are from Me, so I will bestow upon you great honour and prestige among the people. This work will be done [personally] by My own hand; not the hand of any other. For this reason, no one will be able to bring it to naught. This prophecy relates to the future and it has now been fulfilled.—He then says: Do people marvel at this [in disbelief], wondering how this will come about? Then reply to them that manifesting marvellous Signs is the concern of God; He is not questioned about what He does, but people are so questioned.

of the moon. Hence, to cite this verse on this occasion signifies that here too some sort of lunar Sign will appear. So that Sign was the wonderful lunar eclipse that appeared during the month of Ramadan. Some scholars write that the miracle of the splitting of the moon was also a kind of lunar eclipse. (Author)
And they remark: ‘How will you be granted this rank? This appears to be your own fabrication.’

Say, ‘Nay! These are promises from God,’ then leave them in their sport and play; that is, whatever suspicions they entertain, let them continue to do so. Ultimately, they will see whether these are the words of God or of man. As for those who are cruel and do not desist from their cruelty, do not address Me about them, for I will drown them.

This is a terrifying prophecy in which drowning has been promised. The manner in which the drowning will happen is not known, whether like the people of Noah, or like the people of Lot who were ‘drowned’ beneath the earth by a terrible earthquake. Then God Almighty says: Your Lord will cover you with His shadow; He will hear your supplication and have mercy on you. And even if people do not wish to save you, God will yet save you. God will absolutely protect you, even though people intend to entrap you.

This prophecy refers to the criminal lawsuits initiated against me by Dr. Martyn Clark, Karam Din, and others. Likewise, at the time of Lekh Ram’s murder, there was an effort to implicate me. These lawsuits were aimed at getting me hanged or imprisoned. Thus, did God Almighty ordain in this prophecy: ‘I will frustrate them in their designs, and will certainly protect you from their attacks.’ Accordingly, after twenty-four years, all these prophecies have been fulfilled. And then God says:

Remember the deceit of the deceiver, who will declare you a kāfir [disbeliever] and will deny your claim. He will get a companion of his to make out a fatwa in reply to a requisition for
one, in order to incite the people. Perished be the two hands of Abū Lahab\(^1\) through whom that fatwa was written.

Although writing is the work of one hand, the other is its accomplice. And by perished it is meant that he will remain frustrated in achieving the objective of his issuing the religious verdict. And then He says: ‘He too has perished.’ In other words, he was guilty of a grave sin which in reality amounts to perishing. This is why his attention was turned towards the world and continued to lose the sweetness of faith. ‘It did not behove him to interfere in this matter except with extreme caution’; meaning that if he was in doubt he should have tried to settle his doubts privately, showing due reverence, instead of becoming an enemy and emerging forth in conflict. And then He says that whatever hardship befalls you shall be from God; that is to say, if God had not so willed, this mischief could not be perpetrated. He then says that during that time, an immense uproar and a great mischief will arise in the world, so you should endure with patience just as all the resolute Messengers had endured with patience. However, keep in mind that this trial will not be from that individual; rather, it shall be from God Almighty that He might love you all the more, for this love from God is a favour that will never be wrested from you thereafter.

Then, making another prophecy He says: ‘Two goats shall be slaughtered’—referring to Miyān ‘Abdur-Raḥmān and Maulawī ‘Abdul-Laṭīf who were stoned to death in Kabul—‘and everyone who is upon the earth shall ultimately die and the advisability of these incidents of martyrdom which is known to God, is not known to you’—meaning, that the slaughter of these two shall ultimately yield the fruit of goodness for you; God knows whatever good will arise in the land of Kabul through these deaths.

---

\(^1\) Abū Lahab here means the ‘Father of Fuelling a Fire’. In other words, he—the writer of the Religious Verdict—will actually be the ‘father’ of the fire of takfīr [declaration of disbelief] that shall rage in this country. (Author)
The prophecy preceding this one was about the fatwa issued by Maulawi Nadhir Husain at the written request of Maulawi Muhammed Husain, which stirred an uproar amongst the people with everyone cutting ties with me, considering it an act of virtue to call me a disbeliever, faithless, and a deceiver.

This prophecy is accompanied by the promise that God would love me more after this, which signifies that people would be drawn towards me, insofar as the love of God demands the love of His creatures. And the pleasure of God demands the pleasure of the right-minded people of this world as well. And as for the last mentioned prophecy regarding the slaughter of two goats, it refers to the incident that manifested itself in the land of Kabul; that is, a member of my Jam'aat [Community]—namely 'Abdur-Rahman—who was a righteous youth, and second, Maulawi Abdul-La'tif, who was an exceedingly eminent sage, were stoned to death at the command of the Amir of Kabul simply for the charge of joining my Jam'aat. Almost two years have passed since this incident.1

Now, this situation needs to be seen with an unbiased eye, for how is it possible that such matters from the unseen—hidden beyond

1. The incident of the martyrdom of the late brother Maulawi Abdul-La'tif and the late Shaikh 'Abdur-Rahman was something so far from the realm of speculation that, until it happened, it could never have crossed our mind that actually the meaning of the divine revelation had foretold that two of my sincere followers would truly be slaughtered. Rather, considering such an occurrence as implausible, I had always been inclined to interpret it otherwise, with various scenarios presenting themselves to my mind, since man's own knowledge and understanding are never free from error. But when the two incidents occurred exactly as foretold, and the two elders of this Jam'aat were mercilessly martyred in Kabul, then with true certainty, the meaning of the divine revelation became transparently clear. And when I re-examined all the words of the revelation, my eyes were opened, and a strangely wondrous delight was created, and I came to know that God had presented this prophecy clearly as far as possible and had chosen such words, and explained such aspects, as could not have been truly applied to any other scenario. Subhan-Allah! [Holy is Allah!] This shows how, a long time ago, He had foretold unseen events with such clarity in Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya. (Author)
hidden—be attributed to an impostor, whereas God Almighty Himself says in His Sacred Word that matters of the absolutely unseen are not disclosed to every believer; rather, they are only disclosed to those of His servants who have been chosen and accepted by Him? As Allah Almighty says in the Holy Quran:

Meaning that, Allah Almighty does not grant anyone ascendancy over His secrets, except those who are His Messengers and are the chosen ones in His presence.

It is an occasion for pity that certain ignorant people—so-called maulawis and ‘scholars’—put forth criticism against several prophecies containing warnings in regard to which some have been fulfilled while some have yet to be fulfilled. They fail to understand that Almighty God retains authority in relation to His prophetic warnings, be He willing to fulfil them or postpone [them]. This is, indeed, the creed of all Prophets and this is the very system established to avert calamity. A calamity which Almighty God has intended in relation to someone—regardless of whether God reveals it to His Messenger by way of prophecy or keeps it concealed—remains a calamity all the same. Thus, if it cannot be averted in any way, then why does God exhort us to pray, do good works, and offer alms?

Then, subsequent to this, there are more prophecies that lend support to these prophecies which I am documenting hereunder as follows:

\[\text{Publisher}\]

---

Translation with Commentary: ‘And slacken not, nor grieve. Is not Allah sufficient for His servant?’ That is, even if all the people turn against you, God Himself will provide you assistance from Himself. He then says, ‘Are you unaware that God has power to do all that He wills; nothing is impossible for Him?’ He indeed has the power to grant an unknown and solitary person such success that hundreds of thousands should love and follow him. This is the prophecy which has seen its fulfilment in this age after the passage of twenty-five years.

God then said, ‘These people have made you the target of their mockery, remarking sarcastically: “Is this the person who has been raised among us by God to invite us to Him?” Reply to them: “I am but a mortal like you. It is revealed to me that your God is One God, and that all goodness and virtue is contained in the Quran.” Say to them: “It matters not what you think, true guidance is indeed only that which comes directly from God Almighty”, as man is otherwise prone to distort the meaning of the Book of Allah with his erroneous judgement and arrive at all manner of conclusions.’ It is God alone who never makes a mistake. Therefore, the guidance of Allah alone is True Guidance. No reliance can be placed upon people’s own assumed interpretations.

God then says: ‘Pray, “O God! I am overcome; they are many and I am alone. They are a horde, so arise Yourself to confront them on my behalf. O my Lord! O my Lord! Why have You forsaken me?”’ This is a prophecy that refers to the trials that would be faced in the future and foretells the coming of a time when an immense uproar of opposition

---

1. In the 2008 edition of Rūḥānī Khazā’īn, the referenced text appears in volume 1, pages 611–615. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on pages 391–394. [Publisher]
would arise. It would be a time of ignominy and isolation when a whole people would rise up to oppose me and—witnessing the apparent agitation—the thought would arise through succumbing to human nature that perhaps God had withdrawn His help. Assuredly, God Almighty drew attention to the coming time that He would accept prayers during that period [of distress] and that predicament would not persist, and the inclination would arise within hearts towards me. Accordingly, this is exactly what happened; subsequent to the great mischief wrought by the fatwa declaring me a disbeliever, the hearts [of people] ultimately inclined towards me.

God then says: ‘O ‘Abdul-Qādir! I am with you. I have planted the tree of My mercy and omnipotence for you, and I will deliver you from every sorrow. Before that, however, I shall cause many trials to come your way so that you may be thoroughly tested and so that your steadfastness may be manifested during times of trial. I am your Indispensable Helper and I am the Remedy for your anguish, and I am indeed the One who has given you life. I breathed into you the Spirit of Truth, and I put love into you from Myself.’ That is to say, I have placed such a quality in you that everyone who is going to be fortunate will love you and will be drawn towards you.

‘I have done this so that you may be brought up before My eyes and may flourish in My presence. You are like the seed sown in the soil; it was just a tiny grain concealed within the dust, but then it began to sprout and grow day by day until it became very stout and spread its branches and turned into a full tree standing firm on its roots.’ This was a prophecy for future success, and I was told that at the time I was like a seed sown and hidden in the soil, but it was destined that in the future this seed would sprout and continue growing until it became a great tree that is stout and stands firmly on its roots. No storm will be able to harm it. This prophecy was published in the world twenty-five years before today.

Then He said: ‘God will give you a great and openly manifest victory, so that He may forgive your past and future sins.’ Here a question arises as to what the connection between victory and the forgiveness of
sins is, for the two sentences do not seem to be related to each other. In reality, however, these two sentences are intimately connected to each other. The explanation of this divine revelation is that God’s appointees, Prophets, and Messengers are subjected to objections and accusations in this blind world. Such criticisms are perpetrated in relation to their eminence and works; and so many slanders and suspicions are hurled against them, as have no parallel in the world. God has—indeed—willed it to be so, that they be kept concealed from the view of the wretched people and those who view them worthy of criticism. They are a great treasure and a great treasure is better kept hidden from the unworthy. This is why Almighty God causes the eternally unfortunate to harbour all kinds of doubts about His chosen ones so that they may be deprived of the treasure of acceptance.

This is the way of Allah in relation to those who come from Him as Imams, Messengers, and Prophets. It is the very reason for the magnitude of various criticisms and various kinds of fault-finding carved out by the enemies of truth against Ḥaḍrat Mūsā [Moses], may peace be upon him, Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā [Jesus], and our Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—such allegations that were never fabricated against any ordinary righteous person. What slander is there that hasn’t been hurled at them, and what criticism is there that they haven’t been made the target of? Therefore, since replying to all calumnies rationally was a theoretical approach—and judgement of theoretical issues is difficult—in addition to dark-natured people not finding satisfaction through it; it was for this reason that God Almighty did not adopt the theoretical approach, opting [instead] for the method of Signs, and deemed His corroborating Signs and magnificent assistance sufficient for the exoneration of His Prophets. For, every obtuse and impure person can easily realize that if these Prophets were such selfish men, impostors, or impure characters—God forbid—then it would have been impossible for such mighty Signs to have been shown in their support.

Therefore, in keeping with His eternal practice, God Almighty also vouchsafed the very same revelation to me, which is recorded in the
earlier parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya and has been cited above, the meaning of which is that God would manifest great victories and magnificent Signs in my favour in order to refute all the objections that the blind-hearted people of the world had raised with respect to my earlier or later life. This is because there is no testimony greater than that pertaining to the realm of the unseen.

The word ẓān [sin] has been used to indicate that the objectors and fault finders who attack the Messengers believe in their own hearts that what they are accusing them of is a sin. So what this means is that the ‘sin’ that has been attributed to you is what is being talked about and not that in reality a sin has been committed; otherwise, it would be irreverent to take this revelation to mean that there was actually a sin committed that God has forgiven. On the contrary, it means that [in regard to] the false objections that have been raised and propagated against them in the name of sin, their great publicity will be covered up by a very great Sign. Ignorant people do not realize the sense in which God attributes ẓān—that is, ‘sin’—to His elect. For, real sin, which is disobedience to Almighty God, merits punishment, unless one repents; not that God Himself should become anxious to show a Sign to cover up and conceal the accusations of sin and imputation of faults, and to disgrace the one

1. ☉ God has disclosed to me that this is indeed the latter stage of my life, which I am passing through now, as the revelation in Arabic says:

قَرُبَ اَجَلُكَ الْمُقَدّر وَل نُبْقِیْ لك من المخزیاتِ ذِكرا۔

Meaning that, Your determined term of life is nearing its end, and We shall not leave any mention of anything concerning you which might become the occasion of your humiliation and reproach. This is why He enabled me to publish the fifth volume of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya. Similarly, God, the Lord of Glory and Honour, has hinted at my approaching demise in this revelation:

ثُمَّ قَالَ مَعَشَرَ الْمَلَائِكَّةَ وَقَالَتْ لَئِن أَتَّمُّوا الْعَمْلَاتَ يُهَيِّنُوكَ لَهَا كَيۡنَآ أَمۡثَلَ وَأُبَيِّنُ لَكَ

Your event will take place after all other happenings and natural wonders have been demonstrated.

(Author)
who perpetrates them. This is why the Imams and Sufis have written that
to speak disrespectfully of the lapses made by the Prophets, may peace be
upon them, that have been mentioned by God–such as Adam’s eating of
the grain—leads to disbelief and loss of faith, for the Prophets are God’s
chosen people and are innocent of what people regard as ‘sin’. To oppose
them amounts to becoming the target of the wrath of God Almighty, as
is said in the authentic hadith:

ومن عَادٰی وَلِـیًّا لی فقد اٰذنتہ للحرب

Meaning that, whosoever is an enemy to My friend, I warn him to pre-
pare for combat with Me.

In short, the chosen ones are very dear to God and have a strong
relationship with Him. Slandering and criticizing them does not bode
well. And there is no path nearer to destruction than blind opposition
to those who love God and are loved by God.

Also remember that maghfirat [seeking forgiveness] does not only
mean the forgiveness of any sin that has been committed, but it also
means not to allow the potentiality of sin to actualize, and not to let
even the thought of sin to enter one’s heart. In the above prophecies, too,
Almighty God has repeatedly affirmed that He will turn my solitary state
into one of renown, and will deliver me of all the tribulations that come
my way. And just as there were critics and fault-finders earlier, so would
there be in the latter part of my life, but Almighty God would grant me
such manifest victory that the critics and fault-finders would be silenced,
or that people would be saved from their evil influence.

It is in the nature of man that he is not ready to accept guidance
even after witnessing a thousand Signs but the mischief of a single
fault-finder can lead him to denial. This is why in this revelation God
did not say, ‘I will show a Sign’; rather, He said, ‘I shall grant you a great
victory’; that is, I shall give you a Sign that will conquer the hearts and
make manifest your greatness. And He said that this would happen in
the latter part of my life. Therefore, I emphatically proclaim that this
prophecy relates to the present time. I see that objections and accusations have crossed all bounds, and I hope that soon a great Sign will appear that will conquer hearts and revive those dead hearts that die again and again. [So Allah be praised for all this].

These prophecies are supported by further prophecies that were published in the previous parts of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya and have now been fulfilled twenty-five years later. They are as follows:

Translation: Is not Allah Sufficient for His servant? He will clear him of all the charges that will be levelled against him. He has a high standing in the estimation of God. Is not Allah sufficient for His servant? He will bring the mountain to testify to his innocence. And when He will manifest Himself upon the mountain, He will shatter it into pieces. And with this Sign He will frustrate the designs of those who deny. Is He not sufficient for His servant? That is, God’s Signs are sufficient
and there is no need for anyone else’s testimony. And We shall make
the shattering of the mountain into pieces a Sign for the people, and
this Sign will be a source of mercy from which many shall benefit.1

This matter had already been decreed. This is the word of truth prior to
whose manifestation you were in doubt.

A mean person does not accept any Sign other than the Sign of death.
He is My enemy and yours. Say to these mean ones that the Sign of death
will also come and a great pestilence will break out in the world. So, do
not ask Me to hasten the Signs for all of this will transpire at its proper
time. This prophecy foretold the plague and the terrible earthquake and
it was published in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya twenty-five years ago.

Then Almighty God says: When I help My Messenger, the one I
have appointed, by sending down terrible and devastating Signs,2 it
will be said to the deniers: ‘Say now whether I am your Lord or not?’

In other words, those will be days of great difficulty and hardship, and
terrible Signs will appear in those days, beholding which many people

1. ☆ Bear in mind that the translation of the divine words recorded in Barāhīn-
e-Ahmadiyya by virtue of it being before its time, is at places given in a concise
form, and at places certain words were interpreted to mean something other
than their literal sense. That is to say, a translation was done as it was appar-
et at the time. But since the actual divine words are there, readers should not
pay attention to any interpretation that was made before the prophecies were
fulfilled. Let them take this as an error of judgement, because a prophecy is
only truly explained once it has come to pass. (Author)

2. ☆ This prophecy is regarding those who consider the revelation of this God’s
appointed one and Messenger to be a human concoction or a satanic whisper,
and do not believe that it is that very same God who has been bestowing
revelation to this humble writer of these lines since the time of Barāhīn-e-
Ahmadiyya. In this verse, God Almighty promises that He will ultimately
bring them to believe, and they will have to admit that the One who has been
sending His revelation upon this humble author from the time of Barāhīn-e-
Ahmadiyya till now is none other than God, He indeed who is, the Lord of
this world beside whom there is no other god. This also signifies that there
will appear a great Sign that will cause the heads of the staunchest opponents
to bow down in humility. (Author)
possessing dark hearts and perverse natures will turn to the truth. And they will believe this Messenger who has appeared among them.

Then again, the God of Glory and Honour addressed me in the above-mentioned revelation and said: Jump with joy and happiness upon the earth for your time is nigh and the feet of the Muḥammadīs have been planted firmly on a lofty and secure tower. The word Muḥammadī here refers to the Muslims of this Jamāʿat; for, according to the divine prophecy published in Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya, people of other sects who call themselves ‘Muslims’ will decline day by day. The same is the case of non-Muslim sects, as has been said clearly in this revelation recorded in Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya:

يا عیسی ائّت متوفیک ورافعک الّی ومطھّرك من الّذین كفروا وفوق الّذین كفروا الـٰی یوم القیامۃ۔

Meaning: ‘O ‘Īṣā, I will cause you to die, and exalt you towards Me, and demonstrate your innocence, and I will cause your followers to prevail over your deniers till the Day of Judgment.’ In this divine revelation, ‘Īṣā means myself, and by the followers are meant the members of my Jamāʿat. In the Holy Quran this prophecy relates to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īṣā as and the people who were to be overcome were the Jews, who continued to diminish day by day. The fact that the same words have been revealed for me and my Jamāʿat signifies that those who are outside of this Jamāʿat shall continue to diminish day by day. All the Muslim sects that are outside this Jamāʿat will decline by the day, and will either enter this Jamāʿat or become extinct, just as the Jews declined until only a very few are left. The same will be the end of the opponents of this Jamāʿat.

The people of this Jamāʿat will prevail over others in number and in the strength of their faith. This prophecy is coming true in an

1. This sentence was left out of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya owing to some printing error. It means: ‘I will free you of all the objections and accusations of the deniers.’ These words were revealed to me several times. (Author)
extraordinary manner, because when it was published in *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, I was in such a state of obscurity that not a single person can claim to have been my follower at that time. But now, by the grace of God Almighty, this Jamā’at numbers in the hundreds of thousands and is progressing at an accelerating pace, partly as a result of the heavenly calamities that are devouring this land.

The rest of the divine revelation is as follows: ‘His Holiness Muhammad—the Chosen One—is the Chief of all Prophets.’ And then God affirms: ‘God will set all your affairs right and will bestow upon you all that you desire.’ You can see that these prophecies are of the highest order because they were made at a time when nothing was going right and no desire had been fulfilled, but now, twenty-five years later, so many of my desires have been granted as are difficult to count. God has turned this desolate place—that is, Qadian—into a gathering point for people of all countries; for, people from every country come and gather here. And He demonstrated that which reason could never have thought possible.

Hundreds of thousands of people accepted me and this country became filled with my followers. And not only that, the seed of the Jamā’at was also sown in the land of Arabia, Syria, Egypt, Rome, Persia, America, Europe, etc. and many people from these countries entered into this Jamā’at. And I hope that the time comes—indeed it is near—when people of these countries will receive their full share of this heavenly light as well.

My foolish enemies—who were called *maulawi*s—were frustrated and they could not stop the heavenly decree from taking its course despite their schemes and machinations, and they lost all hope of being able to destroy this Jamā’at. All that they had sought to spoil was set right. [So Allah be praised for all this].

Then, prophesying about the unjustified vilifications that would be levelled against me in the future, God declares me to be Yūsuf [Joseph] by making a specific prophecy. He says:
These revelations are already recorded on page 516–554¹ of Barâhîn-e-Ahmâdiyya, but I have recorded them again at this place so that there remains no difficulty in understanding their meaning.

The translation of this divine revelation is as follows: ‘God is He who sends down rain after people have despained of it. After they have lost hope, He spreads His grace. And He chooses as Messenger and Prophet whomsoever of His servants He wishes. And so did We have mercy on this Yûsuf, so that We may ward off and turn away from him all the sin and indecency that had been imputed to him.’

In other words, it is God’s law of nature that whenever His Prophets and Messengers are maligned and slandered, He first allows the fault-finders and biased critics full occasion to indulge in their calumnies and slander, and so they attack them eagerly and pin great hopes on their onslaughts, so much so that the community of the truthful, on account of their natural human weakness, begins to lose hope that the rain of divine grace will ever wash away this slanderous stain. And such indeed is divine practice that He sends down His rain and spreads His mercy, but at first, for a time He causes people to despair of it, so as to test their faith. Similarly are tested those who believe in God’s Prophet and Messenger.

God’s Prophets are unjustly attacked by the mischievous, so much so that they are labelled ‘sinners’ and ‘transgressors’. And God allows these slanderers a good deal of respite so that they start believing that there is great strength in their objections and their fault-finding, and

---

¹ In the 2008 edition of Rûhâni Khazâ’in, the referenced text appears in volume 1, pages 661–662. In the 2016 English translation of Barâhîn-e-Ahmâdiyya, Part IV, this text appears on pages 432–433. [Publisher]
they rejoice and exult, while the believers are deeply hurt by what they impute, their courage nearly failing them and they being severely tried. It is then that God sends down the rain of His help and wipes the slate clean of all false charges and proves that His Prophets are pure and exalted.

So, what this prophecy means, in short, is that, God will manifest the innocence of this Yūsuf in such a way that first people will accuse him unjustly, just as they did in the case of Yūsuf son of Ya'qūb [Joseph son of Jacob], but in the end, God caused a person to stand up and testify to his innocence and this testimony freed him of the slanderous allegations. Thus, God says that He will do the same in this case, as He said:

قل عندی شهادہ من الله فهل اتمن مؤمنون۔ ان معي رئی سيهدین۔

 Meaning that: ‘O Yūsuf, say to those who accuse you that I have with me the testimony of God that proves my innocence; will you or will you not accept this testimony? Also say to them that I cannot be made guilty by any of your calumnies, for my God is with me and He will open a way for my acquittal.’¹

Remember what the Holy Quran says referring to the time when Zulaikhā unjustly blamed Yūsuf son of Ya'qūb:

1. ★ This verse [Sūrah ash-Shu‘arā’, 26:63] which means, ‘My God is with me and He will open a way for my acquittal’, is found in the Holy Quran in the context of Ḥaḍrat Mūsā when he was being pursued by Pharaoh, and the Israelites thought that they would be seized.

So here God alludes to the fact that such weak believers may be found in this Jamā‘at as well, whom He will reassure: ‘Do not worry; God will show you a way to free you of these accusations, just as He did in the case of Yūsuf son of Ya'qūb, when a cunning woman assaulted him and told her husband things about him which were contrary to the facts.’ (Author)
Meaning that, someone close to Zulaikhâ testified to Yûsuf’s innocence. But in this case, God said that He would Himself testify for this Yûsuf. Can there be a mightier testimony than this—that twenty-five years ago God foretold of the aspersions that the cruel and mischievous people cast upon me? While in the case of Yûsuf son of Ya‘qûb, He provided the testimony of one person, in my case He was pleased to give His own testimony. And while a woman came forward to accuse Yûsuf son of Ya‘qûb, the people who accuse me are lesser than women and are the exemplification of ًةَعَظِيْمَ كَيْدَكُنَّ اِنَّ .

Then, towards the conclusion of this prophecy are the words, ًةَرَبِّ السِّجْنُ اَحَبُّ اِلَيَّ مِمَّا يَدْعُونَنِيْۤ اِلَيْهِ۔

Meaning that, ‘O my Lord, prison is dearer to me than what these women want from me.’ That is to say, if any woman desires such a thing from me, I would rather prefer to be put in prison than that. This was the prayer offered by Yûsuf son of Ya‘qûb, as a result of which he was put in prison. And it so happened that God revealed to me the same words which I recorded in Barâhîn-e-Ahmadiyya twenty-five years ago. The only difference is that while Yûsuf son of Ya‘qûb, was imprisoned as a consequence of his prayer, God said regarding me on page 510 of _Barâhîn-e-Ahmadiyya:_

- يعصمك اللّٰ من عندہ وان لم یعصمك النّاس ۔

Meaning that, ‘God will Himself save you even if people be bent on

---
1. ‘And a witness of her household bore witness’ (_Sûrah Yûsuf, 12:27_). [Publisher]
2. ‘Your device is indeed mighty’ (_Sûrah Yûsuf, 12:29_). [Publisher]
3. _Sûrah Yûsuf, 12:34_ [Publisher]
trying to ensnare you.’ And so it happened indeed. In a criminal case filed against me by a man named Karam Din, the Hindu Magistrate intended to sentence me to imprisonment, but God, through some unseen means, barred him from carrying out his design. And it was also revealed that he would ultimately fail altogether in satisfying his desire to punish me.

Thus, the Yusuf of this Ummah—that is, my own humble self—is superior to the Yusuf of the Israelites, because this humble one was saved from prison even when he prayed to be imprisoned, whereas Yusuf son of Ya‘qūb, had to go to prison. And God Himself foretold about the acquittal of the Yusuf of this Ummah twenty-five years in advance, and He manifested many other Signs. Yusuf son of Ya‘qūb, on the other hand, had to rely on the testimony of a human being.

The testimony of these prophecies was followed by the testimony of a terrible earthquake, whose tidings I had given eleven months beforehand, as the prophecy about the earthquake was accompanied by this divine revelation:

\[
\text{قل عندی شهادۃ من الله فهل اتتم مؤمنون.}
\]

Thus, these are the two witnesses and no one knows how many more are to follow.

In short, God—who is aware of the malicious thoughts of the bigoted too—called me Yusuf and attributed to me his words from Sūrah Yusuf:

\[
\text{قل عندی شهادۃ من الله فهل اتتم مؤمنون.}
\]

1. ★ Here, God Almighty says:

\[
\text{قل عندی شهادۃ من الله فهل اتتم مؤمنون.}
\]

Meaning: ‘Tell them that I have testimony from my Lord, which is superior to the testimony of human beings’, is the same testimony, which God foretold about these baseless accusations a long time earlier. (Author)
This is by way of a prophecy about the future, so as to reveal the truth of my inner condition to the people. Although it goes against my habit and I am totally averse to displaying my inner purity before people, like Yusuf, I also say:

\[
\text{رَبِّ السِّجْنُ اَحَبُّ اِلَيَّ مِمَّا يَدْعُوْنِيْۤ اِلَيْهِ}
\]

But how and why should I seek to conceal God’s beneficence and grace? His favours upon me are so numerous that I cannot even count them.

How wonderfully gracious of God that in an age when thinking ill of others has become so widespread, He has shown awe-striking Signs for my sake. Take, for example, the terrible earthquake of which I was informed on 31st May 1904, which did away with thousands of human lives in an instant and turned mountains into virtual caves. Who knew of its coming beforehand? Which astrologer had made this prophecy before I did? Nay, it was God Himself who told me of it about one year earlier and the news was conveyed to hundreds of thousands of people through the newspapers. God said that He would bring about an earthquake as a Sign so that the eyes of the righteously-inclined people are opened.

In my view, however, the prophecies contained in *Barāhin-e-Ahmadiyya* which also include the news of this terrible earthquake are not any lesser than this. The prophecy in which I have been referred to as Yusuf is of a similar nature, for the most malicious attacks that we witness today were foretold in it twenty-five years ago. These unholy attacks are the last resort of my foolish opponents, and after this shall

1. ‘O my Lord, I would prefer prison to that to which they invite me’ (*Sūrah Yusuf, 12:34*). [Publisher]
2. ‘And I do not absolve myself of weakness; for, the soul is surely prone to enjoin evil, save that whereon my Lord has mercy’ (*Sūrah Yusuf, 12:54*). [Publisher]
be the day of reckoning. And, just as I have stated, Almighty God’s saying:

قل عندی شھادۃ من اللّٰ فھل انتم مؤمنون
[Say, ‘I have with me proof from Allah, then will you not believe?’]

here provides a much more powerful testimony than that contained in the verse of *Sūrah Yūsuf*:

It goes without saying that human testimony cannot be at par with the testimony of God. And the testimony is that the Knower of the Unseen called me Yūsuf twenty-five years ago and thus likened his situation to mine. And He used specific words that revealed the truth of the matter. For instance, He said on my behalf:

which shows that it refers to some future event.

However, since Yūsuf, too, was unable to escape the ill-thinking attacks of the mischievous, it is not for me to lament the state of those who malign me. Everyone who attacks me in effect puts his hand into a blazing fire, for He attacks not me but the One who sent me. It was He who said:

3. ‘And a witness of her household bore witness’ (*Sūrah Yūsuf*, 12:27). [Publisher]
4. ‘O my Lord, I would prefer prison to that to which they invite me’ (*Sūrah Yūsuf*, 12:34). [Publisher]
Meaning: ‘I shall humiliate him who designs to humiliate you.’

Such a one cannot hide from the sight of God. Do not imagine that He will stop showing Signs for me. Rather, He will show Sign upon Sign, and will fill the earth with His testimonies for me. He will manifest the most fearsome Signs and show awe-inspiring works.

He watched all these events for a long time and remained patient, but now—like the rain that thunders when it is the season—He shall thunder and will give the mischievous souls a taste of His lightening. The mischievous ones who do not fear Him and cross all limits in their insolence, try to conceal their impure thoughts and evil deeds from the people, but God sees them. Can a wicked man prevail over the decree of God? Can he fight and gain victory over Him?

And God’s declaring me Yusuf and saying:

 قال عندی شھادۃ من اللّٰ فھل انتم مؤمنون

This means: ‘Say to them that I have with me the testimony of God, which is superior to the testimony of human beings; so will you or will you not believe in this testimony?’ This statement means, ‘O you mischief-makers and slanderers! If you do not accept the testimony which God gave twenty-five years ago, then God will testify through some other Sign which will seize you in a torturous grip and leave you wailing and gnashing your teeth.’ Thus, I can see that God’s other testimonies have also started to materialize. And God has told me in His revelation that whoever shoots an arrow at me, God will destroy him with the same arrow.

Again, in the revelation calling me Yusuf there is also the sentence:

قل عندی شهاده من اللّٰ فهل انتم مؤمنون

1. The verse [‘My Lord is with me. He will direct me aright’ (Sūrah ash-Shu’arā’, 26:63)] says loud and clear that Pharaoh-like people will pride themselves on their unjustified slander, but God will save His servant. And in front of the aggressors is a sea in which they will perish. (Author)
ولتنذر قومًا ما انذر أباؤهم فهم غافلون۔

This verse, when read together with the previous one, means, ‘I have favoured this Yūsuf by giving My own testimony to prove his innocence and to ward off the evil and indecency that will be imputed to him. And We shall do this so that there may be no hindrance in his mission of warning [the people] and calling [them to God].’ This is because if all the objections which this blind world raises against the Messengers, the Prophets, and those ordained by God are not countered, their mission of warning people and inviting people towards God would slow down and even stop, and their words would fail to impact the hearts. Rational arguments cannot fully cleanse the stains of the hearts.

There is, thus, the danger that people may perish on account of their ill-thinking and become the fuel of Hell. This is why God—who is Gracious and Merciful and wills not His creatures to perish—testifies with His powerful Signs that His Prophets are purified, and chosen and selected by Him. And one who does not desist from his ill-thinking even after witnessing such testimonies, God does not care if such a one is destroyed. God becomes his Enemy and stands up to confront him Himself. A mischievous man thinks that his schemes will alienate people’s hearts, but God says, ‘O foolish one! Can your schemes be mightier than Mine? I will cause your own hands to heap disgrace upon you, and will humiliate you before your friends.’

Another reason why I have been called Yūsuf was that Yūsuf, upon his arrival in Egypt, had to bear all kinds of humiliation which actually formed the basis for his rise and the progress of his rank, whereas in the beginning he had been worthless and debased in the eyes of the foolish people. However, ultimately God honoured him in such a way that he became the ruler of the land and the very people who had looked down upon him as a slave became like his slaves during the famine. Thus, by calling me Yūsuf, God in effect says: ‘I will do the same in this instance. I will cause a drought of spiritual nourishment
both inside and outside Islam, and the seekers of spiritual life will not find satisfaction other than in this dispensation. Heavenly blessings would be taken away from all other sects, and this humble one who addresses you would be gifted with every Sign.’ Thus, all those who wish to avoid spiritual death would flock to this very servant of God, the Most High. Just as in the case of Yūsuf, this honour was to be—and has been—bestowed upon me as recompense for the ridicule which has been heaped upon me to the extreme by the ignorant. And though I have not come to rule over a worldly kingdom, I do have a kingdom in heaven which the world cannot see. God has informed me that, ultimately, even extremely mischievous and rebellious people will recognize me, as He says:

\[
\text{یَخِرُّون عَلَی الَْذْقان سُجَّدًا۔ ربّنا اغفرلنا انا كنا خاطئین۔ لا تتریب عليكم اليوم يغفر}
\]

\[
\text{اللّٰ لكم وهو ارحم الراحمن}.
\]

And I saw in a vision that the earth spoke to me and said: \text{یا ولی اللّٰ كُنْتُ ل اَعْرفك۔}, i.e. ‘O friend of Allah, I did not recognize you before this.’ The earth here signifies the people of the earth. Blessed is he who accepts me before the terrible day, for he will find refuge. But the one who will accept me after having witnessed extraordinary Signs, his faith will not have any worth at all.

\[
\text{آتُون بِذَرْعَ الْغَرْرِ بِبَيْتٍ كَانَ رَا مَرْكَّةَ گُنْهَا رَا بِنْو زَرْبٍ دَخَّرَے}
\]

You may give a thousand excuses for your sins,

[Nevertheless] a married woman can never become like a virgin.

1. \text{Translation:} They will fall down on their chins crying, ‘O God, we were wrongdoers and we have sinned; forgive us our sins.’ God will say, ‘There is no blame on you this day, for you have believed. God will forgive your sins for He is the Most Merciful of those who show mercy.’ Here, too, God has declared me Yūsuf by using the words [used by Yūsuf when he forgave his brethren] [لا تتریب [no blame]. (Author)
Other prophecies recorded in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya that support the above prophecies are as follows. God says:

I love you. I shall give you a large party of Islam.
This is a prophecy that has been set forth in the form of a supplication and is followed by an assurance of its acceptance. In summary, it means that the difficulties of being alone, poor, and helpless were destined to be resolved at some future time. This prophecy was fulfilled twenty-five years later when no trace of all those difficulties is now left.

The second prophecy is in English, a language with which I am not acquainted. And the fact that I received a revelation in this language is in itself a miracle. It is:

I love you. I will give you a large party of Islam.

The first party would be from among those who were already Muslims, and the second would be of those who came from outside Islam, such as Hindus, European Christians, and American Christians, or from other peoples. So it happened that many from the Hindu faith accepted Islam and entered into the fold of our Jam‘at [Community]. One such person is Shaikh ‘Abdur-Raḥīm who lives here in Qadian. He is well versed in Arabic literature, the Qur'an, and the Hadith, etc., and has acquired proficiency in Arabic.

The other is Shaikh Faḍl-e-Ḥaqq, who is among the chiefs of this district and his father was an estate owner. The third is Shaikh ‘Abdullāh (Diwān Chand) who is a doctor with years of experience and works here in Qadian in this same line of work and serves the Jam‘at. There are many others residing in their respective homelands.

Similarly, for some time my Jam‘at has been gaining acceptance among the traditional Christians of Europe and America. Only recently a respectable English gentleman of 200–202, Worth Street, New York, in the United States of America, whose earlier name was F.L. Anderson, but who has been named Ḥasan after he became a Muslim, wrote to me by his own hand to ask that his name be entered into my Jam‘at. He reads my books that have been translated into English. He can read the Holy Quran in Arabic and can also write in Arabic. There are many more Westerners who are full of praise for this Jam‘at, and
express their agreement with it. For instance, Dr. A. George Baker of 404 Susquehanna Avenue, Philadelphia, USA, read about me in the *Review of Religions*, and wrote that he totally agrees with the views of this Imam, who has presented Islam to the world in exactly the same form as the Holy Prophet(saw) had done.

And a woman from America wrote about me in her letter, ‘I love to look at his picture all the time; it appears to me to be exactly the picture of the Messiah.’ Similarly, an English lady, whose earlier name was Elizabeth and who is the wife of a friend of ours, has also entered this Jam‘at. Moreover, I constantly receive letters from America, England, Russia, and other countries, all of which I preserve in order to silence my bigoted critics. Not a single one of them has been discarded and day by day there seems to be a growing zeal among the people of these countries to establish contact with me. And the wonder is that they learn about our Jam‘at on their own and the Gracious and Merciful Lord is infusing their hearts with love and devotion and inspiring a good opinion to surge within them which shows that the people of Europe and America are preparing to enter our Jam‘at. They hold it in great esteem and are as happy to learn about it as one who—nearing death from hunger and thirst—suddenly discovers food and water.

The fact is that in this age the image of Islam had been distorted by the raging tide of two extremes of aversion and exaggeration. There is one group that pays mere lip service to Islam. It no longer believes in the blessings of Islam at all, and not only denies miracles and prophecies but also ridicules them day and night. Failing to understand otherworldly phenomena, they treated these with denial and ridicule and wished to altogether abandon Islamic worship that actually opens the doors of spirituality. Thus, they were approaching very close to atheism and were Muslims only in name. They were completely ignorant of the distinguishing Signs of Islam which no followers of any other faith can ever make a part of their religion.

This was the state of those who suffer from aversion. The other group had taken to the road of exaggeration by ascribing to their
religion absurd and baseless tales that contradicted the Book of God, such as the return of 'Īsā [Jesus] to this world, even though the Holy Quran categorically speaks of his demise and it is clearly stated in aḥādīth [pl. hadith] that the coming Messiah would be from within this Ummah just as the Messiah of the Mosaic dispensation came from among themselves and did not descend from heaven. It was to counter both these extremes of aversion and exaggeration that God established this Community upon the earth and it is loved by every man possessive of a compassionate heart, owing to its truth, beauty, and moderation.

Thus, this prophecy—that a group of those who were already Muslims would enter this Ahmadiyya Jamā‘at, and another group of new converts from among the disbelievers of Europe, America, and other nations would also enter this Jamā‘at—has been fulfilled twenty-five years after it was made. Keep in mind that the Arabic words of this prophecy that were revealed to me through the revelation from Allah and were published in the previous parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya twenty-five years ago are:

ثُلّةٌ من الوّلین وثُلّةٌ من الٰخرین

[There is a group from among the first ones and a group from among the last ones].

This means that two types of people would join my Community. The first are those who were Muslims already, who have been called Awwalin [the first ones] and about 300,000 of whom have already joined the Community, and, secondly, there are new Muslims—people who would enter Islam from among the Hindus, Sikhs, and Christians from Europe and America. A group of those has also already joined this Community and they go on joining.

Briefly translated, regarding the tidings about this age—which is the age for which I have been commissioned—God Almighty informs us in the Holy Quran that in the Latter Days, many diverse religions
will make their appearance and they will attack one another—that is to say, that bigotry will become rife and people will abandon seeking the truth, standing in support of their own faith without any rhyme or reason—and rancour and prejudice will exceed the bounds of moderation so much that one nation will appear ready to devour another. Then Heaven will lay the foundation of a new sect and God will blow a trumpet in its support with His own mouth; every blessed person flocking towards it upon hearing its blare, the exception being the eternally wretched, who have been created to fill the bowels of Hell. The words used by the Holy Quran are:

\[ \text{وَ نُفِخَ فِي الصُّوْرِ فَجَمَعْنٰهُمْ جَمْعًا} \]

As to the nature and detail of this *nafkh* [blowing], the specifics of it will keep on being manifested from time to time. In essence, we can only say that something will be worked by Heaven to create a movement in people’s hearts and the most fearsome Signs shall appear so that those blessed will wake up and ask, ‘What is this that is happening? Is this not the very age that is close to the Day of Judgment that had been foretold by the Prophets? And is this not the person concerning whom it was foretold that He would come as the Messiah from among this Ummah and would be called ‘Īsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary]?’ Anyone who has even the slightest ability to accept righteousness and guidance in his heart will then become fearful having witnessed God’s most fearsome Signs, and a heavenly power will draw him to the truth. All his prejudice and rancour will be consumed as dry straw is consumed by fire. Thus, every rightly-guided person will heed the voice of God, will be drawn towards it, and will see that now the earth and the heaven possess a new colour and are not that same earth nor that same heaven.

1. ‘And the trumpet will be blown. Then shall We gather them all together’ (*Sūrah al-Kahf, 18:100*). [Publisher]
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

Just as it had previously been shown to me in a vision that I was creating a new earth and a new heaven, so this is about to happen. The task was attributed to me in the vision because God had ordained me for this age. And so, indeed, I became the cause of bringing this new heaven and new earth into being. Such metaphors abound in the word of God, but here some ignorant people might be confused that while it is true that both "Saḥīḥ Muslim" and "Bukhārī" say that the coming Messiah would be from within this Ummah, and the word مَنْكُمْ "minkum—‘from among you’" in Surah an-Nūr also points to the fact that every Khalīfah would be from this Ummah, and the verse:

also points to the same thing and makes it very clear that it will not be anything out of the ordinary. Rather, as in the beginning of Islam the Holy ProphetaaS was the like of Mūsā[Moses], as is conveyed by the verse:

Therefore, it was necessary for the like of 'Īsā to appear in the Latter Days of Islam to complete the similarity between the two dispensations. The tidings of this 'Īsā have been given clearly in the words إِمَامُكُمْ مِنْكُمْ ['your Imam from among you'] in Sahīh Bukhārī and أَمَامُكُمْ مِنْكُمْ ['your leader from among you'] in Sahīḥ Muslim.

But the question is: Why do the Hadith refer to the one who will become ‘Īsā from this Ummah as being Ibn Maryam [the Son of Mary], whereas he is not the son of Maryam? Know, therefore, that this confusion that afflicts the minds of the ignorant has been cleared in Surah

---

1. ‘As He made Successors from among those who were before them’ (Surah an-Nūr, 24:56) [Publisher]
2. ‘Even as We sent a Messenger to Pharaoh’ (Surah al-Muzzammil, 73:16) [Publisher]
Tahrīm of the Holy Quran in which certain individuals of this Ummah have been likened to Maryam, and the spirit of 'Īsā is said to have been breathed into them. This clearly shows that some individual from this Ummah would first attain the status of Maryam and then the spirit would be breathed into this ‘Maryam’, who will then be elevated and called ‘Ibn Maryam’.

Someone may question, ‘If this is true, then there should have been some reference to this in your revelations too.’ Let me say in reply that this point was not only hinted at, but also fully expounded upon in the previous parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya twenty-five years ago, wherein—by way of a subtle simile—I have been described as Ibn Maryam. You may take the book in your hands and find that, in the beginning, God named me ‘Maryam’ and said:

ِیَا مَریم اَسْکَن اِنَّ تُوْزِعَ کِنَّ الْجَنَّةَ

Meaning: ‘Enter Paradise O Maryam, you and your companion.’

Then, many pages later, which were written quite some time later, God Almighty said:

ِیَا مَریم نَفْخَتْ فِیكَ مِن لَدَنِی رَوحَ الصِّدْقِ

Meaning: ‘O Maryam, I have breathed into you the spirit of truth.’ This breathing was a spiritual conception—so to speak—for the words used here are the same as the Holy Quran uses with regard to Maryam the Truthful when the spirit was breathed into her, which meant that she became pregnant and the pregnancy resulted in the birth of ‘Īsā. In the same way, He said to me that the spirit had been breathed into me, and so this was a spiritual conception. Then later in the same book, I was addressed as ‘Īsā, for after the breathing of the divine spirit, the state of Maryam was ready to be transformed into ‘Īsā, and this state is metaphorically described as conception. And, finally, from this Maryam-like
state, emerged ‘Īsā. It was to signify this that I was named ‘Īsā towards the end of the book, while at the beginning I had been called ‘Maryam’.

Now reflect with decency, fairness, and piety on this verse of Surah Taḥrīm in which certain persons of this Ummah have been likened to Maryam, and which then speaks of the breathing of the spirit into Maryam—signifying the conception that would result in the birth of ‘Īsā. And then read all these portions from the previous parts of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya and have fear of God and look how He first named me ‘Maryam’ and then spoke of the spirit being breathed into me, and at the end of the book declared me ‘Īsā, born of this Maryam’s spiritual conception.

Had this been a human endeavour, a mortal could never have the power to place such subtleties in his book by way anticipation so long before his claim. You yourself can testify that at the time, and in that period, I had no notion about the true connotation of this verse as to how I would be made ‘Īsā the Messiah. Indeed, on account of the inadequacy of human knowledge, I—like you—believed that ‘Īsā ibn Maryam would descend from heaven. Despite the fact that God named me ‘Īsā in the previous parts of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya and attributed to me all the verses that bore prophecies about Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, and also said that the tidings of my coming were contained in the Holy Quran and the Hadith, I still did not realize, and published in those parts of my Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya my mistaken belief that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā would descend from heaven. My eyes remained closed until God had apprised me again and again that ‘Īsā ibn Maryam, the Israelite, is dead and will never return, and that for this time and for this Ummah, you—indeed—are ‘Īsā ibn Maryam. The fact that my mistaken belief was published in the earlier parts of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya was also a Sign of God and it testified to my innocence and integrity.

How can I remedy these callous people who neither believe in an oath nor accept the Signs as evidence, nor do they ponder over the guidance from Allah the Exalted. The heavens and the earth brought
forth Signs, but their eyes remain closed. I do not know what God will show to them now.

Here it is necessary to bear in mind that not only has God Almighty named me 'Īsā, but He has also bestowed upon me the names of all the Prophets from beginning to end. So in the earlier parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, I have been named Adam, as Allah the Almighty said:

اُردتُ اَن استخلف فخلقت أَدم

see page 492 of the earlier parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya

On another occasion, He says:

سُبِحَان الذِّي اسْرِى بعَبْدِهِ لِيَلْلَهَ خَلَقَ أَدمَ فَاكِرِمْهُ

see page 504 of the earlier parts Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya

The meaning of both these sentences is that, ‘I willed that I should create My Vicegerent, so I created Adam; meaning, this humble one. He then says, ‘Holy is the Being who carried His servant on a spiritual journey in one single night. He created this Adam and then exalted him.’ The spiritual journey of one night here means that he was perfected within one night and traversed the entire spiritual path within half a day. One reason why God has called me Adam was that in this age the progeny of Adam had generally become spiritually dead. Hence, God declared me the Adam of the beginning of new life. This brief statement contains the prophecy that just as the progeny of Adam spread

---

1. In the 2008 edition of Rūhānī Khaza’īn, the referenced text appears in volume 1, page 585. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on page 368. [Publisher]

2. In the 2008 edition of Rūhānī Khaza’īn, the referenced text appears in volume 1, page 600. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on page 381. [Publisher]
throughout the world, so will my spiritual and physical progeny spread throughout the world.

The other reason is that just as the angels objected to Adam being made the Vicegerent, and God Almighty rejected their objection saying, ‘You do not know the circumstances and condition of Adam as I know them,’ the same stands true of me. In the earlier parts of Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya, there is a revelation to the effect that people will raise objection regarding me just as they had objected with regard to Ḥaḍrat Adam, may peace be upon him. Allah the Exalted says:

وَانْتَ مَتَى بِمَزْدَلَةٍ لَا يَعْلَمُهَا الخَلْقُ

Meaning that, people will mock you and ask, ‘Is this the one whom God has raised? He is either a fool or a madman.’ In reply to them God says in these parts of Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya:

قَالَ إِنَّما أَعْلَمُ مَا لا تَعْلَمُونَ

Meaning: ‘Your status with Me is that which the world knows nothing of.’ These words are similar to those the Holy Quran records with regard to Adam:

تَعْلَمُوْنَ لَا مَا اَعْلَمُ اِنِّيْۤ قَالَ

In fact, these very words have been used with regard to me and published in other books, though not in Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya. The third similarity I have with Adam is that Adam was born a twin, and so was I. A girl was born before me and I was born thereafter. At the same time I was my parents’ last child, they had no more children after me. I was also born on a Friday. Adam being born before Eve signified

1. ‘He answered, “I know what you know not”’ (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:31).

[Publisher]
that he was at the beginning of the world; whereas, my being born after my twin sister signifies that I have appeared at the end of this cycle of the world. I was born at the end of the sixth millennium, and—according to the lunar calendar—we are now passing through the seventh millennium.

In the same way, in the earlier parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, God Almighty has also called me Nūh [Noah] and said with regard to me:

وَلا تَخَاطِبُنِي فِي الَّذِينَ ظَلَمُوا اِنّهُمْ مُغْرِقُونَ

Meaning: ‘Build an ark before My eyes and do not say anything to me by way of intercession for those who have transgressed. I shall cause them to drown.’

At the time of Nūh, God gave almost a thousand years of respite to the transgressors, and now, too, a thousand years have passed if we put aside the three centuries of Khairul-Qurūn [the Best of Centuries—of early Islam]. So, according to this reckoning, this age now approaches the time similar to the one at which Nūh’s people were destroyed. God also commanded me:

اصنع الفلك باعیننا وَوَحِینَا، انَّ الَّذِينَ يَبَيِّعُونَكَ إِنَّما يَبَيِّعُونَ اللَّهَ يَدَ اللَّهُ فِي اِلَّدَيْهِمْ

Meaning: ‘Build an ark before My eyes and according to My command. Those who enter into bai’at [the pledge of allegiance] with you, enter into a covenant with Allah. It is the hand of God that is upon their hands.’ This bai’at is the ‘ark’ that will save the lives and the faith of the people.

However, the bai’at does not mean the mere verbal avowal of which the heart is oblivious and even rebellious. Bai’at means to sell one’s self. I say most truly that one who does not sell his life, property, and honour in this path has not entered the bai’at in the sight of God. Indeed, I see that there are many even now who have apparently pledged bai’at, but have not yet perfected even the moral of thinking
well of others and are prone to falter at every trial or tribulation like a weak child. And some are so unfortunate that they are easily swayed by the talk of a mischievous person and hasten towards misguidance just as a dog hastens towards carrion. So how can I say that they have truly entered into my bai'at? Every now and then, I am even given knowledge regarding such people, but I am not permitted to tell them about it. There are many who are lowly but will be exalted, and there are many exalted who will be made lowly. So this is a cause to be fearful!

In the same way, in earlier parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, I have been named Ibrāhīm, as it was said:

سُلَم عَلیکُ یَا إِبْرَاهیم

Meaning, ‘May peace be upon you, O Ibrāhīm.’

God Almighty had greatly blessed Ibrāhīm, may peace be upon him, and he was always safeguarded against the onslaughts of the enemy. By naming me Ibrāhīm, God Almighty indicates that this Ibrāhīm will be similarly blessed, and his opponents will not be able to harm him, as He said to me in the previous parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya:

بُوْرَکْتُ یَا اُحْمَد وَکَانَ مَا بَارَکَ الْلَّهُ فِیکَ حَقًّا فِیک

Meaning: ‘You have been blessed O Aḥmad, and you were indeed entitled to it.’ And in these same previous parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Allah the Exalted addressed me at one place and said, ‘I shall bless you so much that kings shall seek blessings from your garments.’ And just as God laid the foundation of a progeny with

---

1. In the 2008 edition of Rūḥānī Khazā‘īn, the referenced text appears in volume 1, page 666. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on page 436. [Publisher]
Ibrāhīm, so did Allah the Exalted say regarding me in the previous parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*:

سبحان الله زاد مجدك ینقطع اٰباءك و یبدء منك۔

Meaning: ‘Holy is God who augmented your eminence. He will cut off mention of your ancestors and will start the family from you.’

Likewise, God loved Ibrāhīm so dearly that He showed great miracles to protect him and Himself consoled him in his sorrow. And so in the previous parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, He names me Ibrāhīm and says:

سلام علی ابراهیم صافیناہ ونجّیناہ من الغمّ تفرّدنا بذالك

*see page 561*

Meaning: ‘Peace unto this Ibrāhīm. Our love for him is pure and without blemish. We shall save him from sorrow. And this love is unique to Us; none else can show such love.’

At yet another place in the previous parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, I have been named Ibrāhīm as He says:

یا ابراهیم أَعرضْ عن ھٰذا اِنَّہ عمل غیر صالح۔ إنما أنت مذكّر وما انت علیھم بمصیطر۔

*see page 510*

Meaning: ‘O Ibrāhīm, distance yourself from this man, he is not good. And your duty is to remind; you are not a guardian over them.’

---

1. In the 2008 edition of *Rūḥānī Khāzīn*, the referenced text appears in volume 1, page 670. In the 2016 English translation of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, Part IV, this text appears on page 439. [Publisher]

2. In the 2008 edition of *Rūḥānī Khāzīn*, the referenced text appears in volume 1, page 608. In the 2016 English translation of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, Part IV, this text appears on page 389. [Publisher]
Ibrāhīm had to sever his ties with some people of his tribe and from some of his close relatives, and it was thus prophesied about me that I would have to cut myself off from some of my people, and so did it happen. Then, at another place in the previous parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, I was called Ibrāhīm and He says:

و نظرنا الیك وقلنا یا ناركونی بردًا و سل مًا علـٰی ابراھیم۔

Meaning: ‘And We cast a look upon this Ibrāhīm and said, “O fire, become a source of coolness and peace for Ibrāhīm!”’ This was a prophecy about the future. And what I now think is that it was a glad tid-ing relating to the lawsuits that could have put my life and honour in jeopardy, such as the litigation for murder entered against me by Dr. Martyn Clark, and the litigation by Karam Dīn. And ‘fire’ here is the fire that results from the anger and fury of the rulers. In short, what God says is that He will calm this fire of anger and fury, and there will be peace and deliverance.

Likewise, in earlier parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya I was also named Yūsuf [Joseph]. The similarity in this regard has already been detailed previously. Similarly, in the earlier parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya I was named Mūsā, as Allah Almighty says:

تطلّف بالناس وترحم عليهم انت فيهم بمنزلة موسى واصبر عليهم ما يقولون

(see page 508 in the previous parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya²)

1. In the 2008 edition of Rūhani Khazā’in, the referenced text appears in volume 1, page 267. In the 2014 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part III, this text appears on page 208. [Publisher]

2. In the 2008 edition of Rūhani Khazā’in, the referenced text appears in volume 1, page 605. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on page 386. [Publisher]
Meaning: ‘Treat people with kindness and courtesy. You are among them like Mūsā, so be patient in the face of their uncouth remarks.’ That is to say, Mūsā was very kind and compassionate, and even though the Israelites constantly turned apostate and attacked him and levelled absurd accusations against him, he exercised patience and interceded on their behalf. Mūsā took them out of an inferno and saved them from the Pharaoh and showed them great awe-inspiring miracles. So, in naming me Mūsā there is the inherent prophecy that the same will happen in my case.

Likewise, in the previous parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, God named me Dāwūd [David], the details of which will be mentioned soon at the proper place. Likewise, in the earlier parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, God also named me Sulaimān [Solomon], which will also be explained in a little while. In the earlier parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, God also named me Ahmad and Muḥammad, which is an indication that as the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is *Khātam-e-Nubuwat* [Bearer of the Seal of Prophethood], in the same way this humble one is *Khātam-e-Wilāyat* [Bearer of the Seal of Sainthood]. And finally, God described me in the earlier parts of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya* as:

جری اللّٰ فی حُلَلِ النبیاء

which means, ‘The Messenger of God in the mantle of all the past Prophets, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon them.’ This revelation of Allah means that my humble self has been bestowed a portion of the particular circumstances or attributes of all the Prophets from Adam onwards—may peace be upon them—who have come into the world from God Almighty, whether they are from among the Israelites or otherwise. There has not been a single Prophet, a share of whose characteristics or circumstances have not been bestowed upon my humble self to some degree. My nature bears the imprint of the nature of every Prophet. This is what God has told me.
This also signifies that just as the mortal enemies—of all past Prophets, may peace be upon them—who had transgressed every limit in their vehement opposition were destroyed with all kinds of chastisement, the same sort of fate would befall the majority of people today if they fail to repent, for they resemble these earlier opponents of the Prophets. The divine revelation asserts that this age is the culmination of all good as well as all evil, so that if God does not have mercy on the mischievous people of this age, they will deserve all the torments that have afflicted the mischievous peoples of past ages. In other words, all those chastisements can converge in this age, and as people from among the nations of the past perished—some from plague, some from lightning, some from earthquakes, some from floods, some from storms of tempestuous winds, and some from the ground sinking—so should the people of this age be wary of such chastisements if they fail to reform themselves. Most people are deserving of all this and it is only divine mercy that has granted them respite. And this sentence:

جری اللّٰ فی حُلَلِ النبیاء

[The Messenger of God in the mantle of all the past Prophets, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon them.]

requires a lengthy discourse, which this fifth part cannot contain. Suffice it say that there is in me a share of the habits, characteristics, and events related to all past Prophets. Therefore, just as God has shown His help for the Prophets of the past in diverse ways, He has shown similar Signs for me, and will continue to do so. And the Prophets I speak of are not only those belonging to the Israelites; rather, I share in the paradigms and incidents of all Prophets who have lived throughout the entire world, including the Prophet who appeared among the Hindus by the name of Krishna. It is unfortunate that just as mischievous people accused Dāwūd of sin and debauchery, so did they do with Krishna; and just as Dāwūd was God’s champion and was very brave and God loved him, so was Krishna in Āryah Varta.
So it is true to say that Krishna was the ‘Dāwūd’ of the Āryah nation, and that Dāwūd was indeed the ‘Krishna’ of the Israelites. And it is absolutely correct to say that Dāwūd was ‘Krishna’ or that Krishna was ‘Dāwūd’. Time repeats itself. People—whether they be good or evil—the likes of them continue to appear in the world. In this age, God willed to illustrate by means of one person the examples of all the past holy and righteous Prophets, and I am that person. In the same way, the paradigms of evil people were all manifested in this age, such as Pharaoh, the Jews who put the Messiah on the cross, or Abū Jahl. The likes of all of them are present at this time. This is what God alludes to in the Holy Quran when speaking of Ya’jūj and Ma’jūj [Gog and Magog].

God Almighty has also named me Dhul-Qarnain, for God’s revelation regarding me says:

جری اللّٰ فی حُلَلِ النبیاء

which means, ‘The Messenger of God in the mantle of all the past Prophets’, requires that I should also have the characteristics of Dhul-Qarnain, since it is proven from Sūrah al-Kahf that he, too, was a recipient of revelation. God says concerning him:

الْقَرْنَيْنِ يٰذَا قُلْنَا

So, in keeping with the revelation:

جری اللّٰ فی حُلَلِ النبیاء

[The Messenger of God in the mantle of all the past Prophets, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon them.]

I have come as Dhul-Qarnain for this Ummah. And the Holy Quran

1. ‘We said, “O Dhul-Qarnain!”’ (Sūrah al-Kahf, 18:87) [Publisher]
contains a prophecy regarding me which is metaphorical in nature and can only be understood by the wise. It is evident that Dhul-Qarnain has to be a person who witnesses two centuries. And, it is a marvellous matter about me that when you look at all the calendars in use, you will find that I have lived in two centuries according to the calendars of all people.

I am about 67 years old now, and just as I have lived in two centuries of the Islamic calendar, I have also lived in two centuries of the Christian calendar, as well as the Hindi calendar whose year begins with Bikaramājīt. I have, as far as was possible for me, studied all the ancient calendars of the East and West, and I have not found a single nation of whose calendar I have not seen two centuries. It is recorded in some aḥādīth that the Messiah to come would be known by the fact that he will be Dhul-Qarnain. So I am Dhul-Qarnain by virtue of the Word of God.

I will now set out the meanings of the verses of the Holy Quran in Sūrah al-Kahf which relate the story of Dhul-Qarnain and the prophecy they contain about me, of which I have been informed by God Almighty. I do not deny the meaning of these verses which relate to the past, but that was in the past and this is in the future. The Holy Quran is not like a story teller. There is an inherent prophecy in every story narrated by it, and the story of Dhul-Qarnain contains the prophecy about the time of the Promised Messiah. The text of the Holy Quran is:

\[ \text{وَ يَسْـَٔلُوْنَكَ عَنْ ذِي الْقَرْنَيْنِ قُلْ سَاَتْلُوْا عَلَيْكُمْ ذِكْرًا} \]

Meaning that these people enquire from you about Dhul-Qarnain; tell

---

1. ☆ This points to the fact that the episode of Dhul-Qarnain does not merely belong to the past, and that a Dhul-Qarnain will appear in the future as well. The mention of the past Dhul-Qarnain is just a small matter [Sūrah al-Kahf, 18:84]. (Author)
them that for the moment I shall relate to you only a little about him. Then it says:

الله يدبر له من كل شيء وما في الأرض.

Meaning that, We shall establish him—that is, the Promised Messiah, who will also be known as Dhul-Qarnain—on the surface of the earth in such a way that no one will be able to harm him, and We shall provide him with all the means for achieving his purpose and shall make his endeavours easy and convenient for him.

Remember, the same revelation concerning me was published in the previous volumes of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, in which God Almighty said:

الم نجعل لك سهولة في كل أمر

Meaning: ‘Have We not facilitated everything for you?’ That is, have We not provided you with all the means for the communication and propagation of the truth? Of course, I have been provided with all the means for the propagation of the truth which were not available at the time of any other Prophet: Means of communication have improved between nations; travel has become so easy that a journey of years now takes only a few days; transmission of news is such that within minutes messages can be transmitted over thousands of miles; the ancient manuscripts of various nations that had lain hidden have now come to light; means have become available for the delivery of everything where it is needed; difficulties in the publication of books have been removed with the introduction of the printing press, so much so that more copies of a book can be printed in ten days than was previously possible in ten years! A piece of writing can now be published throughout the world

1. Sūrah al-Kahf, 18:85 [Publisher]
within forty days; whereas, prior to this age, one could not achieve this even in a hundred years if granted a long life!

Then Allah the Almighty says in the Holy Quran:

Meaning that, when Dhul-Qarnain, who is the Promised Messiah, is furnished with all the means, he will follow a certain path. In other words, he will resolve to reform the people of the West. He will find that the Sun of Truth and righteousness has set in a muddy pool, and near this filthy spring and darkness he will find a nation who will be referred to as the people of the West. These are the Christians of the West who will be steeped in darkness; they will have no sun to get light from, nor will they have clean water to drink. That is, both in practice and doctrine they will be in a terrible state; they will be bereft of spiritual light and spiritual water. Then We shall say to Dhul-Qarnain, i.e. the Promised Messiah: ‘It is up to you either to punish them’—that is, pray for punishment to descend upon them (as is found narrated in the authentic hadith)—‘or to treat them with kindness.’ Dhul-Qarnain—meaning the Promised Messiah—will then answer: ‘We desire punishment only for the one who transgresses. They will be punished in this life also through our supplications and then suffer severe torment in the Hereafter. But he who does not deny the truth and does good deeds will have his reward. He will be required only to do what can be done with facility and ease.’

In short, these verses contain a prophecy that the Promised Messiah will appear at a time when the people of the West will be steeped in darkness. The Sun of Truth will completely disappear from their view—going down into a dirty, stinking pool; in other words,

1. Sūrah al-Kahf, 18:86–89 [Publisher]
instead of truth, foul beliefs and practices will be prevalent among them. This would be their water which they will drink. They will have no light whatsoever and will wallow in darkness. And as is clear, this is exactly the condition of the Christian faith today as described by the Holy Quran, and the great centre of Christianity is also in the Western countries.

Then, Allah Almighty says:

\[
\text{سِتْرًا دُوْنِهَا مِّنْ لَّهُمْ نَجْعَلْ لَّمْ قَوْمٍ عَلٰى تَطْلُعُ وَجَدَهَا الشَّمْسِ مَطْلِعَ بَلَغَ اِذَا حَتّٰۤى سَبَبًا اَتْبَعَ ثُمَّ خُبْرًا لَدَيْهِ بِمَا اَحَطْنَا قَدْ وَ كَذٰلِكَ}
\]

That is, Dhul-Qarnain—i.e. the Promised Messiah—who will be equipped with every means, shall follow another path; that is, he will observe the state of the people of the East, and will discover a people at the place of the rising of the Sun of Truth who will be so ignorant that they will have no means of protecting themselves from the glare of the sun. That is, they will be scorched by their worship of external form and extremism, and they will be unaware of the truth. Dhul-Qarnain—meaning the Promised Messiah—will have all the means of true peace and happiness of which We are aware, but the people will not accept them. They will have no shelter against the glare of their extremism—neither house nor shady trees, nor suitable clothes to protect them from the heat. In this way, the rising Sun of Truth will bring about their destruction.

This is a parable for the people who have before them the light of the Sun of Guidance, unlike those whose ‘sun’ has already set, but they derive no benefit from it; only their skins are burnt, their complexion is darkened, and they even lose their eyesight.

---

1. Sūrah al-Kahf, 18:90–92 [Publisher]
2. Here God Almighty means to reveal that there will be three groups of people at the time of the Promised Messiah. One group will adopt the path of extreme neglect and lose all light. The second group will adopt the path of
This division indicates that the Promised Messiah would encounter three kinds of people in the course of his mission: (1) First, he would encounter a people who had lost the Sun of Guidance and are wallowing in a muddy and dark pool; (2) His second encounter would be with a people who are sitting in the sun stark naked; that is, they do not adopt good manners or modesty or humility, and goodwill. They are worshippers of the letter and form and seem as if ready to fight the Sun. Thus, they too are deprived of the benefit of the Sun, and they would only get their skins burnt from the Sun. This refers to the Muslims among whom the Promised Messiah appeared, but they denied him and opposed him and did not behave with modesty and good manners, and failed to benefit from thinking well of him. They, therefore, were deprived of good fortune.

Then, Allah the Exalted further says in the Holy Quran:

1. Sūrah al-Kahf, 18:93–103 [Publisher]
course and would find himself at a very critical situation that can be described as being between two barriers or mountains. This means that he would encounter a time when people on either side would be in fear, and the powers of darkness, in collaboration with the powers of state, would present an awe-striking spectacle. Under both these powers he would discover a people who would find it difficult to understand him. They would be the victims of false beliefs on account of which they would find it difficult to understand the guidance which he would present to them, but in the end they would understand him and would attain guidance. They are the third kind of people who would benefit from the guidance of the Promised Messiah.

They would say to him: ‘O Dhul-Qarnain! Ya’jūj and Ma’jūj have filled the land with disorder. If you so please, let us collect a fund for you so that you may erect a barrier between them and us.’ He would say in reply: ‘The power God has given me is better than your funds, but if you be so inclined, you can help me according to your means so that I may erect a wall between you and them.’ That is, he would put forth such conclusive proofs and arguments that their enemies would not be left with any basis for criticism or objection against their religion. ‘Bring me slabs of iron so that their movement can be stopped’; that is, hold fast to my teachings and my arguments, fully adopt steadfastness, and build yourselves like unto a wall of iron to repel the enemy’s onslaught. ‘Then blow fire into the iron until it becomes like fire’; that is, feed the flames of love for God until you yourselves assume the complexion of the Divine.

It must be remembered that the Sign of the highest love of God Almighty is that the attributes and colours of Allah develop—by way of reflection—in the one who loves God. So long as that condition is not attained, it is a lie to claim to be a lover of God. The condition of perfect love is exactly like that of a piece of iron which, when placed within the fire, absorbs so much of the effect of fire that the iron itself becomes like the fire. Then, although it is really iron and not fire, it is so thoroughly dominated by the fire that it reflects all the properties
of fire; it burns like fire and emanates light like fire. So, the reality of the love of God is exactly the same, that one becomes coloured in that colour. Had Islam been incapable of helping to attain this real experience, it would not have been worth anything, but Islam does help to attain that reality. Man must first become firm like iron in constancy and strength of faith; for, if faith were like weeds and discarded shavings of wood, the fire would consume it with the slightest touch; how then could he exhibit the quality of fire? It is a pity that some ignorant people—failing to realize the relationship between man, the servant, and God, the Lord, which enables the reflection of divine attributes within man—have found fault with this revelation of mine; namely:

اِنَّما امرك اذا اردتَ شیئًا ان تقول لہ كُنْ فیكون۔

Meaning: ‘As for you, when you say concerning a thing, “Be!” then it happens.’ This is Almighty God’s Word that descended upon me; it is not mine, and it is not from me and it is supported by the experience of great mystics of Islam. For example, Sayyed ‘Abdul-Qâdir Jîlânî has written the very same thing in his Futûbul-Ghaib, and what is even more wonderful is that Sayyed ‘Abdul-Qâdir Jîlânî has put forward the exact same verse. Alas, people are content with just a superficial faith; seeking full cognizance—according to them—is heresy, and they imagine what they have is sufficient for them, whereas it amounts to nothing, and they deny the possibility of anyone experiencing real and certain communion with God after the Messenger of Allah, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. They do, however, think that hearts can be inspired, but they are not sure whether that inspiration is from Satan or God; and they do not know of what use such inspiration is for the state of one’s faith, nor what progress or advancement it can bring. Such an inspiration is indeed a severe trial which might lead to sin or forfeiture of faith itself; for, if, in such a doubtful revelation about which one does not know whether it is from Satan or God, one is ordered to do a certain act, and if one fails to do that act thinking that
it had been commanded, perhaps, by Satan, whereas it was a command of God, this would be a sin. If, however, one carried out the command, whereas the command was from Satan, one would forfeit one’s faith.

So, people deprived of such dangerous revelations in which Satan himself has a share, are indeed better than those who do have them. With such a creed, even reason would not lead to a decision. An inspiration might possibly be like that of the mother of Mūsā, may peace be upon him, which endangered the life of her child if carried out, or, like the inspiration of Khiḍr, may peace be upon him, who—apparently—killed an innocent soul without cause. As these incidents are apparently against the Shariah [Islamic Law], who would act upon them? For, there is the suspicion that they might be from Satan, yet failure to carry them out would be sin. It is possible also, that the accursed Satan may command what apparently is not against the Shariah, but which really may lead to much mischief and evil, or it might be something veiled which might lead to forfeiture of faith. So, of what benefit is such discourse?

After the verses mentioned above, Allah the Exalted goes on to say: ‘Then Dhu'l-Qarnain’—meaning the Promised Messiah—‘would say to the people who are afraid of Ya’jūj and Ma’jūj: “Bring me copper so that I may melt it and pour it over the wall.” Thereafter, Ya’jūj and Ma’jūj would not have the ability to scale it nor dig holes through it.’

Here it should be noted that though iron assumes the qualities of fire when left in it for a long time, it does not melt easily. Copper, on the other hand, melts very quickly; it is necessary for a seeker to melt in the path of God Almighty. This means: Come forward with such eager hearts and mild dispositions as would melt upon witnessing the Signs manifested by God Almighty, because the Signs of God Almighty have no effect on the hard-hearted. A person can only become immune to Satanic attacks when he becomes steadfast like iron and that iron becomes like fire when touched by the fire of the love of God Almighty, and then the hearts should melt and cover the iron to secure it against disintegration and decay. For the completion of the spiritual journey
these are the three conditions which, when combined, form an impregnable wall that cannot be scaled or bored through by the spirit of Satan. Then, God says that all this will come about by the grace of God and it will be His hand which will accomplish everything and human designs will play no part in it. And when the Day of Judgment approaches, mischief will reign supreme once again. This is the promise of God.

Then He says that at the time of Dhul-Qarnain, who is the Promised Messiah, all people will rise up in support of their own religion and will attack each other—wave upon wave—like the waves of the sea. Then the trumpet will be blown in Heaven. That is, the God of the Heavens will raise the Promised Messiah and create a third people for whom He will show great Signs of His support until all rightly inclined people are gathered upon one faith; that is to say, upon Islam. They will hear the voice of the Messiah and will hasten towards him; then will there be only one Shepherd and one flock. Those days will be hard indeed and God will manifest His countenance with the most fearsome Signs. Those who will persist in disbelief will experience Hell in this very world through all manner of calamities. God says: ‘These are the very people whose eyes were veiled against My Words, and their ears heeded not My commandments. Did these disbelievers imagine it to be a trivial affair to take humble creatures as “God” while I should stand dismissed? We shall reveal Hell in this very world as entertainment for the disbelievers.’ In other words, great and terrible Signs would appear and all these Signs would testify to the truth of the Promised Messiah. See how the grace of the Benevolent has bestowed all these favours upon this humble one, who is labelled a disbeliever and deceiver by his opponents!

O God, O Helper in exigencies, Overlooker of faults and All-Powerful!

O my Beloved, my Benefactor, my Sustainer!
How should I—O Beneficent Lord!—express my gratitude to You?
From where should I acquire the tongue that would enable me to do this task?

You saved me from the ill-thinking deniers by testifying on my behalf Yourself,
With one strike You vanquished and humiliated the enemy.

Those who serve in Your cause find their reward;
What did You see in me that You bestowed such grace and blessing upon me again and again?

I am in awe of Your works, O my Benevolent [Lord]!
For what deed did You bestow upon me the robe of Your nearness and close relationship?

I am but a worm of the earth—my Beloved—not the progeny of Adam;
I am but a target of people’s hatred and reproach.

It is sheer grace and favour that You chose me,
Whereas there was no shortage of servants in Your court.

All those who professed friendship have turned into enemies,
But You—O Fulfiller of my needs!—have never abandoned me.
O my Friend, the Unique! O Refuge of my life!
You are all I need and I cannot do without You.

I would have died and become dust had it not been for Your grace,
And then who knows where this dust would have been thrown away?

May my body, life, and heart be sacrificed in Your path,
For I have not found anyone as loving as You.

From the very beginning, my life was spent under Your care;
I remained in Your lap like a suckling infant.

In the progeny of man, I did not find the fidelity that You possess,
Apart from You, I have not seen any sympathetic friend.

People say that an unworthy one is not accepted,
I, however, found favour in Your court despite being unworthy.

So numerous were Your favours and blessings upon me,
That even till Doomsday it would be hard to count them.

You made the heaven a witness for me,
The moon and sun became dark and obscure for my sake.
You even sent the plague for my help,

To fulfil those Signs which are the basis of truth.

All schemes [of the opponents] came to naught when that calamity struck!

All plans were blown away like dust.

You bestowed fame upon me in the land of India,

That spread everywhere in an instant like lightening.

You have sent down Adam here again,

So that the tree of truth may bear fruit in this land.

People may babble a hundred times, but Your will is different—

Even the angels are not acquainted with Your secrets.

All loss and gain, all adversity and prosperity, is in Your hand,

It is You indeed who makes someone helpless or mighty.

You seat whomsoever You will on the royal throne,

And You dethrone whomsoever You will, with debasement.

I, too, am a Sign from among your Signs in the world,

Whom you have made the pride of the nation and the Faith.
All kinds of tribulations befall the glory of mortals,

It is Your kingdom alone, that endures forever.

Honour and dishonour are all dependent on Your command,

By Your command comes the autumn and the breeze of spring.

You made one such as me shine in the world,

Who, O my Master, can fathom the magnitude of Your secrets?

How wondrous are Your works, O my Sustainer!

You bestow the destined fruits, even by force—though one may flee from them.

From the very beginning I loved solitude,

I hated fame and disliked any kind of prominence.

But You Yourself made me known by Your own hand

I never asked for it, You indeed brought about all of this flourishing garden.

Why do they blame me for the command that I received?

And who am I to reject the command of the Sovereign Lord?
But, having once been commanded, I have to do His bidding,

Even though I am weak, helpless, and melancholy.

Inviting every vain talker to the truth is not an easy task,

At every step one encounters countless trials and hardships.

My supplications of day and night have reached heavens,

But my call could not penetrate the hearts of the ignorant.

Hearts are all in the hand of God's decree; If God so wills—

He could turn them towards me, and are drawn irresistibly to me.

He could also—showing some miracles—suddenly soften

Those hearts as hard as the rocks of the mountains.

Alas! What did my people gain from their rejection?

Hundreds of homes were rendered like caves by the earthquakes.

Righteousness demanded that they cast a glance upon these times.

It also demanded that they should have waited for a while with patience.
Had they traversed all the stages of knowledge?

Was there not a dark and murky road before their eyes?

The longings that I entertained in my heart remained unfulfilled;

Those to whom I had looked for support again and again became my mortal enemies.

They have deteriorated so much that no improvement is in sight.

Alas! What were my expectations and what has came to pass!

To whom should I relate this story of my broken heart?

For they hate the idea of even meeting me, let alone listening to me.

What should I do and how should I give away my life,

So that they, who are so prejudiced, might pay attention to me?

So many Signs have been manifested by the grace of God

That seeing them even Satan has become dejected.

But most of the opponents have no shame and modesty;

They see hundreds of Signs, yet remain engrossed in abuse.
A heart that is pure does not require too many Signs;

A single Sign is enough, if the heart is God-fearing.

The day dawns for the enemies of faith, but night descends upon me—

O my Sun! Rise forth, for I am restless.

O my Beloved! May every particle of my being be sacrificed for You;

Do turn the tide in my favour, O Driving Force of the universe!

Pay some heed to who is bewailing in Your alley;

This head will be lying in the dust if you do not come as my Friend.

Help me now with the hands of Your grace,

So that the ark of Islam may safely weather this storm.

Do now please overlook my failings and shortcomings,

So that the enemy of the faith—the accursed—may not rejoice.

Apply a balm on my wounds, for I am stricken with grief;

Hearken unto my supplications, for I am utterly mortified!
I cannot bear the sight of the fragile state of the religion of Muṣṭafā [the Chosen One];

O my Sovereign Lord! Make me victorious and successful.

Will You let me be buried in the dust before the purpose is achieved?

This is not what I hope from You, O my Refuge!

O my Lord! Bestow your grace on Islam and save it Yourself—

Do now listen to the cries of Your servants on this tattered vessel.

Sin, transgression, and disobedience are rampant among the people of this nation;

Clouds of gloom are spreading, and the night is pitch dark.

A whole world has died thirsting for Your water;

Turn in this direction—O my Lord!—the flow of the river.

We are at the end of our wits, caught in these tribulations;

Have mercy on Your servants so that they may be liberated.

How should we deal with things, for no plan seems to be working

Against these calamities that abound all around?
Come—O my Saviour!—for this boat is about to sink;
Autumn has overtaken this nation in the midst of spring.

The light has left their hearts, and their minds have turned obtuse;
Every heart is relying on its own perverse thinking.

That which we thought was a pure and clear drop of water,
When we looked at it carefully we found a thousand germs in it also.

The far-seeing telescope of cognizance found filth everywhere;
This epidemic had eaten away the fruits of every branch of faith.

O God! How can this spiritual irrigation be effected without You;
The garden of piety has all been burnt, and the remains serve merely as a shrine for the Faith.

If anything can be done—O my Beloved!—it is only with Your power;
Otherwise, evil is forging ahead like a flood.

Show a Sign, for the Faith has vanished without a trace;
Look this way so that we may have a glimpse of spring.
How can I describe the slumber that people of this world have fallen into;
And how much they abhor truth and adore falsehood?

Their minds remain covered in veils even though they have seen hundreds of Signs;
They have estranged themselves from Light and have opted for the Fire.

Had there not been such ill-thinking, disbelief would have vanished—
Cursed be it, for it has corrupted even sensible people.

Ill-thinking can make a mountain out of a molehill,
And make a flock of ravens out of a single hair of a feather.

People! Why do you transgress beyond the limits? Pray have some fear of God;
Do you not witness the help of God coming again and again?

Has God stopped helping and assisting the righteous?
Why does He express love for a ‘sinner’ and an ‘infidel’?

So many Signs in support of an ‘evildoer’!
Why does He show these Signs? Is He, perchance, a relative of evildoers?
Is He now changing His ways and His laws, 
    To which He had adhered ever since eternity?

If eyes were blind, then were the ears deaf too? 
    Do you imagine that God is mistaken?—and you know all about me?

He whose claim is based entirely on falsehood—
    If He should help such a one!—What, then, is the difference between 
truth and falsehood?

Has God remained forgetful, while you realized the truth? 
    Did He remain unaware, while you recognized my afflicted 
situation?

Ill-thinking has rendered you bereft of reason and sight, 
    Whereas there were countless arguments testifying to my truth.

The darkness of ignorance and the fierce winds of ill-thinking—
    When these two come together—faith is blown away like dust.

Ill-thinking is a poison, so shun it, O people of faith!
Chapter Two — Fulfilment of Prophecies

Thorns are sown in their own path by such ill-thinking people
Who are devoid of shame, modesty, and perseverance.

This misdeed is at the root of man’s ill fortune,
But who has the power to change destiny?

We are a hardy group and are not concerned by anyone’s ill-will;
We are stout of heart, and we can endure great pain.

It is not good to challenge the one who belongs to God;
Do not lay hands upon the lions, O weak and emaciated fox!

The Benevolent Lord Himself stands by me on this path,
Do not therefore try to block my way, O mischievous people!

It is the way of God that He Himself manifests the distinction,
So it may become clear who is pure and who eats carrion.

I see a Helper of mine behind the veil,
His sword is drawn for whoever tries to attack me.

If the heedless enemy were to see that Arm and that armour,
He would lose his senses and forget all animosity.
Does this world not have a Creator and a Judge? Where, then, can the evil-minded transgressors find refuge?

Why are you surprised if I have come as the Messiah? The very spring breeze breathes the Messianic spirit.

There is a fervour in heaven for inviting people towards the Truth, And angels are descending upon the righteous souls.

The liberal-minded people of Europe are inclining to this way; The pulse of the dead began suddenly to beat again like the living.

The intellectuals are now bidding farewell to the Trinity; They are once again wholeheartedly devoting themselves to the fountain of God’s Oneness.

A beautiful flower has blossomed in the garden of this nation; An intoxicating spring breeze is blowing from the garden.

I can now smell the fragrance of my ‘Yusuf’ [Joseph]; I wait for him, even though you may call me insane.

Everywhere and in every land idol-worship is on the decline; No longer is man-worship viewed with any honour and esteem.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

A wind is blowing from heaven announcing the Oneness of the Creator;

Hearts are with us, no matter what the tongues may be endlessly chattering.

Hearken unto the call of Heaven: ‘The Messiah has come! The Messiah has come!’

And hearken unto the earth: ‘The victorious Imam has arrived!’

Heaven is showering Signs and the earth proclaims: ‘This is the time!’

These two witnesses are restlessly crying out in my favour.

Now—O people!—you will find peace and comfort in this garden alone;

There is still time. Hasten, O you who wander in the thorny wilderness!

After a long while has this cool breeze begun to blow;

Only God knows when such days and such a spring will come again.

O denier! Is there a limit to your denunciation?

How long will you go on adopting the habits of Satan?

The edifice of the dispensation of Ahmad — whose foundation was laid by the Lord—

Is today being completed, O my dear fellow countrymen!
The Garden of Ahmad is now home to the spring breeze;
With whose inspirations man is able to hear the discourses of the Beloved.

Otherwise, what is the worth of a religion or path, or doctrine, or faith,
Upon which the Light of Truth does not fall like the shining sun?

My heart bleeds at seeing the extent of people’s rancour;
They try thus to trample underfoot this shining, royal pearl.

We are—every instant—ascending to new heights,
While they beckon us to hide in a cave.

The light of the hearts has vanished and mere formalities of the faith are all that remain,
And yet they say: ‘What is the need for anyone to reform the Faith?’

They sing a tune that the heavens do not sing;
Their intentions are contrary to those of the Sovereign Lord.

Alas! They have become a ‘serpent in the sleeve’ for the Faith;
They have grown fat, but the Faith has been rendered helpless and poor.
Friends! These troubles have bent my back!
I would have perished had it not been for the grace of God.

This passion of mine is fathomed only by the one who himself bears this passion;
This pain of mine is understood only by the one who himself is broken-hearted.

Who cries so that the heavens has also started crying with him,
And the eyes of the sun and moon have been darkened with sorrow?

They are not ashamed in calling me an impostor;
What kind of scholars are these that are ignorant of the other world!

How could another know the kind of bond I have with the Beloved?
He has become mine, and I am devoted to Him with my very life.

I am at times Ādam, at times Mūsâ [Moses], at times Yāqūb [Jacob],
And at times I am Ibrāhîm [Abraham]; my progeny is countless.

I am the tree that bore fruits resembling Dāwūd [David];
I became Dāwūd and Jālūt [Goliath] is my prey.
Being the Messiah, I too would have been put on the cross

Had I not been named Ahmad, upon whom I place all my reliance.

O enemies! When every moment I am dying in His path,

What do you hope to achieve by waiting for my death?

Within me—from head to foot—is concealed that Beloved;

O my ill-wisher! Beware when you try to attack me!

How should I praise the charm of my Beloved and what should I write?

Whose single grace helped me traverse the flood of the base ego?

My cognition of God grew so immensely that

I was deemed an infidel in the eyes of those who are far removed from the courtyard of the Beloved.

That luminous Face illumined my eyes,

And the secrets of the Beloved were disclosed to me.

O people of my nation! Come hither for the Sun has risen—

Why do you languish day and night in the valley of darkness?
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

173

How strange that I am an ‘infidel’ and you are ‘believers’.

Yet, still, that Friend of the chosen supports this ‘infidel’!

How strange that God helps an ‘infidel’;

While in fact He should have been a friend to the believers!

Karam Din, who unjustly attacked me,

Was also a righteous man in your eyes;

I was not helpless, as the succour of the True God was with me,

And revelation of God promised me success again and again.

But he did not see me, for his eyes were closed;

He was then punished and earned a lasting shame.

He was written down as a great liar in the official records—

A label he can never erase till the end of days.

Tell me now: Who was granted help from the Holy Lord?

Why was the ‘righteous person’ of yours apprehended disgracefully?

Again, fear God, and look hither once more,

How my Friend saved me again and again.
مکرِ یارکچھ نہ تھی حاجت تمہاری نے تمہارے یہ پردے پڑے ہی لیس چیاں تم ہیں دل می اُٹھتا ہے مرے رہ رہ کے اب سَوسَو بخارکیوں

Why do you not reflect, and what are these veils that cover your eyes?

Alas! My heart feels the utmost pain and anguish again and again!

Had this been the work of man—O weak of faith!—

God would have been sufficient to deal with such a liar.

There was no need for you nor for your machinations;

The Sovereign of the world would have destroyed me Himself.

He is Holy and Transcendent above all, He does not help the liars;

Otherwise, all faith would be lost, and the truthful would be put to shame.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHETIES

How can a liar be the recipient of such succour?

Have you no fear that you attack me so brazenly?

Show me if there is an impostor in the world

Who has been helped by God again and again like me.

The morning sun has risen, but these people slumber on;

They hate the day and love the nights.

They harbour malice towards light and are devoted to darkness;

You will not even find bats (so devoted to darkness) no matter how hard you look.

The sun shines above them but their eyes remain closed;

They die of thirst though a refreshing stream is flowing by their door.

Strange is the state of those who rejected me;

While their only job is to hurl abuse every moment, day and night.

But if you ask them to name some such liars

Whom God has been granting succour for years,

They fall silent like the dead and give no answer to this;

Their faces turn pale like one stricken with grief.
They do not have the good fortune to devote any time for the Faith:
Seeing the glitter of the world, they have become infatuated with it.

Is this an act of faith to shy away from the right path?
Is this piety and virtue; is this the way of the righteous?

Have they taken an oath or is their fortune twisted,
That they turn away from the bright day and opt for the dark night.

The proof, like that of the Prophets, was completed against them;
Their objections against me are such as would apply to all Prophets.

Whatever they say regarding me out of malice applies to all [Prophets],
So will they forsake them all and adopt disbelief?

By calling me a disbeliever, they put a seal on their own disbelief;
This is their own true face, I merely show it to them like a mirror.

I am more than sixty years old now;
It has been thirty years since I made my claim.

When I was honoured with revelation from the Lord God.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

Did I live all this time as an impostor?

Stranger still, oceans of divine succour were released for me.

At every step did my Lord grant me Signs;

Every foe was struck down with the sword of arguments of the Truth.

My Lord granted me such favours by His grace,

That they served to reveal the meaning of the verse 'I have completed [My favours] upon you.'

Even one's shadow disappears at the times of darkness,

But in all dark hours He remained my Friend and Consoler.

A liar never receives help to such a degree;

If you do not believe me, then bring forth a few precedents to the contrary.

But if, however, you fail to produce any such precedent,

Then beware of the wrath of that Protector, the King of both worlds!

Who told you that you are free,

And will not be held accountable even if you commit a thousand transgressions?
To proclaim, ‘We wronged ourselves’ is the way of the righteous;
Do not spit venom from your mouths; you are not the progeny of snakes.

Scrubbing and cleaning of the body is not a hard task;
Only those who cleanse their heart are righteous in the estimation of God.

Just lift the veil and take a look at the state of your faith
Lest—in calling me an infidel—you yourself become deserving of the Fire.

Had they any decency, they would surely reflect what mystery it is
That they desire to debase me, yet I receive greater honour and renown.

What harm have their schemes caused me to this day?
They came like pythons but were reduced to lizards.

O scholars and divines! I do not understand
Your rancour and prejudice in the presence of this Sign of my truth.

When the Companions of the Messenger of Allah found the truth,
They vied with one another to sacrifice their wealth and lives for it.
But it is strange that, with all your knowledge and critical understanding of the Traditions,
You witness hundreds of Signs, yet you opt to shun and flee.

It is futile to debate with you if you do not possess
The spirit of fairness and the fear of God upon which hinges the Faith.

Do you forsake me for the glory of this world?
How long will worldly glory last when the world itself is transient!

Who is it that secretly grants me victory in every battle?
Who is it that always puts you to shame?

You said that I would soon be destroyed—
That I was but a meagre prey in your hands;

But what happened then, and who was it that so helped me
That you were frustrated and suffered loss while I succeeded?

There was a time when even my name was unknown,
And Qadian itself was hidden as though it was inside a cave.

No one knew me and I had no followers,
But now, look how my fame has spread all around.
اتھنہ ماں نے ہی نہیں ہی تھی تھی شہرت کی بہتر بھی کہا بھی وقت کتھا تھا اور حسرات
At that time God gave me the news of this fame,
And it is now coming true after all this time.

کوئی کسی نے بچھو بچھو تھا بھی کہ بھی نہیں کتھا
Open and look Barāhīn[-e-Ahmadiyya] which is my book,
Therein is this prophecy; do read it once.

اب درہ سوچو کہ کیا ہے آؤڑی کام سے
Now just think: Can this be the work of man?
What mortal has control over such matters of the unseen?

ہے یہ آدمی کا کام
There is a clear distinction between the power of the Gracious God and
the machinations of man;
He who does not understand this is a fool—a dull donkey from head
to toe!

ہے جو نہ سمجھے وہ غبی از فرق تا پا ہے حمروہُ رحمان و مکرون می فرق
There is a clear distinction between the power of the Gracious God and
the machinations of man;
He who does not understand this is a fool—a dull donkey from head
to toe!

یہ یکچھ کا تھا کہ میزے
Just think! Whose hand was it which was with me?
By whose command was my purpose achieved and you were
frustrated?

پھی کچھ بیچے ایمان ہے بیدار تم کو کچھ ہے کوئی
What kind of faith is this—Pray tell me, O friends!—
Whose fruit is despair and humiliation in every conflict?
They raise a clamour that I am an kāfir [disbeliever] and a dājjāl [deceiver];

Indeed, I myself am averse to their beliefs and their doctrines.

If that which is evident from their character is indeed faith;

Take care! I would never buy it even for a penny.

I am devoted to the nation of Islam with all my heart and soul,

But this is not the path that can be traversed by those who hold rancour.

What fury of ignorance, and what colours has it manifested;

That causes them to attack blindly for the sake of falsehood!

Be not proud of your faith, for it is no faith;

Do not take it for a diamond, for it is a mere rock of a mountain.

You will beat your breasts with both hands and lament: O we are destroyed!

When the filthiness of your 'faith' will become exposed.

This house is about to fall; come quick—O arrogant one!—and see,

Lest your wife, children, and family should be buried under it.
Alas! What misfortune, that even after so much summoning,

Their intoxication from the wine of heedlessness does not wear off.

They do not come to their senses even after hundreds of attempts;

They have fallen into a sleep from which they cannot be awakened.

Evil days have come—famine and pestilence have joined forces—

Yet they fail to repent, so let us see what their end will be.

What an outrage! They say the revelation of God is now no more;

And now, till Doomsday, this Ummah has to make do with mere tales!

This belief is contrary to the Word of God,

But who can take off the garland which has hung around their necks for centuries?

Even today God raises whomsoever He wishes to the status of Kalim [the one spoken to—as was Ḥaḍrat Mūsā];

Even today He speaks to the one whom He loves.

Why do you break the pearl of the revelation of God? Take heed,

For this alone is the source of all honour and prestige for Islam.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

This is the flower the like of which there is no other in the garden;
This is the fragrance that even the musk of Tatar cannot match.

This is the key that opens the doors of Heaven;
This is the mirror that shows the face of the Beloved.

This alone is the weapon that will bring us victory;
This alone is the castle that is the citadel of security.

In Islam this alone is the means of knowing God;
Mere tales will help no one weather the storm.

Revelation from God is the only Sign of the cognizance of the Lord God;
Only those who partake of it fully find that Friend.

Strange is the garden of love, whose pathway is death;
The meeting of the Beloved is its fruit, but it is surrounded by thorns.

The eternal and everlasting curse is stamped upon the heart,
Which is not madly beside itself in search after Him.

But how would those who have become worms of the earth find Him?
Only those find faith who are restless to acquire it.
To call out in every direction is our mission today;
Those of righteous nature will ultimately join us.

Call to mind the days when the elders of the Faith used to say
That the Mahdi promised by God would now appear very soon—

Was there anyone who did not enthusiastically long for it?
Was there anyone who did not profess to love the one that was to come?

But, when the awaited days came and the fourteenth century arrived,
The first to deny were these elders, these ‘minarets’ of the Faith!

The customs of the Jews re-appeared among the priests;
These wearers of priestly garb became the enemies of the Messiah of the time.

This was written in the Scriptures from beginning to end;
How could it be averted—it is the mark of destiny, not a writing on the wall?

I came to this world in the manner of Ibn Maryam [the Son of Mary];
I was not ordained to wage Jihad and wars.
But if someone had come in keeping with their expectations—
Who waged wars and gave them the spoils of war in abundance;

The battlefield was wide open for such a Mabdi in our nation,
And hundreds of thousands would instantly gather around him,

But it was the mercy of God that I appeared;
Had I not come, fire would have spread and peace would have vanished.

But fire did descend when—despite witnessing so many Signs—
The nation called me an arch-liar and evildoer.

I am certain this fire is here to stay for some time to come,
Unless they repent with great humility and meekness.

Nor is this a matter of coincidence that could be remedied,
For all this death and destruction is by the will of God.

God, who made man and gave him faith,
Is not pleased to see them occupied in faithlessness.
بے نهذہ و تقدیمیہ بے دوایت بے تفا

Without God, without piety and righteousness, without honesty, without purification—

This abject world is a wilderness; the plague hunts in it freely.

صیہ طاقوں میں بے پہرہبے بو تم بہتر

Fall not as prey to the plague. Become fully righteous,

For mere verbal professions of faith are of no avail.

متنے گر نہوں بے زہد و تقوی بے د

If you yourselves are not afraid of death, then at least have mercy on your children;

Walk upon the path of peace—do not adopt the way to the jungle.

بہی ایہم بے زبالا کہہ ہے ہو ہے بے کار

O dwellers of the jungle! You certainly are not human beings;

Some are foxes, some swine, and some snakes.

ان دوہے کوہویں ٹے اے مرے قادر خدا

O my Powerful God! Transform these hearts Yourself;

You are the Lord of the worlds and the Sovereign of all.

بتیہ آگے بے ای tà بی ماکم کہ ہے بہت

To destroy or to create is not impossible for You;

To join together or to rent asunder is in Your power.

تلہ کاموں کو بنا دے بے تفریض ہو

When You bestow a glance of grace, You make whole that which is broken,

And then shatter it into pieces, pulling it out threadbare in an instant.
You set aright what is broken, or break it once it is made; 
None can fathom Your mysteries, no matter how much one reflects.

When a heart is afflicted with the darkness of sin,
It cannot be enlightened without You, even if a thousand suns were to dawn.

Desire for freedom is of no avail in this world;
Being held captive by Your love alone is what bestows salvation.

What is the heart that is empty of the fire of love?
The true heart is that which cannot find rest without the Unique Beloved.

The first step on the spiritual journey is to negate one's self;
So, for the sake of the Friend, trample the self under your feet.

The fruit is sour until it ripens;
So is the faith arduous until love is perfected.

The longing for Your countenance has turned my heart upside down.
O my Highest Paradise! Do now bestow upon me Your fruit.
بچا ی میزا دلفگاراے خدا اے چارہ سازِ درد ہم کو خود
بناگ مسیں تیری حمیت کے چہب دکھی بچی پچک
In the garden of Your love I have seen wonderful fruits;
Such apples and such pomegranates as are hard to come by.

پھل یکھے یعجوب دیزی محبت کے قسے بن اے میزی جاں قسے تو بہتر مرکے ہو جانا غبار
In the garden of Your love I have seen wonderful fruits;
Such apples and such pomegranates as are hard to come by.

Without you—O my Life!—this life is worthless;
It is better to die and become dust than to live such a life.

Without Your favour all worship is futile;
All efforts and deeds are dependent on Your grace.

Those upon whom You bestow Your favours are far from evil;
Their faculties march in file in the path of Truth.

Those held captive by Your love have been delivered from Satan;
Those who gave up everything for Your sake began to flourish.

The thirst to behold Your countenance is better than any other thirst;
One whose heart burns with it has found the waterfall.

He who zealously seeks You ultimately meets with You;
He who has this restlessness, will at last find peace.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

It is a sign of love to weep and roam the wilderness;
How blessed is the eye that sheds tears for You!

None returns from Your court empty-handed,
But the condition for this path is to persevere and to abandon even the trace of impatience.

I came with Your command, but, alas!
Such wind is blowing as binders the advent of the spring.

People of the world have fallen for the carcass of the world;
Miserable indeed is the life of those who devour carrion.

Abandoning the Faith, one ultimately loses the world as well;
No one prospers but he who loves and adores the Beloved.

No colour is more beautiful than the colour of taqwā [righteousness];
This alone is the adornment of faith and this alone is the embellishment of religion.

A hundred suns may rise, but there can be no light without beholding the countenance of the Beloved;
This world, without union with the Beloved, is a pitch dark night.
O my Beloved! You alone are Peerless in the world;

Those who seek madly after You are the truly sane ones.

To turn away from this world is the trait of those madly in love with You;

They get their reward in cash whereas the others only hope for it.

Who is it whose deeds can be pure without the light of love?

Who can show fidelity other than he whose heart is in anguish?

Who would care to love someone unknown with all one's life?

Who would be the mad devotee in this path day and night?

Who would abandon comfortable sleep? Who would shun food and drink?

Who would accept thorns in place of a garland of roses?

Love alone helps one traverse these dangerous jungles;

Love alone makes one bow one's head to the sharp sword.

Alas a thousand pities! They have inclined towards the world—

Those who used to say that the world is but a temporary abode.
Whoever you see these days is foremost in insolence.
Alas! Those of righteous disposition have all passed away.

Their sermons from the pulpits are full of vilification;
In their congregations they indulge only in abuse and backbiting.

Wherever you look, the world has become their sole objective;
From every direction, it is towards the world that they beckon again and again.

If they are pricked even by a single thorn in the path of religion,
They scream and run as a donkey flees from a lion.

They are ever lamenting their failures;
They care nothing for the Faith but are pining after the world.

I care not for what people talk about; mine is a different talk.
I remain devoted to the Friend even if a hundred thousand swords were drawn against me.

O my Beloved! Tell me how you would be pleased.
Blessed will be the day when I lay down my life for You.
Just as You are far away from the people, so am I;

There is no one who fathoms the secrets of my heart.

To think well of others is the way of the nation’s righteous,

But I am hidden from them in a hundred veils and am not open to their view.

They are both unaware: Those who call me a good man and those who call me a bad man;

For, of my inner self they haven’t the slightest knowledge.

I am Ibn Maryam [the Son of Mary], but I did not descend from the sky;

I am also the Mahdi, but I have no sword and no war to wage.

I am not concerned with the conquest of countries, nor is waging wars my task;

My mission is to conquer the hearts, not the countries.

May the Emperor be blessed—the throne and crown of India—for a long time,

For under his reign I find the comfort of life.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

What have I to do with countries, for my country is separate from all others?
What have I to do with crowns, for my crown is in the pleasure of the Beloved?

We are the dwellers of heaven—what is this earth to us?
What enmity can the dwellers of heaven bear with the earth?

There is nothing like the sovereignty of the spiritual kingdom,
Even though the world has seen countless sovereigns and rulers.

Asking for honour and prestige of the world bears the stain of curse;
Whoever wants can smear himself with this stain.

What do I care for honour? What concern do I have with fame?
If He is pleased by dishonour, I would sacrifice all honour for Him.

I have become His alone Who has become mine;
Having shunned this wretched world I have found that Beloved.

I see my heart as the throne of the Lord of the worlds;
I have attained such nearness that the Friend has descended into me.
Friendship is also a wonderful thing, indeed, that turns two into one;
Love came to meet love riding on two hearts.

See how wonderful the power of love and affection is;
One heart bows down to win the other.

There is no path shorter than the path of love;
Through this path the seekers traverse a thousand thorny deserts.

That alone is the secret—O friends!—of finding Him;
This is the alchemy by which one can acquire immeasurable wealth.

The arrow of love never goes amiss;
Do not—O archers!—be lax in it, even for a moment.

This is the fire that will save you from the Fire;
This is the water from which spring hundreds of waterfalls.

Through love the Eternal Friend will come to meet you Himself;
Through love you will wear the garlands of the cognition of Truth.

That Holy and Magnificent Book which is called the Furqān [Holy Quran],
Gives this very tiding to the seekers again and again.
Those who deny this are utterly ignorant;
How could they even be called human when they bear the stupidity of a donkey!

Is this the distinction of Islam over other faiths
That everything of faith ultimately rests on tales?

Is this unblessed abstinence the essence of the Holy Furqān?
Is this the mouse that you have found after digging this mountain?

If this is Islam, then, alas, the Ummah is all but finished;
How can one find one’s way when the Faith itself is steeped in darkness?

Why do you distort your face like the ones who have abandoned hope?
Spread your mantle [to collect], for the doors of grace are opening.

What kind of people are you that—despite seeing a hundred Signs—
You still maintain the same obstinacy and prejudice, and that same rancour and ill-will?

All the Signs came to pass but you remained imperfect as ever,
Being inside the garden, yet you are not destined to taste the fruits of Faith.
Look how all that was foretold has been fulfilled,

Even though their fulfilment was beyond human intellect, understanding, and thought?

Just think of what I was at the time

When I had published the announcement of Barábin[-e-Ahmadiyya].

And then consider how my fame has now spread;

And how quickly my fame has spread to every land.

Who knew me? What respect had I in the eyes of the public?

Which community held me in esteem or loved me?

The things that draw people are either wealth, knowledge, or wisdom;

Belonging to a family of ascetics was also thought of as a source of honour and prestige;

But of these four I was deprived and destitute;

I was but a man of little to no consequence.

To add to that, I was named an infidel and I became the target of people’s scorn,

And edicts of infidelity took away my credibility in people’s eyes.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

And yet my God—remembering His promise—
Made me the rallying point for the people of the world and the pivot for the Faith.

All the plots that were hatched to destroy me
Were destroyed and reduced to dust by Him.

Just reflect whether this is the work of a man—
Bring forth a precedent of this if you want to attack me.

One man can foil the schemes of another;
But beware! Can anyone ever frustrate the designs of God?

An impostor is bound to be shamed in this world in the end,
The enterprise based upon imposture is soon destroyed.

An impostor is never given respite so long
As to equal the ministry of the Pride of the Prophets⁴⁴—the Pride of the Holy⁴⁵.

My heart is full of sorrow at why you have rejected me;
These clouds come gathering again and again over me.
Strange are these eyes that cannot even see the sun;  

Envy has spared nothing of their reason, thought, and reflection.

The illfortune of these people has become manifest through their transgression;  

Nonetheless, only that which is destined comes to pass.

Among them I find those who are like the worms of the earth  

Whose only purpose in life is to indulge in licentiousness, drinking, and gambling.

Their whole livelihood revolves around deceit;  

They are carried, like two palanquin-bearers, by Satan and their ego.

Their steps wobble when it comes to matters of the Faith;  

But in mundane matters they are sharp and vibrant.

They care nothing for what is lawful or unlawful;  

They would quietly swallow a dead body.

They parade virtue and piety, while their hearts are full of sin;  

They profess decency and civility, while their hearts are ignoble within.

O dear ones! How long can a paper boat sail?  

One day it is bound to sink with both eyes overflowing with tears.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

Eternal life lies hidden in annihilation;
The path to the Beloved’s garden is the thorny valley of lowliness.

O God! We are weak—lift us up with Your own hands;
We are frail—carry all our burden for us.

I witness the marvels of Your majesty every moment;
Having seen Your power, the world seems to me like a dead corpse.

The works that You manifested in my support
Revolve before my eyes every moment.

How You proved my truthfulness!
May I be sacrificed for You—my life is devoted to carrying out Your works.

There is a wondrous quality to Your beauty and charm,
Whose single manifestation has made me an ardent lover.

O my Beloved! My people are languishing in misguidance,
And it is not beyond Your power at all to bring them to the right path.

They call me an infidel, yet I would call them believers
Had it not been an article of faith to shun falsehood.
O preacher! The Beloved looked upon me with love and not upon you; Woe upon the ‘faith’ to which ‘infidelity’ is a hundred thousand times better!

The garden of Adam was hitherto incomplete; With my coming it has been completed with all fruits and leaves.

God, who had given pure gold to the Prophet, Now does fashion ornaments for the Faith like a goldsmith.

He shows that there is no compulsion or coercion in religion; For it draws the hearts towards itself like a charming beloved.

This is the secret why He forbade the Jihad, So that He may lift the cloud that had obscured the path of the Faith;

So that He may reveal to the deniers the intrinsic excellences of Islam; So that those who attack Islam may be ashamed thereby.

The ignorant people of Europe say: ‘The Holy Prophet was not perfect, Spreading a religion among the savages was not a difficult task.”

However, transforming a savage into a man is [nothing short of] a miracle! And therein lies the secret of Prophethood.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

He brought light from heaven, yet he was a light himself:

What does it matter if he was born among a savage people?

What difference does it make in the light of the shining sun,

Whether it rise from the borders of Rome or Zanzibar?

My dear people! Adopt the habit of patience and forbearance;

If they emit a foul stench, then you be the fragrant musk of Tartar.

Vanquish the ego, for there is no enemy like unto it—

It ever so quietly creates the means of your destruction.

He who boldly crushes the mean self underfoot—

Of what significance are [stalwarts like] Rustum and Isfandyar before him?

If they abuse you, pray for them; if they hurt you, comfort them;

If they show arrogance, you show humility.

Do not become perturbed if they constantly abuse you;

Leave them to their occupation of publishing such posters.

Remain silent upon seeing them persecute you through their publications;

Do not retaliate if they beat you and make your life miserable.
Seeing their anger and wrath, do not be sorrowful;
For it is the extremity of heat that beckons the refreshing rains of spring.

Fabrication—according to them—is my occupation.
This notion—Allâhu Akbar [Great is Allah]!—how immensely absurd it is!

I mortified myself for the sake of the whole humanity,
Even my ‘war’ was meant to bring about reconciliation and remove ill-will.

To mistrust a pious heart is a sign of misfortune;
Their eyes are closed for now, but they will ultimately see the truth.

Even though they say that a liar never flourishes;
Yet, they call me a liar while they see me prosper!

Did your eyes remain blind even after witnessing all that?
Have some fear for the Day—O friends!—when you will be held to account.

You all have eyes—just reflect upon what this mystery is:
How is it possible that the Holy One be the Friend of a liar?
Why this favour upon me? There must be something to it—
All these dealings of the Creator are not without cause.

He Himself has bestowed upon me the Holy Fountain of Tauhid [the Oneness of God],
So that He may once again plant tulips in the garden of the Faith.

Upon my shoulder rests the mantle granted to me by that Friend;
So [try to] remove this mantle—O denier!—if you even have the power to do so.

To be so suspicious with malevolence is not good,
In these days that so openly proclaim Doomsday.

A flood of divine wrath is raging;
Only those who board the ark of Nûh [Noah] will be saved.

Come to me with sincerity, for in this alone lies your good;
Wild beasts abound in every direction—I am the Citadel of Security.

I am the Support of the wall of the Faith and the Refuge for Islam;
The enemy's hand is incapable of breaching this wall.
Why has suspicion run so rampant among the ignorant?

Evil days have befallen them or they have been smitten by a curse.

Would that they had understood anything [of what I had said]—this remained an unfulfilled wish in my heart.

O Satan! How have you victimized them.

O you who are ever so given to ill-thinking!

Where has your other faculty disappeared, O you man of sanity!

Just look at their bigotry: While my life is sacrificed for Islam,

They—even then—call me a disbeliever time and time again!

I am the Water from Heaven sent at its appointed time;

I am the Light of God through which the day is openly manifest.

Alas! Where lies concealed the taqwā [righteousness] that was so talked about!

Oh, where has the driver of the evil-self led you!
The works that the Great Creator has shown in my support—
Can an impostor who is a friend of Satan accomplish them?

With anguish I wept so much that my tunic dampened with my tears,
Yet you remained unblemished and wretched as ever!

Alas! What happened, how has their intellect become so buried under rocks
That transformed the day into a pitch-dark night before their eyes?

Or, is it the evil consequence of some hidden sin
Which made the faculty of reason useless—like a lifeless corpse?

The burden of sin of the masses, too, lies on them;
Whose sermons clouded the hearts of people.

Such a slumber has seized them that they have not yet awakened;
So forgetful are they that forgetfulness hangs like a garland around their necks.

It is cruel to sow the seed of evil among people;
One who sows evil will reap that evil.
Forsaking the Furqān, they have entrenched themselves on contradicting traditions,

Placing unjustified burden upon Muslim and Bukhārī.

When there is the possibility of error and misguidance in the traditions,

It is foolish to rely wholly upon them.

When I have seen the light of truth with my own eye;

When the revelation of God has itself informed me time and again;

Why then should I abandon certainty and follow conjectures?

Tell me yourself: Is it better to see with one’s own eyes or trust in dubious traditions?

It is the profusion of traditions that has brought about discord in Islam;

From this it is clear that the path of the traditions is unreliable.

The erroneous concept of the Messiah still being alive emerged from such traditions,

Through which the Faith [of ‘Islam’] became a helper of Christianity.

A thousand misfortunes descended upon Islam,

With the friends of Satan riding upon the neck of the Faith.
CHAPTER TWO — FULFILMENT OF PROPHECIES

God had clearly testified to the death of 'Isa,

What reliance, then, can be placed upon the ahadith [traditions] that claim to the contrary?

Even if deemed credible, they are liable to interpretation—

Can you attack the Furqan for the sake of the ahadith?

The God who bestowed upon me the medal of Signs

Is even now repeatedly supporting the Furqan.

Bang your heads! No one will now descend from the sky

Now that the age of the world has even reached the seventh millennium.  \(^1\)

---

1. It is established from earlier Scriptures and authentic ahadith that the age of this world from the time of Haḍrat Ādam, may peace be upon him, is 7,000 years. This is what the Holy Quran indicates in the verse:

[Sūrah al-Ḥajj, 22:48]

which means that a day with thy Lord is as a thousand years of your reckoning. And it was revealed to me by God that the time that had elapsed from Haḍrat Ādam to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was equivalent to the gematric value of the letters contained in Sūrah al-ʿAṣr. According to this reckoning, we are now in the seventh millennium after Haḍrat Ādam according to the lunar calendar, which points to the end of the world. The gematric value of the letters of Sūrah al-ʿAṣr almost completely conforms to the calculations made by the Jews and the Christians. Only the difference between the lunar and solar calendars needs to be borne in mind. It is also written in their books that the Promised Messiah must appear in the sixth millennium—which came to an end years ago. (Author)
His arrival continues to be awaited—but the Faith's life is extinguished;
Will he come to see this Faith's tomb?

Without the grace of God, the ark of Islam is all but sunk;
O passion! Do something, for the intellects are of no avail.

Bestow upon me—O God!—extraordinary zeal and passion,
So that I may strive madly in the cause of the Faith.

Kindle in my heart such fire for the Faith
Whose innumerable flames reach the heavens every moment.

O God! May every particle of my being be sacrificed for You!
Show me the Faith revived afresh as spring, for I am in tears.

Look at our hapless state, O Knower of secrets!
It is indeed Your work, but we are now restless [to see its success].

Do be gracious and turn the people towards the Furqān;
And grant them the ability to think and ponder a bit.

The Furqān alone is beyond doubt and conjecture;
Apart from this, the predominantly credible should be adopted.
And if I present such traditions as well,
Then the opponents will have nowhere to turn.

I brought God's grace, and the fruit reappeared.

The 'Ointment of Jesus' had healed Jesus alone;
My 'ointment' will heal every country and every land.

They used to glimpse at light from a hole in the wall;
But when the doors were flung open, they became veritable bats.

The treasures that lay buried for thousands of years,
Today I give them away if I find anyone who seeks them.

For Islam these people became 'the serpent in the sleeve';
They please the enemy and displease the Friend.

They raise a clamour that I am a kāfir [disbeliever] and dajjāl [deceiver];
They understand the pure to be impure, becoming scavengers of carrion.
Though, by calling me a disbeliever, they have removed themselves far away from me,

I still feel sorrow and anguish for their sake.

But the spark of faith can emanate even from a stone.

No matter how hard-hearted they become, I do not despair;

The verse, là tai‘asū [‘despair not’]¹ gives strength to my heart.

Our task is to weep and supplicate before the Beneficent Lord;

The stream of these tears will ultimately cause these trees to bear fruit.

The people among whom the Messiah of the time has appeared have rejected him,

While the elect of all lands passed away wishing for his arrival.

I do not say that I am holier than everyone;

I do not say that all these fruits are the result of my deeds.

I knew nothing about this claim,

Open and look at Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya that you might believe.

---

¹ The reference is to Surah Yūsuf 12:88: ‘Despair not of the mercy of Allah.’

[Publisher]
If some say that the Quraish alone were worthy of this status,

Let them submit their objection to God, for this is none of my doing.

Sufficient for me is that God—I have not the least desire for titles;

Try yourself to become—if you can—the Mahdi by God’s command.

Imposture is a curse and every impostor is accursed;

Moreover, he also is accursed who bears ill-will towards a truthful one.

What a pity! You sit thirsty at the bank of a sweet stream—

A fresh stream is flowing in the land of India.

Ponder a little over these Signs: Whose works are they?

What need is there for you to show insane fury?

O deniers! Do not needlessly become guilty before God,

For this is the work of God; it is not that of an impostor.

---

1. Up to this time, God Almighty has manifested many thousands of Signs at my hand. Signs appeared for me from earth and from heaven; they appeared among my friends and among my enemies; and hundreds of thousands of people witnessed them. If each Sign was to be counted separately, they would add up to about a million. [So Allah be praised for all this].

(Author)
Such manifest victories! Such continuous flow of Signs [uninterrupted]!

Is it possible for man to bring them about; can they be the work of deceitful people?

This sudden fame spreading so fast, after so many years;

Does this not prove the truth of the word of God?

That is on the tongue of every person in every land?

All your machinations came to naught, and the argument has been completed against you;

Now tell me—O deniers!—who has been smitten with curse?

I am a servant of the Royal Court [of God] and my job is to serve Him;

I have neither desire for victory nor fear of defeat.

Do not indulge in excessive foolish talk, for His eyes are upon the hearts;

He looks at the purity of hearts and not the smooth talk.

Alas! How your reason has been distorted—

The Faith is in the jaws of the wolf, yet you yourselves guard that wolf!
The faith of Ahmad is being attacked with hatchets from all sides;
Do you not see those peoples and their assaults?

What eyes do not weep upon seeing this?
What hearts are not restless on account of this grief?

The Faith is being slapped today by nations,
And the lofty minaret of Islam is all shaken up.

Did the news of this calamity not reach the Throne of God?
Will this Sun of the Faith now disappear underground?

A spiritual battle is now being fought between this servant and Satan;
My heart sinks—O God!—for the battle is fierce.

All Prophets of their time gave news of this battle,
And they all prayed for it with tears of anguish.

O God! By Your grace, grant me victory over Satan,
Who is amassing his countless hordes.

This war is greater than the war between Russia and Japan;
I am helpless and stand against a formidable foe.
I lose control over my heart when I contemplate this arduous task;  
O, the Refuge of my life! Send down the army of angels.

I know not the comfort of the bed in these days of anguish;  
Sorrow has rendered each day worse than the darkest of nights.

The world has been encircled by the throngs of Satan;  
The task has become daunting; display Your might, O my Friend!

It is now no use seeking help from the progeny of man;  
We now present our entreaties in Your Court, O Lord!

And why indeed would people help me? What have they to gain  
When I am declared a disbeliever before their eyes again and again?

I cannot but help wondering at these people—  
Why do they not see what is so manifestly taking place?

God be thanked! My sighs have not been in vain,  
For some were manifested in the form of plague, and some became  
the dust raised by earthquakes.

On the one hand, the blood-thirsty plague is devouring this country;  
Hundreds of thousands of people are falling its prey.
And secondly, the earthquake that occurred on Tuesday was the very picture of Doomsday with all its hue and cry. Thousands were taken away from this world in an instant, and there is no counting the homes that were razed to the ground.

One moment they were lofty buildings—beautiful and elegant—and the next—lo!—they were but a pile of bricks and dust! That which is called Doomsday was what occurred in an instant, the weeping and wailing of death coming from all around.

Many a town and village were buried beneath mountains; hundreds of thousands died and passed away from this world. But even after seeing this Sign, hearts were not softened; God only knows what greater calamity they await.

Those who were called Sufis surpassed all others in their malice; Was this the example set by the Shaikh of Ghazni? They boast to people: ‘We, too, are the best of the righteous, and we also receive a sprinkling of revelation from the Gracious God.’
But it turned out that those very unintelligent ‘recipients of revelation’ were the first to become my enemies,

As though they were wired a ‘telegram’ from heaven declaring me a disbeliever.

All Signs proved of no use before their malice;

The arrow of prejudice pierced right through their hearts.

They never consider the power of the One who overlooks faults;

No matter what we say, they keep playing their own tunes.

O Sufis! Your ways are now as worthless as you are,

For heaven has borne witness for me time and time again.

It is God’s doing that you have also become my enemies;

So much love that once was has now turned into hatred.

You washed from your hearts the memory of the old companionship—

Having been a flower so long, you finally became thorns.

All the wealth of the companionship has been lost;

Oh, how heartbroken I am with what passes through my heart!
A tumult abounds in heaven yet you remain completely oblivious to it;
The day was bright but now it is obscured by dust and grime.

A Sign will appear some days hence;
Which shall overwhelm the countryside, the cities, and the meadows.

People will be seized with a revolution by the divine wrath
So suddenly that a naked one will have no time to secure his clothing.

All of a sudden, with a severe earthquake, all will be shaken up—
Be they humans, tree, mountains, or seas.

1. Divine revelation has repeatedly employed the word ‘earthquake’ and has indicated that the earthquake will present a spectacle of Doomsday, as described in the Sūrah:

[When the earth is shaken with her violent shaking (Sūrah az-Zilzāl, 99:2)].

But I still cannot say with certainty if it will, in fact, be an earthquake. It may not be an ordinary earthquake but some other dire calamity evoking the spectacle of Doomsday, the like of which would not have been witnessed by this age, and which would bring about great destruction of life and property. However, if no such extraordinary Sign appears and people do not openly reform themselves, then I shall prove to be a liar. I have also written time and again that the terrible calamity which God has given the name of ‘earthquake’ will not strike merely on account of religious differences, nor will the calamity befall anyone just because he is a Hindu or Christian, or because he has not pledged allegiance to me. All such people have nothing to fear. But everyone—regardless of which religion they belong to—who is a hardened
In the twinkling of an eye, the earth will be turned upside down;

Streams of blood shall flow like the flowing of a channel.

Those whose night garments were white as jasmine,

Will wake up in the morning as if clad in red, like the poplar tree.

Men and animals will go out of their minds;

All pigeons and nightingales will forget their songs.

That hour will bear heavily upon every traveller,

And those who are on a journey will lose their way in a fit of forgetfulness.

The flowing waters of mountain streams

Will run red, like red wine, with the blood of the dead.

Men, high and low, will be consumed with fear;

And the Czar himself will, at that hour, be in a pitiable state.

criminal or is engrossed in sin and transgression, or anyone who is an adulterer, murderer, thief, oppressor, or unjustly ill-thinking, or foul of tongue and character; all such people should be fearful. And if they repent then they, too, have nothing to fear. This calamity can be averted through piety and righteousness and is not inevitable. (Author)
That divine Sign will be a specimen of terror;
Heaven will attack with a drawn dagger.

Hasten not to deny this—O ignorant fool!—
For my truthfulness depends entirely on the fulfilment of this Sign.

This is a prophecy based on revelation of God and will surely be fulfilled;
Wait, then, a while in righteousness and steadfastness.

Do not imagine that all your ill thinking will be forgiven;
It is a debt that will be repaid to you in full.
O my Eternal Friend, Your countenance is sufficient for me; Your alley is dearer to me than a thousand paradises.

I cast my eyes elsewhere only out of a wise precaution; Otherwise, my sight is ever directed towards You.

If someone assails my honour,
My habit—like Yours—is to be forbearing.

What am I, and of what worth is my honour?
This battle is only for the sake of Your honour.

In the issue dated 22 May 1905 of the daily Paisah Akhbār, one

1. In the name of Allah, the Gracious, the Merciful. [Publisher]
2. We praise Allah and invoke His blessings upon His Noble Messenger. [Publisher]
Muhammad Ikrāmillāh has raised some objections about my announcements that contained prophecies about the first and second earthquakes. I think that prejudice is not the only reason for these objections, but they are also the product of naivety and utter lack of information. I feel terribly sorry for such people as they do not think before they object. In fact, they seem to do it out of some kind of irrational exuberance. Or, perhaps on account of their desire for self-promotion, they think that by raising such objections they can find a place among the foremost of my critics, or—at the very least—they may be considered competent and scholarly. But, instead of being acknowledged as able scholars, they only end up exposing themselves. Let fair-minded people listen to these objections and reflect upon my replies and determine whether any reasonable person, who has even the slightest of intelligence and faith, would ever raise such objections. How unfortunate it is that these people initially fall prey to error themselves and then try to mislead others! And all this ignorance is rooted in the seething bigotry that contains the fire of Hell in its essence.

THE FIRST OBJECTION laid out briefly in his words: ‘I will now prove from Mirza Sahib’s own words that a prophecy regarding the earthquake is of no great significance. He has himself written in his book Izāla-e-Auhām that the prophecy regarding earthquakes is of no great value; rather, it is vague and not worthy of attention.’

ANSWER Let it be known that the critic has here quoted my words from Izāla-e-Auhām which I wrote with reference to a prophecy of the Gospel of Matthew that is attributed to Ḥaḍrat Masiḥ [Jesus the Messiah]. It should, hence, suffice to present before the public the words that have been ascribed to Ḥaḍrat Masiḥ as in Matthew’s Gospel and which I quoted in Izāla-e-Auhām. And then I should also present those writings in which I prophesied about the two earthquakes, so that readers should view them side by side and decide whether or not the two prophecies fall into the same category or are of a different
category altogether, and whether the words used in my prophecy are of a common nature that can apply to any earthquake—as are the words of Matthew’s Gospel—or my prophecy relates to some earthquake of extraordinary proportions.

It would not be out of place to mention here that the land in which Ḥaḍrat Masih dwelt—the land of Shām—has always been prone to earthquakes, just like Kashmir. And the plague, too, was common in those parts. So, for that country, it was nothing unusual if earthquakes or plagues were to occur; indeed, it would not have been anything unusual for even a great earthquake to occur there. Earthquakes are known to have been experienced before the birth of Ḥaḍrat Masih, and even during his lifetime there were minor and major earthquakes. What, then, can be the significance of a prophecy that relates to a common occurrence? As for the earthquake prophesied by me, I will soon explain that it was not some common occurrence for this country; rather, it was quite an unusual and extraordinary phenomenon, and was declared so by all the dwellers of this land. Indeed, some even called it a sample of Doomsday. All European scientists have testified to this as well, and it is also borne out by the history of the Punjab. Ancient buildings that had stood intact for over 1,600 years also bear witness to it because of what they suffered. But everyone knows that Shām was a land that experienced so many earthquakes that it is not unlikely that an earthquake was occurring at the time when the prophecy of Ḥaḍrat Masih was being written.

I now proceed to set out the prophecy that is written in Matthew’s Gospel about the coming of an earthquake which is attributed to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him:

Nation shall rise against nation, and kingdom against kingdom:

1. The term Shām [Levant] refers to the historical area now covered by Syria, Jordan, Lebanon, Palestine, and Israel. [Publisher]
and there shall be famines, and pestilences, and earthquakes, in diverse places. (See Matthew, chapter 24.)

It was with reference to this prophecy that I wrote those lines in Izāla-e-Auhām which have been published by the critic on page 5, column 1, line 26, of the paper mentioned above. Those lines are as follows:

What kind of prophecies are these, that ‘there will be earthquakes and pestilences and wars and famines?’

By citing these words of mine the critic draws the conclusion as if I have admitted that making prophecies about earthquakes is not anything great. Every reasonable person can understand that by these words I do not mean what the critic has understood by them. What was meant is that saying something casually, which is by no means extraordinary and which contains nothing unusual or supernormal, is not covered by the sense of the term ‘prophecy’. For instance, if someone predicts that there will be rains in the rainy season, this will not be called a prophecy, for it is the divine scheme of things that rains occur in these months. On the other hand, if someone predicts that this year there will be such torrential rains in the rainy season that springs will gush forth from the earth and the wells will get filled with water and start to flow like canals, and that nothing of the kind has been seen in the last hundred years; this would be called something extraordinary and a prophecy. It was on the basis of this principle that I criticized the prophecy in Matthew, chapter 24, observing that to say merely that earthquakes will occur, particularly in a country where earthquakes—even severe ones—are common, is not the kind of disclosure that could be called a prophecy or something supernormal.

Now, it should be seen whether in each of those three announcements published in the country by me and which contain a prophecy about an earthquake, there is also found just such an ordinary forecast
which has nothing unusual about it. If this is the case, then my prophecy about the earthquake will similarly be just an ordinary affair.

Regarding the earthquake, the words used in my announcements are: On the first of May 1904, I received this revelation from God Almighty which I got published in Al-Ḥakam and Al-Badr newspapers:

عَفَتِ الدِّیَارُ مَحَلُّھَا وَمَقَامُھَا۔

Meaning that, a part of this country will be wiped out; those of its buildings that are used as temporary dwellings and those buildings meant as places of permanent residence, would both disappear; no trace of them would be left.

The definite article ال [al] of the word الديار [ad-diya]—‘this country’] makes the reference specific that there are places in the knowledge of God Almighty that will be visited by this devastation, and the buildings of those places will be razed to the ground. How extraordinary is this prophecy, and how strongly it refers to the coming event of which there is no parallel in the last 1,600 years in this country!

A study of the English newspapers will tell you that eminent geologists have declared the earthquake to be quite extraordinary for this part of the world. Indeed, there is the published testimony of renowned European scientists affirming that such an earthquake has not occurred in the Punjab for the last 1,600 years. And all newspapers are full of articles describing the earthquake as a reminder of Doomsday.

Thus, since the revelation that was vouchsafed to me from God contains the tidings of an extraordinary event that would cause buildings to be destroyed and a part of this country to be ruined, it is regrettable indeed that this great prophecy—that speaks of the destruction of a whole land—is equated to the prophecy of the Gospel that earthquakes will occur in a country which is the home of earthquakes.

Could any prophecy be couched in more fearful words? Let every fair-minded person ponder whether it is possible to foretell the coming
of an earthquake in the land of the Punjab in terms that are more extraordinary than these divine words:

عَفَتِ الدِّیار مَحلّها ومقامهاً.

which means that a portion of this country will be so devastated that all its buildings will be obliterated—neither boarding houses nor places of permanent residence will survive.

A person with even a rudimentary knowledge of Arabic will realize that the ال [al] in the word الدّیار [ad-diyār] refers to a portion of this country. And the word عَفَت [‘afat] means that all buildings in that portion of the country would fall, disappear, and be obliterated.1

So, can someone tell me when such an event occurred in this land before? It is a sign of sheer faithlessness that a man should shamelessly tell lies and not fear God, who has the power to inflict punishment whenever He wills.

And, then, in the announcement of Al-Wašiyyat, published before the earthquake, on 27th February 1905, there occur the words: ‘Just now, at four o’clock after midnight, I saw in a vision that a large number of grievous deaths had created an impression as if the Judgment Day had arrived. At the same time, I received this revelation:

ہے ہی موتا موتی لگ رے

There is death everywhere.

1. ☩ If anyone is in doubt regarding these meanings, I appeal to him in the name of Allah the Almighty to ask an opponent who is well versed in Arabic, under oath, whether or not the words in the revelation عَفَتِ الدِّیار [‘afatid-diyār] betoken the collapsing and annihilation of buildings, and the collapse of houses that serve as temporary residences for travellers, such as Dharamshala and the Temple of Lātān Wālī in the mountains of Kangra, as well as the houses that serve as permanent residences? This is so patently obvious that it requires no further elucidation. (Author)
Just think: Can this prophecy—which speaks of an occurrence that is akin to Doomsday and will result in a tumultuous uproar—be at par with a prophecy that promises earthquakes in the most general terms, and even that in the land of Shām that is commonly visited by earthquakes and plagues?

If you had any fear of God, you would not deny prophecies of God Almighty with such temerity. Your attack is not against me, but against God, who said:

\[
\text{عَفَتُ الدِّیار محلّھا و مقامھا}
\]

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

To say that these words are the first line of a couplet written by Labid bin Rabī’ah is an insolent attack on God, for He is the ultimate owner of all words whether they are spoken by Labīd or by anyone else. It is solely by His grace that anyone can compose a couplet. Thus, there is no room for objection if God chooses to send down the words of a poet as His revelation. And if your objection is valid, then what will you say about the fact that the verse contained in the Holy Quran [Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out] was really the speech of a human—namely, ‘Abdullāh bin ‘Abī Sarāḥ—who initially used to write down the verses of the Holy Quran, but then turned apostate. The words [in the above verse] were his and were revealed verbatim in the Holy Quran. The letters of the revelation [Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out] do not exceed the letters of the verse:

\[
\text{الْخٰلِقِيْنَ اَحْسَنُ اللّٰهُ فَتَبٰرَكَ}
\]

1. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (Ṣūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15). [Publisher]
critic who states this revelation of Allah is [‘only a hodgepodge derived from various sources’],\(^1\) should realize what he has done to his salvation by attacking the Noble Quran. Nor is this the only example in the Noble Quran where the words of revelation of God Almighty coincided with the words uttered previously by a human being. Many such examples can be given where this happened. For instance, scholars are not unaware that in many places the words of the Holy Quran coincided with the words of Haḍrat ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him. And there can be a long list of such examples. What all this shows is that the critic is, in fact, denying the Holy Quran itself, or else he would not have uttered such an insolent blasphemy. Can a believer raise an objection against anyone which can—exactly—be levelled against the Holy Quran? God forbid! No; never.

Again, the critic takes another issue with the prophecy [‘afatid-diyār—‘residences will be wiped out’]. He says that the word [‘afat—‘wiped out’] is in the past tense, and that it should have been translated to denote the past, whereas it has been translated as applying to the future. The critic raises this objection with great insolence as if he has scored a great success in making this hostile attack. Now, which and how many of his deceptions should I expose! Anyone who has read the Kāfiyah or Hidāyatun-Nahw knows full well that in Arabic the past tense is at times used to connote the present or future. Indeed, the past tense is more often used for a future event when the speaker is certain that the event is definitely going to occur and wishes to highlight his conviction.\(^2\)

---

1. \(^\star\) Although there are thousands of kinds of sin, but the most accursed is one who objects to Almighty God’s Holy Word. An ignorant one is hasty, insolent and relishes in finding fault with God’s Word and he fights with the Holy Being. Yet, he would have been better off dead than that to be guilty of this. (Author)

2. \(^\star\) For example, a person who has been given a large dose of lethal poison says ‘I am dead.’ The words imply something that has already happened and not
There are many examples of this in the Holy Quran. For instance, Allah the Almighty says:

1. And the trumpet shall be blown, and lo! from the graves they will hasten on to their Lord (Surah Yā Sīn, 36:52). [Publisher]

2. And when Allah will say, 'O Jesus, son of Mary, do you say to men, “Take me and my mother for two gods beside Allah?”' (Surah al-Mā’idah 5:117) [Publisher]

3. Allah will say, ‘This is a day when only the truthful shall profit by their truthfulness.’ (Surah al-Mā’idah, 5:120). [Publisher]

4. And We shall remove whatever of rancour may be in their breasts so that they will become as brothers reclining on couches, facing one another (Surah al-Ḥijr, 15:48). [Publisher]
And He says:

And He says:

And He says:

Now, let the critic say whether these Quranic verses employ the past tense or the future tense? And if it is the past tense, is their message related to the past or the future? As a punishment for your falsehood, it is enough that you have not attacked me, but have attacked the Holy Quran. You seem to think that the rules of grammar that you know are unknown to God, which is why He erred in so many places and used the past tense where the future tense should have been used.

1. And the inmates of Heaven will call out to the inmates of Hell: ‘We have indeed found what our Lord promised us to be true. Have you too found what your Lord promised you to be true?’ They shall say: ‘Yes.’ (Sūrah al-A'rāf, 7:45) [Publisher]

2. Perished be the two hands of Abū Lahab, and so perish he. His wealth and what he has earned shall avail him not (Sūrah al-Lahab, 111:2–3). [Publisher]

3. And if you could only see when they are made to stand before the Fire! (Sūrah al-An'ām, 6:28) [Publisher]

4. And if you could only see when they are made to stand before their Lord! He will say, ‘Is not this second life the truth?’ They will say, ‘Yea, by our Lord.’ (Sūrah al-An'ām, 6:31) [Publisher]
Another objection that you have raised is that nowhere in the words of the prophecy:

*عفت الدّیر محلّها ومقامها*.

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

is there a mention of any earthquake. Alas, this critic does not realize that the essence of the prophecy is evident from its words; viz. that a great calamity will hit a portion of this country. Any man of sense can understand that the destruction of buildings and towns indeed usually occurs through earthquakes. But it is quite possible that this great destruction of dwellings and cities is wrought through some other means, and in that case, too, the prophecy will stand fulfilled. Since, in keeping with the divine practice, earthquakes are inherently implied in such destruction, it was not necessary to mention it specifically. However, as God knew that some ignorant people, who have naivety and prejudice ingrained in their nature, would raise such objections, He has also clearly mentioned the word ‘earthquake’. See *Al-Hakam*, 24 December 1903.

Even though this prophecy, when viewed separately from the one that mentions the earthquake, only says that portions of this country will be destroyed, there will be great devastation, and buildings will collapse and dwellings will be wiped out, it does not specify the method through which this will come about. But anyone who reflects as to how towns and villages disappear into the earth, and what causes buildings to collapse at once, and reads this prophecy along with the one that was published in the same newspaper five months earlier, whose words are:

*زلزلہ كا دھماکا*

Shock of earthquake

he will not hasten to object that the prophecy does not contain the word ‘earthquake’.
And yet it is true that God's words are often in the form of metaphors, as, for example, He says:

١ ﴿مَنْ كَانَ فِيْ هٰذِهٖۤ اَعْمٰى فَهُوَ فِي الْاٰخِرَةِ اَعْمٰى﴾

Therefore, it was quite possible that the earthquake might mean some other great calamity that has all the characteristics of an earthquake. Still, the actual words have priority over the interpretation. Even though this prophecy had a wide scope, God fulfilled it literally as well, so as to humiliate the enemy. And it is possible that aspects of this prophecy might manifest themselves in the future in some other way. But it will still be something out of the ordinary as stated by the prophecy.

This very earthquake which wrought so much damage in the Punjab that, regarding it, researches have been published in the *Civil and Military Gazette* and other sources that incontrovertibly conclude that an earthquake of such magnitude has not been experienced in the Punjab during the last 1,600 years. Thus, this prophecy foretells an extraordinary event of the first order. Moreover, it is quite possible that it may be followed by calamities resulting from various natural causes and lead to destruction that is extraordinary. Thus, even if there was no specific mention of the earthquake in any part of this prophecy, it would still constitute a very great Sign; for, the crux of the prophecy is the extraordinary and unparalleled destruction of houses and places, regardless of whether it comes about through an earthquake or through other means. And in the presence of the testimony that such destruction has not been seen in the Punjab for the last 1,600 years, this prophecy cannot be dismissed as something trivial that can be anticipated by

1. ☆ This verse [*Sūrah Bānī Isrā‘īl, 17:73*] means that one who is blind in this world will also be blind in the next; i.e. the one who fails to see God in this world, he will not see Him in the next either. It does not mean that the poor people who are physically blind in this world will also be sightless in the next. It is a metaphor whereby the ignorant have been termed as 'blind.' (Author)
human conjecture. Regardless, when the word ‘earthquake’ has been clearly and precisely mentioned in the first part of the prophecy, published in Al-Ḥakam on 24th December 1903, we know not whether to laugh or weep at the level of intelligence of such a critic who says that there is no prophecy about an earthquake.

Also bear in mind that the revelation:

١٠۱۱ لعنت الديار محلها ومقامها.

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

consists of the words that God put into the heart of Labīd bin Rabī‘ah al-‘Āmīr 1300 years ago, and it forms the first line of his qaṣīda [ode], the fourth qaṣīda of the Sab‘ah Mu‘allaqah.¹ Labīd lived to witness the advent of Islam, was honoured to embrace Islam, and was among the blessed Companions, may Allah be pleased with them. This is why God honoured his words by revealing a line from his verses as a majestic prophecy about the Latter Days when a country would be devastated. Thus, it is foolish to wonder how the words of a believer could have found their way into divine revelation, because—as I have just explained—the words uttered by ‘Abdullāh bin Abī Sarah, viz. فتبارك الله احسن الخالقين were revealed in the Holy Quran verbatim, which caused him to turn apostate and run away to Makkah.² So if divine revelation could coincide with the words of an apostate, what is so strange if it were to coincide with the verse of an eminent Companion like Labīd?

Just as God is the ultimate Heir to everything, He is also the Heir to all chaste speech, and every such pure speech proceeds from the tongue on account of the power and ability bestowed by God Almighty. So, if

¹. The Suspended Odes, or Mu‘allaqah, are reportedly seven famous masterpieces of Arabic poetry that were hung in the Ka‘bah during pre-Islamic times. [Publisher]

². See the commentary by Al-‘Allāmah Abī al-Sa‘īd on the footnote of Tafsīr-e-Kabīr, p. 276–277, volume six. (Author)
speech like that descends by way of revelation, only he would entertain doubt regarding it who entertains doubts about Islam. And among the excellences of Labid, one was that he not only saw the time of the Holy Prophet, may peace and the blessings of God be upon him, but he also saw a good deal of the victories of Islam. He died in the 41st year of the Hijrah [Islamic calendar] at the age of 157.

Likewise, the words spoken by Haḍrat ʿUmar, may Allah be pleased with him, coincided with the words of the Holy Quran a number of times, as related by Anas, may Allah be pleased with him:

قَالَ قَالَ عُمْرٌ وَافَقْتَ رَبِّيْ فِیْ اَرْبَعٍ

Meaning that, four things were uttered by me and the same were uttered by God Almighty.

If I were to mention the experiences of the saints of this blessed Ummah, and how words spoken by other people were revealed to them by God, and how the verses of Rūmī’s Mathnawi were revealed to some, this would require a whole separate book. And I know that anyone who is the least bit cognizant of these matters will never claim that the words of God can never coincide with the words of a mortal. Indeed, anyone who has some knowledge of the Shariah [Islamic Law] will consider such a claim to be a cause for apostasy, because such a creed requires rejection of the Holy Quran itself.

There is also a difficulty here, and I think it is appropriate that I resolve that also. It is that if it is permissible for the word of man to coincide with the Word of God, then would this not detract from the miraculous excellence of the Holy Quran? But, as the author of Tafsīr-e-Kabīr and other commentators have written, there is no need for any confusion here, because a miracle is not based upon such a short portion of the text. Otherwise, the individual words used in the Holy Quran are the same that were used by the Arabs. For a discourse to be considered miraculous in nature, it has to size up to the criteria laid
down by the Holy Quran; namely, that it should be at least as long as the shortest Surah of the Holy Quran or equal to ten Quranic verses. I do, however, say that when a man’s words become the words of God in the form of revelation, they do take on a miraculous character. For instance, this very revelation from Allah:

\[
\text{عَفَتِ الدّیار محلّها ومقامها}
\]  

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

was not a miracle when it issued from the tongue of Labīd, may Allah be pleased with him, but after appearing in the form of revelation, it has now become a miracle.

All Labīd did was to speak of bygone events—the description of which lies within human power. But now, when God caused His revelation to coincide with Labīd’s words, He gives the news of great future events that are beyond the power of man to foretell. So, the same words, when ascribed to Labīd, do not constitute a miracle, but when attributed to God they undoubtedly became miraculous. A year ago, who knew that a large portion of this country would be destroyed and rendered uninhabitable by a terrible earthquake? Who knew that so many towns and villages would be swallowed up by the earth in an instant, and buildings would collapse and disappear as though they had never existed? This is exactly what a miracle is: Something should transpire that no one could previously think—or even imagine—to be possible.

Is it not true that the dwellers of this country were left awestruck by the severity of the earthquake and regarded it as something extraordinary and an impossible occurrence which was a foretaste of Doomsday? And is it not true that European researchers have given the verdict that a review of the past history of 1,600 years of this country shows that such a terrible and destructive earthquake has not been experienced by this country before? So, is the prophecy that gave news of such an extraordinary event a long time before its occurrence, not a
miracle? Does it lie within the scope of human powers?\(^1\) Therefore, considering that the people of this country and their ancestors for almost the last 2,000 years\(^2\) have not witnessed nor heard of such a catastrophe, nor did they ever imagine such an occurrence to be imminent, then if someone gives news of it and it happens exactly as he says, this will not only be called a miracle, but a miracle of the first order.

Turning again to the original topic, I wish to state that the critic, in order to take away the grandeur of a magnificent prophecy and to belittle it in the estimation of all, has compared it to the vague prophecy of the Gospel where it has been mentioned in only mundane words that earthquakes would come. But whosoever will read the text of my announcements carefully will have to admit that, regrettably, the critic

---

1. \(^\star\) The critic, as I have mentioned previously, has published in *Paisah Akhbār* his objection that the word ‘earthquake’ is not found in the prophecy:

\[عفت الدّیار محلّھا ومقامها.\]

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out.]

He says this despite the fact that the earthquake was specifically mentioned in a prophecy that was published in the same newspaper five months previously, whereas this prophecy only gives a description of that earthquake. Such, then, is the honesty, integrity, wisdom, and understanding of our opponents! Is there not one among them who could take him aside and reprimand and rebuke him as to why he tried to deceive the public in this way, knowing full well that the clear prophecy of the earthquake can be found in the 24th December 1903 issue of *Al-Hakam*, the same earthquake whose terrifying consequences are outlined in [afatid-diyār—‘residences will be wiped out’]? And both these prophecies were published a year before they were fulfilled. Indeed, the prophecy about the earthquake can be found clearly outlined in *Mawāhib-ur-Raḥmān*, page 86*, which was published two and half years ago. (Author)

*This reference text appears in *Rūhānī Khazā’in*, volume 19, page 305, published in 2008. [Publisher]*

2. \(^\star\) According to research published in the *Civil and Military Gazette*, the temple at Kangra that was destroyed in the earthquake was about 2,000 years old. Had such earthquakes occurred before, this temple would already have collapsed long ago. (Author)
has tried unjustly to cover up the bright day and has employed great dishonesty. He has read my announcements and knew full well that the words of my prophecy regarding the earthquake were not dull and ordinary as the words of the Gospel. Nonetheless, he wilfully chose to remain obdurate. Who does not know that the Arabic revelation:

عفت الدیار محلھا ومقامھا

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

narrates startling news in the form of a prophecy that is enough to make people tremble. Is it an ordinary affair that towns and villages would sink into the earth? And it has been detailed in Urdu that this would be:

زلزلہ کا دھماکا

Shock of earthquake.

See the newspaper *Al-Hakam*, page 15, column 2, dated 24th December 1903. And then it has been written in the tract *Āmīn*, which was published in 1901, that it would be a calamity that would remind of Doomsday.

And it had been published in *Al-Hakam* of 24th March 1904, that the sceptics would be shown a Sign. And then it is written in the announcement *Al-Andhār* that the impending earthquake would be an apocalyptic earthquake. And it is written in *An-Nidā* that the earth would be turned upside down by the impending earthquake. Then, it is written in the same that this great calamity would bring to mind the calamity of Doomsday. Then, in the same, God Almighty says that: ‘I shall descend upon the earth for you to show My Signs. For you, We shall show the Sign of the earthquake and We shall demolish the buildings that the heedless people erect or will erect in the future. And I shall manifest the Sign that will cause the earth to tremble. Then that day will be a day of wailing for the world.’ Then, in the announcement entitled, ‘News of the Earthquake for the Third Time’, it is written with
regard to the impending earthquake, ‘It is indeed true, and absolutely true, that the earthquake about to strike this country will be such as no eye has hitherto witnessed, nor has any ear heard of, nor has it crossed anyone’s mind.’ Now, tell me honestly: Where in the Gospels do you find such descriptions concerning an earthquake? If there are any, they should be presented. Otherwise, one should fear God Almighty and stop trying to conceal the truth.

**HIS STATEMENT**—The word ‘earthquake’ was inserted in the translation so as to make ignorant people think that the word ‘earthquake’ is present in the revelation too.

**MY ANSWER**—O blind man! The complete words of the revelation are:

عفت الدیار محلھا ومقامھا
زلزلہ كا دھکا۔

[Shock of earthquake. Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

See the newspaper *Al-Hakam* of 1903 and 1904. The meaning of both of these is that there will be a jolt of the earthquake, a portion of this country will be destroyed by this jolt, and buildings will collapse and will cease to exist.

Do tell now: Have I deceived the ignorant or are you deceiving

---

1. As I have just written, this prophecy is also contained, in clear words, in my book *Mawāhib-ur-Rahmān* which was published in 1902, and the word ‘earthquake’ is clearly mentioned therein. This being the case, ignorant are only those who, despite all this elucidation and explanation, still ask as to where the mention of ‘earthquake’ is. They should open their eyes and read the 24 December 1903 issue of the *Al-Hakam* newspaper, as well as the tract *Āmīn*, which was published in 1901. They should also read page 86 of *Mawāhib-ur-Rahmān*, which was published in 1902, and then shed tears over [the pathetic] state of their faith. (Author)
them? Have I lied or are you lying? [The curse of Allah be upon the liars].

The newspaper *Al-Hakam* is there; check both its issues. This newspaper was published in the country a year before the promised earthquake. It has even reached the Government. Now, tell me what prejudice persuaded you to utter such falsehood as to claim that there is no mention of ‘earthquake’ in the prophecy?

**HIS STATEMENT**—This revelation is found on the page, column 4, of the 31 May 1902 issue of *Al-Hakam*, and it is clearly written in bold letters alongside it: ‘Related to the plague.’

**MY ANSWER**—Can there be any doubt that this earthquake is a supplement to the plague and is related to it, for God has told me again and again that both the earthquake and the plague are in support of my claim? Thus, the earthquake, indeed, has a connection with the plague; for, the plague is a Sign from God Almighty for me and so is the earthquake. That is the reason that both have a mutual connection and both are in support of the same issue.

And if some doubt arises in the mind that this sentence does, in fact, refer to the plague, then such doubt is indeed spurious, because something that has a connection with another cannot possibly be identical to it.

Moreover, there is a strong indication here that this sentence does not really refer to the plague, because there already is present the revelation, ‘The jolt of the earthquake.’ One should then ponder, invoking a little fairness and sound reason, whether falling of buildings and elimination of habitations can be features of a plague. Rather, these pertain to features of an earthquake. A fair person can never be so audacious as

---

1. There seems to be a scribal error. It should have been written as *Al-Hakam*, 31st May 1904, page 9, column 4. [Publisher]
to continue denying the meanings which are apparent in the words of the text, are fully supported by the context, have become evident by the occurrence of the incident, and human conscience has accepted that all that has happened is what is implied by the revelation of عفت الدّیار ['afatid-diyr—‘residences will be wiped out’].

Even if we suppose that the recipient of the revelation made an error of interpretation, and understood the calamity that is implied by the revelation عفت التّیار ['afatid-diyr—‘residences will be wiped out’] to refer to the plague, his error—having been made prior to occurrence—would be no excuse for the opponent. There has been no Prophet or Messenger in the world who has not erred in understanding any of his prophecies. Would such a prophecy not be a Sign of God in your estimation?

If this is the disbelief that you harbour in your hearts, why do you speak in such a subdued manner; why don’t you attack Islam fully? Can you name a single Prophet who was never mistaken in understanding the meaning of any of his prophecies? So even if it is supposed that the word ‘about’ exactly means the plague, does this not constitute an attack on all Prophets?

It is quite evident, from looking at the revealed sentence of عفت التّیار ['afatid-diyr—‘residences will be wiped out’] that what is meant by this sentence is that it will be such a calamity whereby the buildings of a portion of this country would collapse and would cease to exist. And it is obvious that a plague has no effect on buildings. So even if the editor of Al-Ḥakam did write the sentence that it is about the plague, and the word ‘about’ is understood to mean what the critic has said, then the most that can be said in this context is that the editor of Al-Ḥakam made a mistake in writing so.

Such error in understanding the prophecies has been sometimes made by the Prophets themselves, may peace be upon them. For instance, there is the hadith containing the word ذهَب وھلی ['it occurred to me'] in Bukhārī and its words are as follows:
Meaning that, Abû Mūsá has quoted the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, as saying, ‘I saw in a dream that I had emigrated from Makkah to a land which has date palm trees. At the time it occurred to me that it is either the land of Yamāmah or the land of Hajar, but it has turned out to be Madīnah, that is Yathrib.’

Now take note that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, whose dreams are revelation from God, and whose interpretation is more sound, robust, and correct than all interpretations, had interpreted his dream that the emigration would be towards Yamāmah or Hajar, but that interpretation did not turn out to be correct. So, does this prophecy not qualify as a prophecy in your estimation? And are you prepared to launch an attack even on the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him? Thus, whereas even the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is included in the possibility of making an error of interpretation, then what kind of a faith is yours that, in your prejudice, you care nothing even for the honour of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and feel no shame before God?

Moreover, like an impartial judge and being deferential to the fear of the Almighty, one should consider the words عفت التيَّار [‘afatid-diyār—‘residences will be wiped out’] and see whether these words are applicable to the plague or to an earthquake? Is it fair that when the actual occurrence of the prophesied event itself revealed the meaning of عفت التيَّار [‘afatid-diyār—‘residences will be wiped out’], one should still take it to mean the plague?

The words of the prophecy are clearly crying out that it is a calamity that will cause buildings to collapse and that a section of the habitations
of this country would cease to exist. If you are unacquainted with Arabic, then ask someone who knows Arabic about the meaning of:

عَفُتُ الْدِّيَارِ مَلَحْلَةٌ وَمَقَامًا

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

And if you do not trust anyone, then take a look at the meanings of the line as written by the commentator which is:

وَمَا كَانَ لِلْإِقَامَةِ

(see Mu’allaqah number 4, commentary on the first line)

Meaning that, the towns of friends and their homes ceased to exist and those buildings ceased to exist that were used for temporary residence—such as inns or national shrines—and so did those buildings that were for permanent residence. Now, explain how can these meanings be applicable to the plague, and what connection does the plague have with the collapse of buildings? The only difference between these meanings and those of the revelation from God Almighty is that of the past and future tense. While Labid referred to the past in this sentence, the revelation from God refers to the future. The implication of it is that buildings and towns of a portion of this country would cease to exist—neither temporary nor permanent abodes would remain.

Now, do tell: Can these meanings truthfully apply to the plague? What is there to be gained now by being obstinate? Only two kinds of people show unwarranted obstinacy: either the extremely foolish or the extremely dishonest and prejudiced. And if you present the same objection again which has been answered before, that the past tense has been used here and Labid, may Allah be pleased with him, has also used it to mean the past, the answer—as has been given before—is that

1. There seems to be a scribal error. It should have been written as لِلْحَلُوْلِ.

[Publisher]
now this discourse is not Labīd’s but is the discourse of God. God has stated grand prophecies at various places in the Holy Quran using the past tense. For instance, God Almighty says:

2. \[ \text{Kastab bid'da 'anf Ł̲e'heh, } \text{tanmā 'aχ̲iha ūnta ma 'aχ̲iha ūnta mas':} \]

\[ \text{وَّ لَهَبٍ اَبِيْ يَدَاۤ تَبَّتْ} \]

Now, be just a little fair and answer whether the words of this prophecy are in the past tense or in the future tense. It is an occasion for profound shame for any wise man; but for someone who claims to be very knowledgeable, such an error becomes an occasion to die of shame when—despite claiming erudition—someone denies such an evident fact. I cannot visualize what your condition will be after assessing these answers. Of what benefit is it to a person to adopt a path that—on the one hand—leads to the displeasure of God Almighty on account of abandoning the truth; while—on the other—suffers shame and humiliation for insisting on falsehood.

The real philosophy behind the prophecies in the Word of God being mostly narrated in the past tense is that every event that is to take place on earth has already transpired in Heaven. So, from the perspective of the Heavens it is as if that event belongs to the past. It is on this basis that in hundreds of true dreams seen by the ordinary people, future occurrences are told in the past narrative; for example, if a boy is to be born to someone, what is shown is that a boy has been born or a daughter has been born, or that he has received something which implies a boy. This usage—of expressing the prophecies using past

1. Perished be the two hands of Abū Lahab, and so perish he. His wealth and what he has earned shall avail him not (Sūrah al-Lahab, 111:2–3). [Publisher]

2. \[ \text{In the Bible, too, future events have been described in the past tense, such as the words, 'Babylon is fallen, is fallen!' See Isaiah, 21:9* And the words 'Woe unto Nebo! for it is spoiled: Kiriathaim is confounded.' See Jeremiah, 48:1. (Author)} \]

*The scribe had mistakenly put number 5 here; but 9 is the correct reference. [Publisher]
tense even though they refer to the future—occurs not just in the Holy Quran but is published and well known even in earlier Scriptures; even a child cannot deny it. This usage appears abundantly in the Hadith [for example]:

عن انس رضی اللّٰه عنه قال، قال النبی صلى اللّٰه عليه وسلم خربت خیبر۔ انا اذ نزلنا بساحۃ قوم فساء صباح المنذرین۔

The Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, had said prior to gaining victory over Khyber, ‘Khyber has been ruined. And inauspicious is the morning for the people who are warned—when we descend upon the courtyard of that people.’ So here the Holy Prophet[^1] used the past tense, whereas it was meant to refer to a future triumph.

In short, this was one prophecy that was made utilizing past tense but, in fact, had the connotation of the future. The same is the case with the prophecy:

عفت الدیار محلھا ومقامھا

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

It is in the past tense but implies the future. Also, as I have said, the word [ad-diyár] means a part of the country, as denoted by the article [al]. Labid, may Allah be pleased with him, also did not take the [ad-diyár] to refer to homes in general, but has taken it to mean the homes of friends. Here, in the words of God:

عفت الدیار محلھا ومقامھا

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

*mahal* refers to the ancient places of pilgrimage of Hindus; that is, the temples that were present in Dharamshala and Kangra from ancient times, and the duration of their existence is proven to be at least 1,600
years. The word muqām implies the buildings in these areas that were made for permanent dwelling. And God had foretold in this prophecy that those temples—meaning, the places where idols are worshipped—would also collapse, and their collapse would be the harbinger for the spread of the Oneness of God, while other buildings would also collapse. And this is what came to pass.

So, when the prophecy has been fulfilled in accordance with its literal wording, to deny it now is absurdity. The literal words deserve to be considered when ascertaining the meaning, and it is sheer folly to turn away from the literal at the time when the words of the prophecy have been fulfilled literally.

Had this sentence:

عَفَت الديار محلها ومقامها

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

been fabricated by man and had the plague been implied by it, the fabricator could not have used this sentence; for, reason would have stopped him from using the words that cannot be applicable to the plague, since buildings do not collapse because of the plague. If the meanings were not interpreted correctly before the actual occurrence, it would be an error of interpretation, but to refuse to accept the correct meanings after the truth has become evident, is called mischief, dishonesty, and obstinacy.

**His Statement**—I ask you for the revelation in which you have given the news that an earthquake would strike. But you cannot present such a revelation till Doomsday.

**My Answer**—I say that the Doomsday that you deemed far off is right upon you. See the newspaper *Al-Hakam* of 24 December 1903, page 15, column 2, where it has been clearly stated:
will take place. And then, five months later, on 31 May 1904, the magnitude and the force of this jolt has been described in this divine revelation:

Meaning that, it will be such a jolt as to destroy the dwellings in a part of the Punjab, and no trace will be left of the buildings, whether they be temporary abodes—like the Hindu temples of worship in Dharamshala and Kangra—or the permanent abodes as were the places of permanent dwellings in Dharamshala and Kangra etc.

Answer me now regarding that Doomsday which you imagined was so far off—claiming that I would not be able to present such a revelation till Doomsday—whether that Doomsday descended upon you or not? Everyone can appreciate that the ‘Day of Doom’ certainly seized you, since the prophecy regarding the earthquake that you deny is clearly recorded in Al-Hakam of 24 December 1903, page 15, column 2. Just open your eyes and read it; then drown yourself in shame!

Thus, it was to define the characteristics of this very earthquake that the revelation عفت الدّیار \[\text{‘afatid-diyar—‘residences will be wiped out’}\] followed the first revelation. Has Doomsday not befallen you yet? And should you say that all people will die on Doomsday yet you are still alive, the reply is that you have—in fact—died the death of humiliation, for this physical life is nothing after spiritual death. Can that person be deemed ‘alive’ who had so vehemently claimed that there is absolutely no mention of the earthquake in the prophecy and had so arrogantly insisted that, till Doomsday, I would not be able to present any such prophecy mentioning the earthquake, whereas thereafter the prophecy was produced mentioning the earthquake in explicit terms
عفت الدیار ['afatid-diyar—‘residences will be wiped out’], having been published in Al-Hakam just five months earlier. And the revelation:

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

expresses the grandeur of that very earthquake. Therefore, it was not necessary to mention the word ‘earthquake’ again.

Now tell me what good is the life of one who claimed that something could not be produced till Doomsday, yet it appeared from right under his nose!

بہ از زندگانی بترک حیابمردى کہ تا زیستن مرد را
It is better for a man to die of shame
Than to live without decency and shame.

خبر بسوزد درو کاذبِ بدگہرجہنم کزو داد فرقان
The Hell foretold by the Holy Quran
Is the burning abode of the liar and the evil one.

Anyone who is not blind and dead can appreciate that this prophecy enjoys clarity and eloquence of the highest order as is required of this prophecy; indeed, even greater than that. To deny it is such obstinacy that it clearly shows that such a person does not even believe in God. And this is not something new. In earlier times, people who were not willing to accept the truth under any circumstances, adopted the same attitude.

In the fervour of prejudice, you might also object that God Almighty gave the news of the earthquake five months earlier, which was published in Al-Hakam on 24 December 1903, and then described the signs of the ferocity of the earthquake and its horrible consequence five months later by means of His revelation; [objecting] why did He not describe them together? Should you raise such an objection, it
would not be a new objection either. Rather, it is the same objection that was raised by the accursed Abū Jahl and the accursed Abū Lahab 1,300 years ago when—criticising the Holy Quran—they had said:

\[
\text{وَّاحِدَةً جُمْلَةً الْقُرْاٰنُ عَلَيْهِ نُزِّلَ لَا لَوْ}
\]

Thus, such an objection falls under the category of [similarity of mindset] and a Muslim should refrain from it.

**HIS STATEMENT**—You have also not specified what is meant by ‘earthquake’ in this revelation.

**MY ANSWER**—The explicit wording in the divine revelation is the earthquake, but an earthquake that would be reminiscent of Doomsday. Indeed, it would be a cataclysmic earthquake and thousands of buildings would collapse therefrom—many a town being wiped off—no parallel of it would be found in earlier times; thousands would be killed instantaneously, and it would be such an event as no eye had witnessed heretofore. Thus, the collapse of buildings in this way, the sudden death of thousands of people, and the appearance of something extraordinary, is the real import of the prophecy.

Moreover, although from the apparent words of the prophecy, ‘earthquake’ is undoubtedly taken to mean an earthquake, the deference to the Word of God Almighty does indeed require that we bear in mind the true import, which is an extraordinary phenomenon and a miracle; not conjecture about the particulars of the earthquake as to what form and shape it would take. Though the apparent words of the prophecy indicate that it would indeed be an earthquake, it is possible that it might be some other terrible calamity the like of

---

1. Why was not the Quran revealed to him all at once? (*Surah al-Furqân*, 25:33) [Publisher]
which has not been witnessed in the world before, and that it might have the quality and character of an earthquake in it. For instance, it might be in the form of a sinkhole in which the earth would be turned upside down without any earthquake being felt, or some other extraordinary calamity might appear which human knowledge has never experienced before.

So, the event would, in any case, be a miracle. If, however, such a grievous calamity did not appear—a calamity which would shake the world, which, according to the apparent words of the divine revelation, would be of the nature of an earthquake—or, if some ordinary event which the world witnesses all the time and which is not extraordinary and unusual and which is not truly cataclysmic, came to pass or if that calamity does not take place in my lifetime, then, you may, by all means and by beating a drum, reject me and consider me a liar. The import of this great calamity is that it would be a reminder of Doomsday and it would end up bringing about instantaneous destruction of the world and would bring thousands of people into my Jamā'at [Community].

HIS STATEMENT—Seeing the opportunity, you applied the statements from Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya to the earthquake too, whereas there is no mention of ‘earthquake’ in those statements.

MY ANSWER—This is the same kind of objection that the prejudiced Christian priests level these days against this prophecy of the Holy Quran:

1. Alif Lām Mīm [I am Allah, the All-Knowing]. The Romans have been defeated in the land nearby, and they, after their defeat, will be victorious (Sūrah ar-Rūm, 30:2–4). [Publisher]
They assert that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, made this prophecy out of his own conjecture in view of the prevailing situation. He prophesied the triumph of the Roman Empire merely because he thought that the power of the Romans was actually greater, they had full provisions of war, and their army was experienced and brave, whereas the condition of the Persian Empire was the opposite. Therefore, he made this prophecy based upon the prevailing situation. So, I wonder how this habit and attitude of Christian priests got into you. Cruel-natured priests raise the same objections against all the prophecies of the Holy Quran as you have done. Repent, lest you make some other advance beyond this similarity with them.

Open your eyes and look at your objection! On page 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, there is the prophecy wherein God proclaims:

[I shall demonstrate My light and shall raise you with a demonstration of My power. A Warner came unto the world, but the world accepted him not; yet God shall accept him and demonstrate his truthfulness with mighty assaults].

The translation of the Arabic revelation is:

When God shall manifest His Glory on the mountain, He will cause it to break asunder. He will do so in order to show the truth of His servant.

Now reflect carefully: What is in this that I have made on my own?

1. In the 2008 edition of Rūḥānī Khazā‘in, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, page 665. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on page 435. [Publisher]
Here God Almighty Himself promises to show a glorious manifestation just as the glorious manifestation appeared on Mount Sinai for Mūsā [Moses], and He promises such a manifestation of His power that it will transcend the ordinary and will be the cause of my acclaim. And then the third time, He promises that God shall demonstrate His truth with powerful assaults. And in the end, He expounds the nature of the powerful assault and the manifestation of His Glory and Power that has been mentioned above. And He says that God shall manifest His Glory on a specific mountain and shall cause it to break asunder. Now, if your eyes fail to see anything out of bigotry, you may ask some other fair-minded person whether some great Sign has been promised in this revealed text, or whether it is merely an invention of my own? And if there is a promise, then do the words of the prophecy mean that a mountain will be broken asunder as a Sign, or does it mean something else?

As to the objection that at the time my mind was not directed to the fact that the mountain would be broken asunder, this is something akin to when the mind of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon, was not immediately directed to the fact that the place of migration he had been shown in a vision was Madīnah, and not Yamāmah or Hajar, and also like when the mind of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was not directed to the fact that on the journey of Ḥudaybiyyah, they would not be able to enter Makkah nor would they be able to perform the circuits of the Ka’bah. So, if your objections are similar to those made by the wicked disbelievers against the prophecies of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, then I am getting concerned lest you might someday even lose your faith in Islam.

It should be borne in mind that in the above-mentioned prophecy, which is recorded on page 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, God has clearly indicated the earthquake, because the verse:
refers to the time when God Almighty had broken asunder Mount Sinai by subjecting it to an earthquake, as its detailed description is set out in the Torah. This being the case, what should we call your behaviour—is it prejudice or ignorance when you say that there is no mention of the earthquake in these statements? Well, if there is no mention of the earthquake, then you should also deny that Mount Sinai was broken asunder by an earthquake.

**His Statement**—The line عفت الديار [*‘afatid-diyār*] means that dwellings were laid to waste in the past.

**My Answer**—Alhamdulillah [All praise belongs to Allah]! At least you have admitted that:

عفت الديار محلها ومقامها

indeed means the collapse and destruction of houses! As for the fact that you confine the meaning of the word عفت [*‘afat*—‘wiped out’] to the past, I have already cited the examples from the Holy Quran in refutation of this notion. Indeed, all Arabs can testify to this for me. Tell me now whether this prophecy is extraordinary or not?

And if you say that no time has been specified in it, the answer is that if God wishes that their time be kept a secret, He never tells when the prophecy is going to be fulfilled. And when God says that the prophecy of the earthquake will be fulfilled at a time when no one would have known about it, and that calamity would occur all of a sudden, it would be contrary to His own Word to announce the time of its occurrence. See the announcement An-Nidā, page 14.

1. And when his Lord manifested Himself (Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:144). [Publisher]
And should you say, ‘What distinction does the prophecy have without specific determination, for calamities are wont to visit the world once in a while anyway?’; the reply is that it is a sufficiently specific determination that God said that this calamity would come as a testimony for me in my own lifetime and millions who would be living at this time would still be alive and would witness this calamity, and the calamity would be such that there would be no parallel of it in this country for ages in the past. So, this specification is enough that the cataclysmic earthquake would come within my own lifetime and that of most of my opponents. And remember, the Makkan opponents, too—like you—had sought specification as to the time by asking ﷺ ['When will that promise be fulfilled?'], but they were not disclosed the time.

**HIS STATEMENT**—Newspapers that are sympathetic to the Islamic causes should reproduce this article in their publications and inform the public that these announcements are false, and that Mirza [Ghulam Ahmad] had not made any prophecy.

**MY ANSWER**—Now, what could be the reply to this, except ﷺ ['The curse of Allah be upon the liars']? As for the newspapers publishing the article accusing me of falsehood, the All-Powerful who has sent me does not care the least for it. What harm can the insects of the earth do to the Will of the Heavens? Before this, Abū Jahl, may he be cursed, had instigated the peoples of Arabia—that this man (meaning that, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) was making a false claim—and he had rallied ignorant people around him. Then, ponder over his ultimate end! Was the Will of God thwarted by his mischiefs? Rather, God Almighty decided the fate of that unfortunate one in the Battle of Badr, and the religion of the true Messenger of God Almighty prevailed throughout the world. Likewise, I say in all truth that no newspaper can stop the
Will that has been decreed in Heaven. God’s fury is greater than the fury of man. It is not an attack on me, but is an attack on God who created earth and heaven. It is His Will to cleanse the earth of sin, and to bring the days of sincerity, righteousness, and TAUHID [the Oneness of God] back again, but the hearts that love the world do not wish for such days to return. O fool! Will you resist God? Is it in your power to fight Him? Had this been the work of man, there was no need for you to oppose it. God was enough to destroy it. This Movement has continued for nearly twenty-five years and is progressing by the day, and God has granted it extraordinary success in keeping with His holy promises. It is inevitable that before this world would come to an end, God would grant progress to this Movement to the point of perfection.

God has shown thousands of Signs to affirm my truth, to which hundreds of thousands of people stand witness. Signs appeared from the earth as well as from heaven. And they appeared amidst friends as well as foes. Hardly does a month pass without the manifestation of a Sign. And even now there is the promise of an extraordinary Sign, which has been designated as a cataclysmic earthquake which will unleash havoc upon the world never before witnessed by the world. So, if you fear God, why can you not be patient for a while? This earthquake will only surface so that God might manifest the truth of the truthful, and afford the people an opportunity to see Truth with the help of a glittering Sign. Though believing afterwards will not be of much honour, those who accept shall yet have a share in the blessing that has been prepared for the believers.

**HIS STATEMENT**—Does not the incident of Ahmad Baig’s daughter take the lustre away from Mirza’s revelations?

**MY ANSWER**—O critic! Was the shame of the earlier absurd objections not enough for you that you also chose to partake of the humiliation of making this frivolous objection?
Now listen with open ears! This prophecy had two parts and both were conditional. One part was conditionally related to the death of Ahmad Baig, meaning that it was prophesied that if he did not abide by the conditions laid down by God Almighty, he would die before the completion of three years. And not just him but with him there would be several deaths of his relatives too. So, because he—out of insolence—could not observe any of the conditions, God took him away from this world even before the stipulated period had elapsed, and several other deaths also occurred along with it.

But the part of the prophecy that pertained to Ahmad Baig’s son-in-law, was deferred because the remaining people developed fear according to the purport of the condition and became very frightened. And this can be understood by everyone that if there is any prophecy about the death of two persons and one of them dies within the stipulated time, fear naturally develops in the heart of the second person. So it was inevitable that the associates of Ahmad Baig’s son-in-law should have become fearful in their hearts upon witnessing Ahmad Baig’s death. Hence, when God saw the fear of those people, He delayed the part of the prophecy that related to the death of the son-in-law, in keeping with His promise.

This is similar to what transpired in the case of the prophecy of death concerning Deputy ‘Abdullāh Ātham and Pundit Lekh Rām. Since Deputy ‘Abdullāh Ātham showed much fear on hearing the prophecy about his death, his death was deferred and he lived a few months longer than the stipulated period, but Lekh Rām exhibited great insolence upon hearing the prophecy and surpassed all limits in vilification. Therefore, he was removed from this world even before the original term limit.

The fact is that prophecies made by God’s Messengers which contain the news about someone’s death or some other calamity, are called prophecies of *wa‘id* [warning]. And it is divine practice that such prophecies can be averted or delayed through repentance and seeking forgiveness, regardless of whether there is any condition in them or not,
just as it transpired in the prophecy of Prophet Yūnus [Jonah]. And the prophecy that Prophet Yūnus made for the chastisement to befall his people within forty days, was absolute—there was no stipulation that they believe or become frightened. Nevertheless, when the people repented and lamented, God Almighty deferred the chastisement. It is an established doctrine, with the consensus of all the Prophets, may peace be upon them, that every misfortune which God Almighty has willed to befall someone, can be averted by charity, almsgiving, repentance, seeking forgiveness, and prayer. So, the affliction that has been intended—when its news is communicated to a Prophet or Messenger or one ordained by God—is called a prophecy of wa‘id [warning]. And, as it is an affliction, it can be averted in accordance with God’s promise through repentance, seeking forgiveness, charity, almsgiving, prayer, and by earnest supplication, or it can be deferred. If the affliction, which has been made known in the form of a prophecy, cannot be removed through charity, almsgiving etc., all the Divine Books would stand invalidated and the entire edifice of religion would be disrupted.

The critic has thereby mounted a serious assault against Islam—and not just against Islam—it is an assault on all the Prophets. If this attack is not deliberate, it betrays his rank ignorance of Islam and the Shariah [Islamic Law]. The faithful should be wary of such people for, by attacking me, they do not intend only to attack me, they care not the least for the religion of Islam—they are the hidden enemies of Islam. May God Almighty safeguard His religion against their evil.

This ignoramus doesn’t even know that just as God Almighty has made it an integral part of His own noble attributes to avert prophecies of warning on the basis of repentance, seeking forgiveness, prayer, and charity, so did He teach the same morals to man as is evidenced by the Holy Quran and the Hadith. When—out of sheer maliciousness—the hypocrites had perpetrated a calumny against Ḥaḍrat ‘Ā’ishah, may Allah be pleased with her, some unwary Companions also had joined in this narrative. One of those Companions used to get his meal, twice a day, from the home of Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with
him. Due to this lapse, Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr pledged that he would never again feed him as a punishment for this misdeed, whereupon the verse was revealed:

أَنْ تُحِبُّوْنَ إِنْ لْيَصْفَحُوْا وَ لْيَعْفُوْا وَ ١٠

At that Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr broke his pledge and restored his meals as usual. It is for this reason that it is part of Islamic morality that should one pledge something by way of punishment, the breaking of that pledge is a component of good morals. For instance, if someone swears that with regard to his servant, he shall strike him fifty times with a shoe, to forgive him on account of his repentance and earnest supplication is the Islamic custom, so that morality mirrors the attributes of Allah. Nevertheless, it is not permissible to break a promise; one will be held accountable for the breach of promise, but not for breaking a pledge of chastisement.

**HIS STATEMENT**— The state of other prophecies is even worse than this.

**MY ANSWER**— O bigoted ignoramus! When did you have the occasion to study my prophecies with care and to learn about them all, and when did you have occasion to stay in my company to witness my Signs first-hand! Who should I compare you with? You are comparable to a blind man who denies the existence of the sun yet fails to see his own blindness. Everyone cognizant of this matter can determine whether the state of my prophecies is worthless or whether the state of your faith is worthless. For the wise, this sample of your objections is enough; namely, the issue which is incontrovertible for all the Prophets

1. Let them forgive and forbear. Do you not desire that Allah should forgive you? And Allah is Most Forgiving, Merciful (Surah an-Nur, 24:23). [Publisher]
and which is incontrovertible for all Islamic sects, is objectionable in your estimation. How sad! Are these the people who want to become the leaders of Islam who are not even aware of the teachings of God and the doctrines of Islam? [To Allah we belong and to Him shall we return].

O cruel critic! Is this the wherewithal that prompted you to take up the pen? Though you suffer the fervour of prejudice, was it necessary to advertise your ignorance? Every statement, a rank lie; every doubt, simply satanic suspicion! With this knowledge and understanding, what tickled your fancy to criticise the holy revelation of God? It would have been better had you remained silent. You have earned sin for nothing and you have exposed everyone to your [heretofore] concealed ignorance with your tongue, defaming yourself in public and meriting the application—to your plight—of the parable of Shaikh Sa’di, may God have mercy on him, that is contained in Bostân which is as follows:

کی نیک خلق و نخل پوش پد سکر کے مسر کی نت ناموش پد
There was a good and well-renowned fellow in Egypt
Who never opened his mouth in speech.

جبان بن بدر باد از سرچم ایم پوران بہ وقت شہبگر شک
A host of people congregated around him in all sincerity
Like moths converging upon a lamp at night.

شب در ول توارش اندر کر کر پرچید از زبان است مر
One night he said to himself:
‘There is a [wise] man concealed beneath my silent tongue;

اگر نائم فلنت شاں در سرم چپ دانم مر کہ دیش دوم
Should my cleverness remain hidden within my head,
How would people know that I am a man of intellect?’
Thereupon he spoke—and friend and foe came to know—

That in Egypt, there was no one more ignorant than him!

His followers dispersed and his glory vanished;
He fled away after writing on the arch of the mosque:

‘Had I seen my face in the mirror,
I would not have laid bare my folly.’

I have now completed replying to the objections raised by Muhammad Ikrāmüllāh Khān of Shahjahanpur which have been published on page 5 of *Daily Paisah Akhbaar*, 22 May 1905, but this was followed by a letter addressed to my friend, Maulawī ’Abdul Karīm, by a gentleman who chose not to reveal his name, in which, appealing in the name of God, he has sought answers to some of his objections regarding the same prophecies. These objections have been sufficiently answered in this part of *Barāhin*, but since the critic has appealed to me in the name of God, I will briefly answer the gentleman’s objections, even at the cost of repeating myself.

**HIS STATEMENT**—The phrase ‘Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out’ which His Holiness Mirza Sahib claims to be his revelation is a verse written by an ancient poet. The question is, has a revelation ever been vouchsafed to a Prophet which is—word for word—the same as something that has already been uttered before this Prophet by some other man? And if you are able to prove this, then the second objection would be that
under such circumstances what would be the distinction between the Word of God and the word of man?

**MY ANSWER**—As I have written about it earlier, we do not need to go looking for such an example among other Prophets, because even to our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, some such phrases were contained in the revelations of Allah that had already been uttered by someone else. For instance, this sentence of Quranic revelation:

\[
	ext{کُتَبَ المَلِكَ عَلِیْ الْخَلِیقَینَ} \quad 1
\]

issued forth first from the tongue of 'Abdullāh bin Abī Sarah, and the very same sentence was revealed in the Holy Quran. See *Tafsīr-e-Kabīr*, part 6, page 276, printed in Egypt. The actual words are:

روى الكلبي عن ابن عباس رضي الله عنهما. أن عبد الله بن سعد بن أبي سرح كان يكتب هذه الآيات لرسول الله صلی الله عليه وسلم فلما أنهى إلى قوله تعالى خلقًا آخر عجب من ذلك فقال فتبارك الله أحسن الخالقين. فقال رسول الله صلی الله عليه وسلم أكتب فهكذا نزلت، فقال عبد الله وقال إن كان محمد صادقاً فيما يقول فإنه يوحي إلى كما يوحي إليه وإن كان كاذباً فلا خبر في دينه فهرب إلى مكة فقيل أنه مات على الكفر وقيل أنه اسلم يوم الفتح.

**Translation** is that: Kalbi narrates it on the authority of Ibn ‘Abbās, may peace be upon him, that ‘Abdullāh bin Abī Sarah used to take down verses of the Holy Quran, i.e. the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, would direct him to write down the verses as they were revealed to him. And so once when the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, dictated to him the verse that ends with خلقًا آخر ['another creation'], ‘Abdullāh marvelled

1. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (*Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn*, 23:15). [Publisher]
and said [‘So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators’]. The Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, then said, ‘Write this down as well, for God has also revealed the same words that have issued from your tongue, namely:

فَتَبَارَكَ اللَّٰهُ اَحْسَنَ الْخَالِقِينَ

[So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators].

Thereupon, ‘Abdullāh became mistrustful as to how the words that he had uttered could be the words of God. He said, ‘If Muhammad, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, be true, then I receive the same revelation that he does, and if he be false, then there is no good in following him.’ So, he fled to Makkah. According to one narrative he died a disbeliever, while according to another he became a Muslim after the fall of Makkah.

So you can see that the words of ‘Abdullāh bin Abī Sarāḥ coincided with the words of God; i.e. this sentence:

فَتَبَارَكَ اللَّٰهُ اَحْسَنَ الْخَالِقِينَ

[So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators]

issued forth from the mouth of ‘Abdullāh and this very sentence was revealed by God. And should you ask, ‘What, then, distinguishes the Word of God from the word of man?’, the first answer is as God Himself has said in the Holy Quran—to establish a distinction the words uttered by any other than God must at least equal some chapter of the Holy Quran, for that is the quantity considered sufficient to count as a miracle, as God says:

وَإِنَّكُنَّ أَنتُمْ فِي رِيْسٍ جَمِيعٍ تُرُكُّونَ عَلَى عِبَادِي كَأَنَّكُمْ پَرْنَكُمُّ وَتَوَلَّونَ

1. And if you are in doubt as to what We have sent down to Our servant, then produce a Chapter like it (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:24). [Publisher]
He did not say [‘Produce a verse like it’] or [‘Produce a sentence like it’]. And, in reality, it is true that the Words of God, taken separately, are indeed those very words that issued forth from the tongues of disbelievers, but they took on a miraculous form as a whole through their beautiful eloquence, structured symmetry, and other characteristics.

And the same is true of the miracles inherent in Works of God Almighty. They acquire their miraculous nature when viewed as a whole, just as His Words become miraculous when seen as a whole. Nevertheless, even the short phrases that issue forth from the mouth of God are absolutely distinct from human phrases on account of the lofty meanings that are inherent within them. And though man may not succeed in penetrating their hidden mysteries, they do possess an inherent light in which lies their true spirit. For instance, the above words:

\[\text{1. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:15).} \]

have a distinct quality on account of their relation to the preceding verses. In other words, they possess a spiritual philosophy which is in itself a miracle, the like of which is not found in the words of man.

To elaborate, in the beginning of Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, which contains the verse:

\[\text{2. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:15).} \]

God speaks of how man passes through the six stages essential for his progress to reach his physical and spiritual perfection. God has divided
both kinds of development into six stages each, and has declared the sixth stage to be the stage of perfect development; and the affinity between the physical and the spiritual stages of development has been shown in such an extraordinary manner that ever since man was created, the mind of no man has been able to attain this insight. And if someone claims otherwise, then the onus would be on him to produce this holy philosophy from the book of any human being. But, remember, no one will ever be able to prove any such thing. Hence, this is an evident miracle that Allah the Exalted has revealed in these blessed verses—namely, the deep parallelism that exists in both the physical and spiritual progress until one reaches the point of perfection. And this, in turn, shows that both the physical creation and the spiritual creation have been wrought by the One and same hand; that is, the hand of God.

Some ignorant people have also objected that the Holy Quran’s description of the stages of man’s creation, starting from that of a sperm to his full physical perfection, is not accurate in the light of modern medical research. It is foolish of them to interpret these verses to mean that God creates a human being in the womb in such a manner that He first completes one organ and then attends to another. This is not at all the intent of the divine verses. Rather, just as I have myself witnessed, the True Creator fashions all the organs—internal and external—at the same time, not one after the other in the development of the child in the womb from a shapeless lump to the end. It is, however, established that at first the human form consists of a clot of blood, then all of it turns into a shapeless lump, and then—at one and the same time—some of it turns into bones at the proper places, and then—at one and the same time—the whole structure is clothed with flesh, which is called the skin and helps to embellish the body. At this point the physical human form becomes complete and is infused with life. I have witnessed all these stages with my own eyes.

I will now turn to the six stages of spiritual development, as Allah the Exalted states in the Holy Quran:
As against these, He has also declared the number of stages of man's physical development to be six, as He states after these verses:

1. Surely, success does come to the believers, who are humble in their Prayers (Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:2–3). [Publisher]
2. And who shun all that which is vain (Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:4). [Publisher]
3. And who are active in paying the Zakāt (Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:5). [Publisher]
4. And who guard their chastity—except from their wives or what their right hands possess, for then they are not to be blamed; but those who seek anything beyond that are the transgressors—(Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:6–8). [Publisher]
5. And who are watchful of their trusts and their covenants (Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:9). [Publisher]
6. And who diligently guard the observance of their prayers (Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:10). [Publisher]
7. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:14 [Publisher]
8. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
As I have stated above, it is clear that the first stage of man’s spiritual development is the one described in this verse; that is:

Meaning that those believers have attained salvation who adopt humility and meekness in their Prayers and in their remembrance of God and who busy themselves in the remembrance of God with tenderness of heart and depth of emotions. Against this, the first stage of man’s physical development has been described in this verse:

Meaning: Then we made man a sperm and placed that sperm in a safe place. Thus, after the creation of Adam, God Almighty has declared the sperm to be the first physical stage of human development.

Obviously, the sperm is a seed which embodies within it all the faculties, characteristics, inner and outer organs, and the physical features

1. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
2. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
3. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
4. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
5. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:2–3 [Publisher]
6. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:14 [Publisher]
that are plainly revealed at the fifth stage, and are fully and manifestly perfected at the sixth stage.\(^1\) Nonetheless, the stage of the sperm is the most precarious of all the stages, for it is like a seed that has not yet attached itself in any way to the earth. It has still not felt the pull of the حَمْرُ [rihm—womb] and it is possible that it may be wasted on entering the body of the woman just as a seed is wasted on rocky soil. And it is also possible that the sperm itself may be defective; that is, it may have some imperfection in itself that makes it unfit for growth. It may not have the ability to be attracted by the حَمْرُ [rihm—womb] and may only be like a corpse in which there is no movement, just like a rotten seed that is sown in the soil; and even though the soil may be excellent, yet by virtue of its own defect it is incapable of growth and development. And it is also possible that due to some other disorders, which we need not elaborate here, the sperm is not able to connect to the حَمْرُ [rihm—womb] and the حَمْرُ [rihm—womb] deprives it of its attractive influence; just as a seed is sometimes crushed underfoot, carried away by birds, or destroyed by some other accident.

The same are the characteristics that attend the first stage of a believer’s spiritual development—the state of humility, meekness, tenderness, and pathos—that he experiences in worship and in the remembrance of God, which, in other words, means to cultivate in oneself anguish, tenderness, humility, modesty, meekness of spirit, and a yearning and longing, and to turn to God having been overcome by His fear, as has been described in the verse:

\[^1\] The stages referred to here are the ones that have just been mentioned. The fifth stage is when, by the power of the Almighty Creator, the human body becomes complete in the حَمْرُ [rihm—womb] and the bones are covered by an embellished skin. The sixth stage is when the body is endowed with life. And, as I have said above, the first stage of man’s spiritual development is that of humility, tenderness, and pathos, and that, too—in fact—embodies, in a compact form, all that is later manifested in man’s spiritual being. (Author)
Meaning that: Those believers have attained their desires who adopt humility and meekness in their Prayers and in every type of their remembrance of Allah, and who occupy themselves in remembering Him with true fervour and supplication, passion, and anguish. This stage of humility, which has been indicated above, is the first stage in the development of the spiritual being. In other words, it is the first seed that is sown in the soil of servitude to God, and it carries in it—a compact form—all the faculties, attributes, features, beauty, and characteristics of the spirit, which, in the fifth and sixth stages, manifest themselves in the perfect man in an attractive manner. Since this stage,

1. Qur’an: Surah al-Mu’minun, 23:2–3 [Publisher]

2. The fifth stage, as I have stated, is the one described in the verse:

[And who are watchful of their trusts and their covenants. (Surah al-Mu’minun, 23:9)].

And the sixth stage, as mentioned before, is that outlined in the verse:

[And who diligently guard the observance of their Prayers (Surah al-Mu’minun, 23:10)].

And this fifth stage has been placed in juxtaposition to the fifth stage of man’s physical development described in the verse:

[Then We clothed the bones with flesh (Surah al-Mu’minun, 23:15)].

And the sixth stage is juxtaposed with the sixth stage of the physical development as referred to in the verse:

[Then We developed it into another creation (Surah al-Mu’minun, 23:15)].

(Author)
like the stage of the sperm, is the first stage in man’s spiritual development, the Quranic verse has placed it in the first stage alongside the stage of the sperm and has described their similarities. This is so that those who reflect deeply on the Holy Quran may understand that the state of humility in Prayer is like a sperm in case of the spiritual being, and like the sperm it contains all the faculties, attributes, and features of the perfect man. Likewise, just as a sperm remains in a precarious state until it has established a link with the womb, so is this initial stage of the spiritual being—the stage of humility—not free from danger until it becomes firmly linked to the Merciful One.

It should be noted here that when the favour of God Almighty is received without any effort on one’s part, this is due to the attribute of Graciousness. For instance, everything that God has created for mankind by way of heaven and earth etc., or even the creation of man himself, all this has come about on account of God’s Graciousness. But when one receives favour as a result of one’s deeds, worship, effort, and striving, it is the result of Mercifulness. This has been the continuous divine practice towards mankind so that when man adopts humility in his Prayer and remembrance of God then he makes himself deserving of Mercifulness.

So, the only difference in the sperm and in the first stage of the spiritual development—that of humility—is that while the former is dependent upon the pull of the womb, the latter requires the pull of the Merciful. So, just as it is possible that the sperm may be wasted before it can establish connection with the womb, so is it possible that the first stage of man’s spiritual development—that of humility—may be wasted before it is able to establish the connection with the Merciful One.

There are many people who in the initial stage cry, are ecstatic, and rave and rant in their Prayers, and show all manner of frenzy and fervency in their love for God, and manifest various states of being
enamoured with God, but since they are unable to establish any connection with the Bountiful One, whose attribute is Mercifulness, and are not drawn towards Him by means of His special manifestations, all their crying, humility, and supplication are baseless and they often falter and fall into a state worse than before. So, this is a wonderful and interesting similarity between the sperm—which is the first stage of the physical development and which comes to nothing unless the pull of the رحم[womb] comes to its aid, and the state of humility—which is worthless unless the pull of God’s mercy comes to its assistance.

It is on this account that you will find thousands who, in some part of their lives, had enjoyed the state of humility in their Prayers and remembrance of God, and they cried and supplicated in ecstasy, but then some such curse took hold of them that turned them suddenly towards selfish ends, and they became totally lost in the world and its desires and passions. This is indeed a fearful scenario whereby their state of humility ends before they have established a link with the Merciful One. Before the pull of the Merciful God effects some action upon them, that state is gone and lost. As such their spiritual condition, which is at the first stage of spiritual development, is akin to the sperm that is lost before it can establish a connection with the رحم[womb]. In short, the first stage of the spiritual being—that of humility—and the first stage of the physical being—that of the sperm—are similar in that the first stage of the physical being—that of the sperm—is worthless without the pull of the رحم[womb], and the first stage of the spiritual being—that of humility—is nothing without the pull of God, the رحیم[Merciful].

And just as countless sperms go to waste in this world, being destroyed in that state without having established a connection with the رحم[womb], so are there countless instances of the states of humility that are wasted because they fail to be connected to رحیم[the Merciful God]. There are thousands of ignorant people who, on account of a few days of humility, rapture, and supplication,
become satisfied and think that they have attained the status of *wali* or *ghaus* or *qulb* or *abdīl,* or have become godly, whereas in fact they are nothing at all; they are still a mere sperm. As yet they are only acquainted with the name of God, the rosebud of spring [i.e. loving relationship with Allah] has not even touched them. Alas! A large number of people have been destroyed on account of such vain thoughts.

Bear in mind that the first stage of the spiritual being—that of humility—can perish due to a myriad of factors, just as the sperm—which is the first stage of the physical being—can come to naught due to various kinds of mishaps, including a defect in the sperm itself. For instance, if the state of humility has some idolatrous contamination in it, or is mixed with some unlawful innovation or frivolity, such as a person’s carnal and unholy desires and passions expressing themselves, or the heart is in the grip of base objectives, or has become overpowered by the frivolous worldly desires; thus, burdened by all these unholy disorders, the state of humility is not deemed worthy of establishing a link with the Merciful God, in the same way as a defective sperm will fail to connect itself to the *rihm* [womb]. This is why the state of humility of the Hindu yogis and the Christian clergymen does not benefit them in the least. If they take their anguish and supplications to a level where they reduce their bodies to a fleshless skeleton, even then the *rahim* [Merciful One] does not establish a connection with them because their state of humility has an inherent flaw.

The same is the case of the mendicants of Islam steeped in innovation who, shunning the Holy Quran, adopt instead a thousand forms of innovation, so much so that they shamelessly employ hemp or marijuana or alcohol, not to mention other forms of evil in which they indulge as freely as a child partakes of its mother’s milk. Since their condition has no affinity or connection with the Merciful God; rather,

---

1. *Walī* (friend), *ghaus* (saint), *qulb* (guiding star), and *abdīl* (substitutes, i.e. vicegerents appointed for carrying out the will of God Almighty) are various designations used for *Auliya’ullāh*—i.e. the friends of God. [Publisher]
their condition is extremely repugnant in the eyes of God, therefore, despite all their own type of ecstasy, dance, poetry, and music etc., they remain totally deprived of establishing a relationship with the Merciful God. They are like the sperm which, on account of syphilis or leprosy becomes defective and unfit for the [rihm—womb] to establish a link with it.

Thus, the relationship with the [rihm—womb] and [Rahim—the Merciful God], or the absence of it, is due to the same cause, the difference has only to do with the disorders being physical or spiritual. Just as a sperm at times is not fit so that the [rihm—womb] may establish a connection with it and draw it to itself on account of some inherent disorders, the same is true of the state of humility—which is equivalent to the state of the sperm—which, due to some inherent disorders of its own, such as pride, arrogance and ostentation, and other forms of misguidance or idolatry, becomes unworthy that God, the [Rahim—Merciful]. God should establish a connection with it. In short, all the excellence of the first stage of spirituality—i.e. the state of humility—depends upon establishing a true link with the Merciful God, in the same way as all the excellence of the sperm depends on its developing an association with the [rihm—womb]. Thus, if the state of humility is not really linked with God, the [Rahim—Merciful] and no true relationship with Him can develop, then that state is akin to the impure sperm that can never develop a real connection with the [rihm—womb].

Remember that if a person at one time happens to experience true immersion and fervour and pleasure in Prayer and remembrance of Allah, it does not prove that he has a true relationship with God, the [Rahim—Merciful], just as the sperm may enter the woman’s body and pleasure may be experienced, but it does not necessarily mean that the sperm has become linked to the [rihm—womb], for there is a whole separate set of signs and indications that would prove the link. Thus, the passion and fervour one experiences in the remembrance of God Almighty—which is known as the state of humility—is akin to the state
of the sperm that enters the woman’s body after being ejaculated. There is no doubt that in the physical realm it is a moment of great pleasure, and yet the entering of the sperm does not entail that it will become linked to the حرب [rihm—womb] and will be drawn towards it.

Similarly, it is not necessary that the spiritual passion and fervour and state of humility will definitely lead the supplicant to establish a relationship with God, the رحیم [Rahīm—Merciful] and be drawn towards Him. Instead, the sperm that enters the body of a prostitute as a result of an illicit relationship results in the same sort of pleasure as one experiences with one’s wife. Thus, the pathos and fervour of idolaters and creature worshippers is similar to the lust of those who associate with prostitutes. The fervour and passion of the polytheists who remember God merely for the sake of worldly objectives is akin to the sperm that enters the body of a prostitute and results in pleasure.

Nonetheless, just as the sperm has the inherent ability to establish a link, so is the case with the state of humility, and yet this state of humility and pathos and anguish alone does not prove that the link has indeed been established. This is just like the sperm—which is a physical parallel of the spiritual state—for when a man comes to his wife and his sperm enters her body and he experiences the ultimate pleasure, this pleasure is no guarantee that conception has indeed taken place. Similarly, no matter what pleasure and ecstasy one experiences in the state of humility and fervour, it is by no means a definitive indication of the existence of a link with God.¹ In other words, if some

---

¹ In the initial stages, the state of humility and passion can go hand in hand with all sorts of frivolous activities. For instance, a child is in the habit of crying and becomes fearful and shows humility repeatedly; and yet in childhood one is engrossed in much frivolity, and is more readily drawn towards it. He often likes to indulge in senseless things like jumping about and even incurs injuries. This shows that frivolity is what comes to man first of all in life’s journey and he cannot move on to the next stage without passing through this stage first. And the first step to adulthood is to shun the frivolities of childhood. This goes to show that man by nature initially associates with frivolous things. (Author)
person experiences humility and fervour during Prayer or remembrance of God, it does not necessarily mean that he has a relationship with God.

A person may experience all these states and yet have no connection with God. We commonly see people who cry with elation and raise slogans during sermons and religious discourses, during Prayers and remembrance of God, and express deep emotion with tears running down their cheeks. Indeed, some are prone to weep at the slightest occasion, and yet such people do not detach themselves from frivolous activities, and much that is absurd and frivolous recreation is their constant companion, which goes to show that they have no relationship whatsoever with God and their hearts are devoid of His fear and majesty. This is indeed a strange display—such impure souls together with such states of humility and fervour. This is indeed a matter to learn from, for it shows that mere show of passion and crying that is not attended by the shunning of frivolity is nothing to be proud of, nor is it at all a sign of one’s nearness to God or a link with Him.

I have with my own eyes seen many faqīrs [Muslim religious ascetics] and other such people who, upon hearing a tragic verse or witnessing a tragic event or hearing a tragic story, at once start shedding tears, just like some clouds that start pouring large drops of rain so suddenly as to not afford those sleeping in the open an opportunity to run indoors without their bedding being drenched in water. But I can testify, based on my personal observation, that I have found many such people to be very cunning, even more so than worldly people. Indeed, I have found some of them to be so evil-natured and dishonest and villainous in every aspect that having seen their tears and demonstrations of humility I am loath to express such sentiments in public. There was, of course, a time when this was specifically the hallmark of righteous people, but nowadays it has become a trait of devious and dishonest people. They put on green mantles, grow long hair, always have a rosary in their hand, tears are ever welling up in their eyes, their lips ever moving as if in remembrance of Allah, and then they
also indulge in every innovation. Such are the signs of mendicancy that they exhibit, and yet their leprosy-stricken hearts are devoid of the love of God, with a few exceptions of course. The truly righteous whose actions are spontaneous and heartfelt—and not for ostentation and display—are exempt from these remarks of mine. In any case, what this proves is that crying and supplication is not something that is unique to Godly people; rather, it is a human faculty that comes into play at its proper place or otherwise.

At times a person reads a fictitious story and he knows that it is all fiction, such as a novel and yet when he comes to a tragic turn of events, he loses control over his heart and is unable to restrain the gush of tears. The power of such tragic stories is such that at times a person starts to relate it and at one point his eyes well up with tears, and his voice also becomes like that of a weeping person, and suddenly he cannot restrain his emotions. He experiences the kind of satisfaction and pleasure that comes from such crying even though he knows well that the basis upon which he weeps is invalid and is merely fiction.

Why is this so? What is the reason that lies behind it? It is because the faculty of crying and pathos that resides within man is not concerned with the truth or untruth of an event. It will come into play whenever such conditions exist, and man takes a kind of pleasure in this state whether he is a believer or a disbeliever. This is why in unholy gatherings that comprise of all kinds of innovations, licentious people, who adorn themselves in the garbs of faqirs, upon hearing eulogies and verses, start to dance and get into a state of trance and ecstasy and crying. They experience their own form of pleasure and think that they have thus become one with God. And yet the pleasure they experience is like the pleasure that a fornicator might experience with a prostitute.

Yet another similarity between the sperm and the state of humility and fervour in Prayer is that just as a man’s sperm enters the body of his wife or another woman, at the time of ejaculation it flows freely just like the flowing of tears in a state of fervour and anguished supplication.
And just as the sperm ejaculates spontaneously, so do tears flow from the eyes of a person at the height of anguished prayer. And just as the pleasure of ejaculations is at times lawful when experienced with one’s wife, and at times unlawful when experienced with a prostitute, the same is the case with the state of anguish and fervour, which at times is only for the sake of the One and Peerless God, with no contamination of idolatry or innovation. This is lawful pleasure. But at times such pleasure is experienced in the passion and fervour of worship that has the element of innovations, creature worship, and the worship of idols and goddesses, and then it is like the pleasure experienced during intercourse with a prostitute. In short, mere crying, supplicating, fervour, and anguish and the pleasure derived therefrom do not necessarily mean a relationship with God, just like so many sperms that are wasted and the [rihm—womb] does not accept them. Similar is the case with cries and supplications of many people. It only serves to destroy their eyesight, for the Merciful God does not accept such supplications.

Thus, there is a manifestly clear similarity between the state of humility—which is the first stage of the spiritual being—and that of the sperm—which is the first stage of the physical being. I have described [this similarity] in detail. And this similarity is not a trivial matter, for the Eternal Creator—glory be to Him—has created this complete and perfect similarity by His express will; so much so that it is also written in the Book of Allah that both these pleasures will also be experienced in the next world, but in that world the similarity will have grown so much that they will virtually become one. In other words, when in the next world a man makes love to his wife, he will not be able to tell whether he makes love to his wife or is immersed in the boundless sea of the love of Allah. This state is experienced in this very world by those who become one with the Lord of Honour, but it is beyond the comprehension of worldly and the unenlightened people.

Having explained how the first stage of the spiritual self has
complete affinity with the first stage of the physical self, it is now neces-
sary to explain how the second stage of the spiritual self, too, has an
affinity with the second stage of the physical self. To elaborate, as I have
already stated, the second stage of spiritual development has been out-
lined in this noble verse [of the Holy Quran]; that is:

\[\text{مُعْرِضُوْنَ اللَّغْوِ عَنِ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ وَ}

Meaning that: Believers are those who shun all that is vain, they do not
indulge in vain conversations, activities, or actions and keep away from
vain assemblies, companions, and relationships.

In parallel with this is the second stage of the physical self which
God has described in His Noble Word as عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—‘clot’]. As He
says:

\[\text{عَلَقَةً النُّطْفَةَ خَلَقْنَا ثُمَّ}

Meaning that: Then We fashioned the sperm into an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—
clot]. That is, We saved it from being lost in vain and turned it into an
عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot] through the connection and influence of the رحم
[rilm—womb]. Prior to this, it was in a perilous state and it could not
be said whether it would develop into a human being or would go to
waste. But after establishing a connection with the رحم [rilm—womb],
it was saved from going to waste and a change came over it that did
not exist before; that is, it took on the form of an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot]
of blood and became thicker. And a connection with the رحم [rilm—
womb] developed, and thus it came to be named عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—‘clot’],
and the woman became eligible to be called pregnant. And by virtue
of this connection, the رحم [rilm—womb] became its guardian and
the sperm began to grow and flourish under its care. However, at this

1. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:4 [Publisher]
2. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
stage the sperm has not acquired much of purity. It merely turned into an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot] of blood that was saved from going to waste on account of being linked to the رحم [rihm—womb]. And as it would otherwise have spread and spilled out in an unseemly manner and desecrated one’s clothes, now, on account of its link, it has been saved from being wasted. But it is still only an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot] of blood and not free from contamination of subtle impurities. Had it not become linked to the رحم [rihm—womb], it was likely that it would not have been able to stay therein, even if it had entered the woman’s body, and would have just flowed out. But the power of the رحم [rihm—womb] held on to it and turned it into something like a clot of blood. And then, as I have said, it came to be called عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—‘clot’] on account of that link—a link that had hitherto been missing. It is this that saved it from being wasted, and it is on this account that the fluid shed its watery form and became somewhat thicker.

Corresponding to this عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot], which is the second stage of the physical being, is the second stage of the spiritual being which I have mentioned above and of which is indicated by the following Quranic verse:

المَعِضُوْنَ اللَّغْوِ عَنْ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ وَ مَعِضُوْنَ

مَعِضُوْنَ اللَّغْوِ عَنْ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ وَ

Meaning that, the emancipated believers are those people who shun vain actions, vain talk, vain behaviour, vain assemblies, vain company, vain relationships, and vain passions, and their faith rises to a level that it becomes easy for them to achieve that much. For, on account of the strengthening of their faith they do establish a certain link with the Merciful God, in the same way as the sperm, when it turns into an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot], becomes linked to the رحم [rihm—womb] and is saved from spilling out in vain or being wasted; otherwise، إِلَّا مَا شَاءَ اللَّهَ [except as God wills]. Thus, in this second stage of the spiritual being, the relationship with the Gracious God is exactly similar to the
relationship which the عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot] has with the رحم [rihm—womb] in the second stage of the physical being. And just as before the advent of the second stage of the spiritual being it is not possible to become free of frivolous relationships and activities, and more often than not the first stage of the spiritual being—that of fervour and supplication—goes to waste and has an inauspicious end, so is the case with the sperm, which is the first stage of the physical being. Before it becomes an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot], there is every chance that it will go to waste. But when it is willed by God that it should be saved from being unduly wasted, then by His command the same sperm turns into an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot]. This, then, is deemed as the second stage of the physical being.

So, the second stage of the spiritual being is when one shuns all frivolous acts, deeds, talk, relationships, and passions. And this stage too is only attained when one has established a link with the Merciful God, for it is this relationship that has the potential and force to break it free from the other relationship and save it from being wasted. Even if a person experiences fervour and devotion in one’s Prayers—which is the first stage of the spiritual being—this state is unable to keep him from indulging in frivolous talk, acts, and deeds, and cannot restrain his frivolous passions until one develops the link with God as in the second stage of the spiritual being. This is just like the case of a man who might consort with his wife several times a day, but the sperm will not be saved from being wasted unless it becomes linked to the رحم [rihm—womb].

So when God Almighty says:

1. سُرَاحٌ الْمُمِينُ�، ٢٣:٤ [Publisher]

it means that the believers are only those who wean themselves away from vain relationships—and weaning away from vain relationships is
a requisite for the relationship with God.¹ In other words, weaning one’s heart away from frivolous activities amounts to attaching one’s heart to God, because man has been created for eternal worship, and the love of God is by nature imbued in his heart. This is why his soul has an eternal relationship with God, as is evident from the verse:

\\textit{بَلٰى قَالُوْا بِرَبِّكُمْ اَلَسْتُ} \\
\\textit{بِإِيمَانٍ} \\
\\textit{وَلَهُ الْكِتَابُ الْأَكْوَابُ} \\
\\textit{١٩١} \\

The relationship that man establishes with God Almighty by coming under the shade of [Raḥīmiyyat—Mercifulness] through the medium of worship—the first stage of which is that, having attained

1. The reason why weaning away from vain relationships leads to a relationship with God Almighty is that in these same verses God Almighty has used the word ḍaflaha—‘succeeded’] to promise that whoever does something in order to seek God will find God to the extent of his labour and striving and to that extent will have a relationship with Him. So whoever shuns vain deeds for the sake of a relationship with Him is able to enjoy that bit of relationship with God as promised in the word ḍaflaha—‘succeeded’. This is because what he has done is nothing very heavy, he has merely cut off the light connection he had with that frivolous deed. Bear in mind that since the word ḍaflaha [aflah—succeeded] is found in the first verse which is:

\\textit{خَشِعُوْنَ صَلَاتِهِمْ فِيْ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ اَفْلَحَ قَدْ} \\
\\textit{مُعْرِضُوْنَ اللَّغْوِ عَنِ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ وَ} \\

That is, ‘those who turn away from that which is vain’ means, ‘Verily, believers have succeeded who turn away from that which is vain.’ At each stage of development of faith, the word ḍaflah [Iflah—‘success’] has a distinctive meaning, holding out the promise of a special relation with God. (Author)

2. ‘Am I not your Lord?’ They say, ‘Yes, we do bear witness’ (Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:173). [Publisher]
faith in God, he should shun every vain conversation, vain deed, vain company, vain relationship, and vain passion—amounts simply to bringing that same eternal relationship from a potential into the realm of actuality. It is not something new.

And as I have already stated, the first stage of man's spiritual being—which is to attain to the state of humility, fervour, and anguish in one's worship and remembrance of God—this stage amounts in itself merely to that of general application. In other words, the anguished self does not necessarily shun the frivolous or show higher moral values or civilised traits. Rather, it is quite possible that the heart of the person who assumes humility and cries and supplicates in Prayer, so much so that it even affects other people, may not be free from frivolous things, deeds, actions, companionship, relationships, and passions; that is, he may not have attained emancipation from sin.

The reason is that the occasional experience of inner anguish, or feeling of pleasure and concentration in Prayer is one thing, and the purity of the self is something altogether different. Even when the supplication, humility, and crying of a seeker is free from the contamination of innovative practices and idolatry, still the person who has not yet reached the second stage of the spiritual self is only searching for the spiritual goal, wandering on the way which is yet beset at every step with many a desert, wilderness, thorny bush, mountain, great tempestuous ocean, and wild animal—all enemies of faith and spiritual life—unless he has attained the second stage of spiritual development.

Bear in mind that the states of humility, meekness, and submission do not at all necessitate a true relationship with God, for often times even mischievous people become humble upon witnessing a manifestation of the wrath of God, while in fact they have no relationship with God whatsoever, nor are they free of vain pursuits. For example, the earthquake that struck on 4th April 1905 caused hundreds of thousands of hearts to become so humbled and overawed that they did nothing but cry and beseech God, so much so that even the atheists forgot their atheism. But as the time passed and the shocks ceased,
their humbleness also disappeared so much so that I heard that some atheists, who had—at that moment—believed in God, brazenly and shamelessly declared that they had been mistaken and overawed by the earthquake, but that otherwise there was no God.

In short, as I have written several times earlier, the state of humility and awe can be accompanied by much impurity. Of course, this state is like a seed for future excellences, but to consider this state to be perfection in itself amounts to self-deception, because there is a stage after this that a believer should seek and must not rest content or become lax until he has attained it. And it is this stage which is described in the Word of Allah as:

\[
\text{مُعْرِضُوْنَ} \text{اللَّغْوِ عَنِ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ وَ}
\]

That is, believers are not just those people who adopt humility in their Prayers and exhibit tender emotions. Rather, greater believers are those believers who, in addition to their humility, meekness, and anguish, also keep away from all vain things, deeds, and relationships. They do not allow their state of humility to be wasted by contaminating it with the frivolous; rather, they are naturally averse to all vain pursuits and a repugnance develops in their hearts for all frivolous suggestions and deeds.

This is evidence of the fact that they have acquired a certain relationship with God Almighty, for man turns away from one thing only after he has established a connection with another. So man’s heart only grows cold towards frivolous things, deeds, entertainment, merriment, and companionship when it has attached itself to the Merciful God and is overwhelmed by His majesty and fear. And so is the sperm saved from being wasted once it has become linked to the [riḥm—womb] and comes under its influence, at which stage it comes to be called [‘allaqah—‘clot’]. Thus, the second stage of the spiritual being,

---
1. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:4 [Publisher]
whereby a believer shuns all that is frivolous, is also عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot] in spiritual terms, for it is at this stage that the heart of a believer is overawed by the grandeur of God and forever bids farewell to frivolous things and actions.

This is indeed the state which, in other words, is called ta‘ālluq billāh [relationship with God]. However, this relationship with God that results from discarding frivolous things is only a fragile relationship, for although the believer at this stage has turned away from the frivolous, his heart is still attached to things that are deemed essential for the self and on which his prosperity and comfort depends. So an element of impurity still abides within him. This is why God has likened this stage of the spiritual being to an عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot], which is congealed blood and—owing to the blood—there remains an element of impurity in it. This defect remains at this stage because such people do not fear Almighty God to the fullest degree and the awe and grandeur of the Lord of Glory has not fully overwhelmed their hearts. They are only able to relinquish small and frivolous things, but not the others. Thus, their imperfect selves are still left with an element of impurity, so that having established a fragile relationship with God, they do turn away from the frivolous but cannot do away with things that are difficult to abandon. In other words, they cannot, for the sake of God, renounce those things that are essential for selfish pleasures. All this goes to show that mere turning away from the frivolous is not something that is too commendable; rather, it is a lowly state for a believer, albeit a stage above the stage of humility.

Corresponding to the third stage of physical development is the third stage of spiritual development, the detail of which is as follows. The third stage of the physical being has been described in this verse as:

1. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
Meaning that: ‘Then We fashioned the عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot] into a piece of flesh.’ This is the stage whereby the physical being of man comes out of the impurity. Compared to its previous states it acquires a degree of density and solidity. Both the sperm and the عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot of blood] have a slight impurity in them, and in respect of consistency, too, they are thinner and softer than the مضغة [mudghah—piece of flesh]. But مضغة [mudghah], which is a piece of flesh, develops a pure state in itself, and compared with the sperm and the عَلَقَة [‘alaqah—clot], develops a certain extent of firmness. The same is true of the third stage of the spiritual being which is described in the verse:

This verse means that the believer who goes beyond the first two stages does not only stay away from vain and frivolous things, but, in order to rid himself of the impurity of miserliness that is to be found in every human being, also gives Zakāt. That is, he spends a portion of his wealth in the path of God. Zakāt² is so called because when man gives Zakāt—gives away his beloved possessions for the sake of God—he is freed from the impurity of miserliness. And when the impurity of miserliness—which man is naturally prone to—departs from within a person, he attains a certain degree of purity and so acquires an affinity with God who is Holy in His Being.

Whoever gives his heart to that Holy One
Must first purify himself, then will he find Him.

This quality is not found in the first two stages because humility, submissiveness, and supplication and the giving up of vain pursuits can be

1. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:5 [Publisher]
2. The word zakāt is from the root zakā, which means ‘purification’. [Publisher]
done even by such a person who still has the impurity of miserliness in him. But when, for the sake of God Almighty, a man gives away his cherished possessions, on which depends his subsistence and which he has acquired with much toil, hardship, and sweat, then the impurity of miserliness leaves him, and at the same time his faith becomes more solid and firm. The two stages referred to above, which are antecedent to this stage, are not characterized by this pure quality, for they still have a concealed uncleanness.

The reason behind this is that turning away from the frivolous only amounts to discarding evil, and that too, of the kind that is not necessary for living and sustenance, and it does not put great hardship on the self to discard them. But to give away one’s own hard-earned possessions for the sole purpose of winning the pleasure of God is an act of acquiring goodness, and it leads to the removal of the worst of the impurities of the self—the impurity of miserliness. Hence, this is the third stage of the spiritual being and it is nobler and superior to the first two. And corresponding to this is the third stage of the physical being, that of the *mudghah*—piece of flesh], which is superior than the first two stages of the sperm and the *[‘alaqah—clot].

It is also characterized by its purity, for both the sperm and the *[‘alaqah—clot] have a subtle impurity in them, whereas the *mudghah*—piece of flesh] is free from it. And just as the *mudghah*—piece of flesh] is more developed and purified in the *rihm*—womb] and has a stronger connection with the latter than the sperm and the *[‘alaqah—clot], in addition to being more solid and hard, the same is true of the third stage of the spiritual being, referring to which God says:

\[\text{[Publisher]}\]

Meaning that the believers are those who, in order to free themselves of

---

1. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:5 [Publisher]
miserliness, spend their cherished possession in the way of God, and do so out of their own free will.

Thus, in this third stage of the spiritual being, those same three excellences are found as in the third stage of the physical being; that is, those that are found in the 

\[
\text{مضغة} \] 

[\text{mudghah—piece of flesh}] state. Because this is a state in which one spends—in order to be free from miserliness—one’s wealth in the way of Allah and gives away one’s hard earned possessions to someone else purely for the sake of God, it is certainly a state more developed than that of merely shunning frivolous pursuits and vain actions. Within this state one definitely and manifestly attains purification from the filth of miserliness and develops the relationship with the Merciful God. Since giving up one’s cherished possession for the sake of God is a far greater burden upon the self than shunning vain pursuits, undertaking this harder exercise leads to a greater relationship with God and, due to undertaking a difficult task, the faith is strengthened and intensified.

Then, after this, comes the fourth stage of the spiritual being, which Allah the Exalted describes in this noble verse:

\[
\text{حٰفِضُوْنَ لِفُرُوْجِهِمْ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ وَ} \]

Meaning that the believers who rise above the third stage are those who protect themselves against carnal passions and forbidden lustful urges. This stage is above the third stage because in the third stage the believer only gives away his most cherished and dear possessions in the path of God, but in the fourth stage he sacrifices what is even dearer to him than money and possession, and that is his carnal passions. Man is so enamoured by his carnal passions that he can spend his money like water and squander thousands of rupees for their fulfilment. In fact, he considers money to be nothing when it comes to fulfilling carnal desires. As is often seen that evil-natured miserly people, who

---

1. \text{Sūrah al-Mu'min, 23:6 [Publisher]}
would never give a penny to a hungry and destitute person due to their extreme miserliness, will—under the passion of carnal desires—squander thousands of rupees on prostitutes, destroying their home in the process. This shows that the flood of carnal passions is so strong and fast that it can carry away even the filth of miserliness. It is, therefore, evident that compared to the power of faith that does away with miserliness and causes man to give away his cherished possessions for the sake of God, this power of faith that saves man from the storm of carnal passions is extremely potent, hard, and enduring in enabling one to fight Satan because its purpose is to trample underfoot the ancient python of nafs-e-ammārah [the self that incites to evil].

Miserliness can be overcome even while in the grip of fulfilling one’s carnal desires or even at times when one is in the grip of show and ostentation, but the storm that emerges under the domination of carnal passions is a fierce and lasting tempest that can in no way be quelled other than through the mercy of God. And just as in the human body the bone is the hardest organ and endures the longest, in the same way the power of faith that can quell this storm is also very hard and enduring, so that by fighting such an enemy for a long time it can subjugate it—but only by the mercy of God, for the tempest of carnal passions is so devastating and threatening a turmoil that it cannot be calmed other than through the special mercy of the Most Holy God.

This was why Ḥaḍrat Yūsuf [Joseph] had to say:

\[
\text{رَبِّيْ رَحِمَ مَا اِلَّا بِالسُّوْٓءِ لَاَمَّارَةٌۢ النَّفْسَ اِنَّ نَفْسِيْ اُبَرِّئُ مَاۤ وَ}
\]

Meaning: ‘I do not hold my own self to be free from weakness; the self is surely most prone to enjoin evil and one cannot be delivered from its onslaught except that God Almighty should Himself show mercy.’ The phrase \[
\text{رَبِّيْ رَحِمَ مَا اِلَّا}
\] ['Except that God Almighty should Himself show mercy']

1. Sūrah Yūsuf, 12:54 [Publisher]
mercy’) occurs in this verse; similar words also occur in the description of the flood of Nūḥ [Noah], where Allah the Exalted says:

لا إِلَٰهَ إِلَّا الَّهُ، وَلَا مُاَلِمِ مِنْهُ عِنْدَ الْلّٰهِ عَظِيمًا

This is to indicate that this flood of carnal passions is similar in its grandeur and awe to the flood of Noah.

And corresponding to this spiritual stage which is the fourth stage of the spiritual being is the fourth stage of the physical being, about which is this verse in the Holy Quran:

عِظٰمًا الْمُضْغَةَ فَخَلَقْنَا

Meaning: ‘We then fashioned bones out of the [mudghah—piece of flesh].’ It is obvious that, as compared to [mudghah—piece of flesh], there develops in the bones greater hardness and firmness; furthermore, in comparison to the piece of flesh, the bone is more long-lasting and its remains can endure for thousands of years. Thus, the similarity between the fourth stage of the spiritual being and the fourth stage of the physical being is evident. Since the fourth stage of the spiritual being has greater faith and perseverance, it also enjoys a greater relationship with the Merciful God. In the same way the formation of bones in the fourth stage of the physical being is greater in strength and firmness than the third stage, which is mere flesh, and it also more strongly attached to the [rihm—womb].

Then, after the fourth stage, the fifth stage of the spiritual being is that which God Almighty has described in this verse:

1. ‘There is no shelter for anyone this day, from the decree of Allah, excepting those to whom He shows mercy’ (Sūrah Hūd, 11:44). [Publisher]
2. Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15 [Publisher]
Meaning that the believers at the fifth stage, who have gone ahead of the fourth stage, are those who not only possess the excellence of overcoming their carnal passions and gaining a grand victory over such desires, but rather they go a step further and, by fulfilling their trusts and pledges towards God and His creatures in every respect, they strive to walk the finer paths of taqwā [righteousness] to the best of their ability. Pledges to God refer to the pledges related to faith which are taken from a believer at the time of entering into the bai‘at [pledge of allegiance] and adopting a faith, such as not committing idolatry, not killing anyone unjustly, etc.

The word رَاٰعٰنَـ [ra’ān—‘watchful’] that occurs in this verse, means ‘those who are watchful’. According to the Arabic usage, this word is used when someone adopts the finer path of something to the best of his power and ability and undertakes to carry out all the minute details of the matter, leaving no aspect unattended. So this verse means that the believers who are at the fifth level of the spiritual being strive, to the best of their present ability, to tread the finer paths of taqwā. They do not wish to leave unattended any requirement of taqwā related to their trusts or pledges and are ever mindful of fulfilling them. They are not content with merely calling themselves trustworthy and truthful in a broad sense, but remain fearful lest they should be guilty of dishonesty in any matter inadvertently. So, to the extent of their ability, they keep examining all their affairs lest there be some latent flaw or drawback in them. This vigilance is indeed what, in other words, is called taqwā.

In short, those believers who are in the fifth stage of the spiritual being are not unrestrained or heedless in their undertakings, whether such undertakings be in relation to God or in relation to His creatures.

1. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:9 [Publisher]
Rather, fearing lest they should come under some culpability in the estimation of God, they keep in mind even the minutest aspects of their trusts and covenants and always keep examining them. And by making use of the penetrating lens of *taqwā* they go on evaluating their inner condition so that no hidden deficiency may arise in their trusts and covenants. And they utilize all of God’s trusts—such as their faculties, organs, life, wealth, and honour—to the best of their ability and in conformity with the demands of *taqwā*, while carefully considering the appropriateness of the occasion. They strive with all their power and full sincerity to live up to the pledge that they made to God at the time when they accepted the covenant of faith. Similarly, to the best of their ability and in conformity with the norms of *taqwā*, they fulfil the trusts they owe to God’s creatures or anything that falls under the purview of a trust. And if there happens to be a dispute, they settle it in accordance with *taqwā*, even if it means incurring a loss for themselves.

This stage is superior to the fourth stage because here one has to employ—to the best of one’s ability—the finer ways of *taqwā* in all one’s actions and to take every single step in all affairs—to the best of one’s ability—while keeping in mind the requirements of *taqwā*. But the fourth stage consists only of a general principle which is to abstain from adultery and licentiousness.

Everyone can understand that adultery is a most shameless act whose perpetrator, being blinded by his carnal passions, commits an unholy deed that adulterates the lawful human species with the unlawful and causes the spoiling of one’s progeny. This is why the Shariah has declared it to be such a major sin that whoever commits it is prescribed a penalty in this very world.

Evidently, it is not enough for the perfection of a believer that he should only abstain from adultery, since adultery is the work of extremely corrupt and shameless people, and it is such an obvious sin which even the most ignorant of the ignorant consider to be evil and no one but a faithless person will be audacious enough to commit it.
Shunning it, therefore, is a matter of ordinary decency and no great excellence.

But man’s full spiritual beauty lies in treading upon all the finer ways of taqwā. The finer ways of taqwā are the graceful features and lovely curves of spiritual beauty. It is obvious that to abide by the trusts that one owes to God and by the pledges of faith to the best of one’s ability, and to utilize all one’s organs and faculties from head to toe—of which the physically obvious are the eyes, ears, hands, feet, and the other organs; as well as the inner capacities such as the heart and other faculties and morals—appropriately at their proper occasion, to safeguard them from the unlawful, and to be wary against their secret assaults, while at the same time fulfilling one’s obligations towards God’s creation—this is the path on which depends all one’s spiritual beauty. God Almighty in the Holy Quran has labelled taqwā as raiment.

Libāsūt-taqwā [‘Raiment of righteousness’] is an expression of the Holy Quran, and this is an indication that spiritual beauty and adornment are indeed born out of taqwā. And taqwā means that man should abide by all of God’s trusts and pledges of faith, as well as all one’s trust and pledges towards God’s creatures to the best of one’s capability.

1. For faith, the stage of humility is like a seed. And then by shunning vain pursuits, the faith sprouts its soft greenery. And then by giving one’s wealth as Zakāt the tree of faith grows branches which give it a certain degree of strength. And then when one fights the carnal desires, these branches grow stronger. And when one fulfils all the aspects of one’s trusts and pledges, the tree of faith develops a strong and sturdy trunk. And then when it comes to yielding fruit, it receives another bounty without which the tree can grow neither fruit nor flowers. This is the power that in the sixth stage of the spiritual being is called Khalq-e-Ākhar [‘Another Creation’]. It is at this stage that the fruit and flowers of human excellence start to manifest themselves, and its spiritual branches are not only perfected but also bring fruit. (Author)

2. The pledges of faith are the pledges which a person makes at the time of pledging bai‘at and accepting faith, for instance, that he will not kill, will not steal, will not give false testimony, will not associate partners with God and will die professing Islam and obedience to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. (Author)
which is to say that he should firmly adhere to their subtlest and minutest aspects.

This is the fifth stage of the spiritual being, which corresponds to the fifth stage of the physical being which is described in this Qur'anic verse:

1. **Sūrah al-Mu'minūn, 23:15** [Publisher]
same is true of the fifth stage of the spiritual being. It is also commonly witnessed and felt that so long as a believer does not receive from Almighty God the spirit that is bestowed at the sixth spiritual stage, and which grants him extraordinary power and vitality, until then he is unable to exhibit the true brilliance of *taqwā* in respect of meeting God’s trusts and making their proper use, such as fulfilling the covenant of faith with absolute sincerity, and discharging the trust and obligations owed to God’s creatures. He lacks the brilliance of *taqwā* whose beauty and elegance draws hearts towards itself and all of whose graceful aspects appear extraordinary and miraculous.

Prior to the bestowal of this spirit, the *taqwā* of such a person is tainted by an element of superficiality and ostentation, as he lacks the spirit that can manifest the splendour of spiritual glory. And it is true and most certainly correct that such a believer, who is yet deprived of that spirit, cannot remain steadfast upon virtue. Rather, just as the limbs of a dead person might be moved by a gust of wind and return to their earlier state when the wind dies down, so is the case at the fifth stage of the spiritual being. At this stage the believer is only temporarily moved by the breeze of the grace of God Almighty towards goodness and virtue and is motivated to act with *taqwā*. But since the spirit of virtue does not yet reside in him, it lacks the beauty which manifests itself in all its glory after the spirit of virtue has entered into him.

So although the fifth stage of the spiritual being also partakes of the beauty of *taqwā*, this beauty only manifests itself to perfection at the sixth stage when the personal love of God descends upon the human heart as a spirit for his spiritual being and removes all imperfections. And man cannot become perfect simply by virtue of his own powers until that spirit descends from God, as Ḥāfiẓ Shīrāzī says:

![Persian phrase](image)

*We cannot reach that lofty threshold,*

*Unless You mercifully come forward a few steps [towards us].*
Then the fifth stage of the spiritual being is followed by the sixth which God Almighty has mentioned in this Quranic verse:

\[ \text{كُبْرِيَّةٌ عَلَى هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ وَيُحَافِظُونَ صَلَوٰتِهِمْ عَلٰى هُمْ} \]

Meaning that the believers of the sixth stage who have surpassed the fifth stage are those who themselves safeguard and watch over their Prayers. In other words, they are no longer in need of someone else’s exhortation or reminder, for they have attained such a relationship with God, and His remembrance has become so dear to their nature and so comforting, and has assumed such a pivotal role in their lives that they are ever engaged in safeguarding it. Every moment of their lives is spent in the remembrance of God and they do not want to be separated from His remembrance for even a single moment.

It is evident that man strives arduously and consistently, fully and all the time, to safeguard and protect only such a thing in whose loss he envisages his own ruin and destruction. For example, a wayfarer traveling through a barren wilderness, wherein there is no hope of finding water or food for hundreds of miles, will guard his belongings of food and water as dearly as his own life, for he knows that losing them would mean death for him. Thus, the people who safeguard their Prayers with the same care, and do not abandon them even if it means the loss of possessions or honour or even incurring someone’s ire, and are anxious lest they miss their Prayers so that they all but die for the sake of Prayer and cannot for a moment bear to be oblivious to the remembrance of God, such are the people who in fact consider worship and remembrance of God to be the essential nourishment on which their life depends.

This state comes about when God loves them and a burning flame of His love—which can be called the spirit for their spiritual being—descends upon their hearts and gives them a second life. This spirit brings light and life to their entire spiritual being. In this state

---

1. *Sūrah al-Muʾīnūn*, 23:10 [Publisher]
their devotion to the remembrance of God is not out of artificiality or pretence; but rather God, who has made the physical being of man dependent on food and water, links their spiritual life, which is so dear to them, to the food of His remembrance. Hence, they love this food more than they love physical food and water, and are fearful lest they lose it. All this is the result of the spirit that is put into them like a flame, which inebriates them with the love of God’s love. Therefore, they do not wish to be separated from His remembrance even for a single moment.

They suffer and face misfortunes, but do not wish to part from it even for a single moment. They keep an eye on their self, and protect and watch over their Prayers. And all this comes naturally to them, for God has made the sustenance of His loving remembrance—which is called Prayer in other words—essential for them, and by inspiring them with His personal love has bestowed on them an exquisite pleasure in His remembrance. And so God’s remembrance becomes as dear to them as their own life—nay, even dearer than their own life. Their personal love for God is the new spirit that descends on their hearts like a flame and makes their prayers and remembrance like unto sustenance for them. Therefore, they believe firmly that their lives are dependent, not on water and bread, but on Prayer and remembrance of Allah.

Thus the much-loved remembrance of Allah, which is called Prayer, becomes their true sustenance without which they cannot survive at all. They protect and keep guard over it just as a traveller in a barren and waterless wasteland watches over his belongings of the few pieces of bread, and treasures the meagre amount of water in his sheepskin as life itself.

God the Supreme Bestower has decreed this stage also for the spiritual progress of man, and it is the last stage of the prevalence and predominance of personal love and adulation. And in reality at this stage the love-filled remembrance of God—which, in the terminology of the Shariah [Islamic Law], is called the Prayer—takes the place of food. Indeed, time and again he wishes to sacrifice his own physical
being for the sake of this sustenance, without which he cannot live, just as a fish cannot live without water, and he considers even a moment of separation from God as his death. His soul remains ever prostrate upon the threshold of God, all his comfort lies in God, and he is certain that if he were to be separated from the remembrance of God even for the blinking of an eye, it would be the end of him.

Just as food rejuvenates the body and grants vigour to the eyes, ears, and other faculties, in the same way, at this stage, the remembrance of God Almighty—that is inspired by the fervour of love and adoration—helps to sharpen one's spiritual faculties. The eyes are thus blessed with very clear and subtle visionary powers, and the ears are able to hear discourse of God Almighty, and those discourses flow through one's tongue with great purity, clarity, and exquisiteness, and one also continuously experiences true dreams,¹ which come true as clearly as the breaking of dawn.

By virtue of the relationship of pure love which they have with

---

¹ Many ignorant people are under the delusion that since they, too, at times experience true dreams and have a true revelation, then what is the distinction between them and these exalted people, and what superiority do they enjoy? The answer is that the faculty of experiencing true dreams or revelations is granted to common people only to a degree in order for them to have a specimen of the subtle phenomena that transcend this world, so that they may not be deprived of accepting them, and the argument may be completed against them. Otherwise, if the people had been completely ignorant of the concept of revelation or true dreams, they would perforce reject them and could not be held fully answerable in this regard. So while the philosophers of today deny the existence of true dreams and revelations even when they can see their specimen, then what would have become of common people if they had experienced no specimen of the kind at all. And the fact that many people occasionally have true dreams and experience true revelation does not take anything away from the glory of the Messengers and the Prophets, because the dreams and revelations of the common people are not free from the haze of doubt and ambiguity, and also are not as numerous. Just as a destitute person who has a penny cannot say that he too has money and is therefore at par with the king on account of that penny, so also is it foolish to claim equality in the case described above. (Author)
The Lord of Honour, they are granted many dreams that bear glad tidings. This is the stage where the believer feels that the love of God acts for him like bread and water. This new birth takes place when the spiritual body is already fully developed. It is then that the spirit, which is a flame of God's personal love, descends upon the heart of such a believer, when all of a sudden a power from on high carries him far and above his station of humanity. This is the stage which, in spiritual terms, is called *Khalq-e-Ākhar* ['Another Creation'].

At this stage God Almighty causes a burning flame of His love—which in other words is called the ‘Spirit’—to descend upon the believer’s heart, and removes all his darkness, impurities, and shortcomings. As soon as the Spirit is breathed into him, the beauty that was hitherto at a lower level now reaches its climax. It creates a spiritual radiance and at the same time removes the uncleanness of evil life. The believer now feels that a new spirit has entered him that was not present before, and with its coming he experiences a wonderful serenity and contentment. And the personal love of God gushes forth like a fountain and irrigates the plant of servitude. The fire that had till then produced little heat, begins to burn in full flame at this stage, and consumes all the filth of the human self, and hands over its control to God. The fire encompasses all the organs, and he becomes like the iron rod that is heated by the fire to such a degree that it turns red, indistinguishable from the fire itself.

Such a believer begins to show signs and characteristics of Divinity, just as the iron rod at this stage exhibits the qualities and effects of fire. But this does not mean that the believer has become God. The fact is that love of Allah has the quality of transforming the outward human self into its own form, while inwardly there still remains the inherent human frailty. At this stage, for the believer, God is the bread upon which depends his life, and God also becomes the water by drinking which he can save himself from death, and God is also for him the cool breeze that brings solace to his heart.
Hence, it would not be improper to say, by way of metaphor, that God at this stage enters into the believer and penetrates into his every fibre, making his heart into His throne. So the believer does not see by his own spirit but rather he sees by the Spirit of God, and it is by His Spirit that he hears and speaks and attacks his enemies. This is so because he is at this stage at the station of self-annihilation and destruction of his own being, and the Spirit of God manifests itself upon him with His personal love and grants him a second life. This is the moment that he becomes the spiritual embodiment of the verse:


This then is the sixth stage of the spiritual being that I have described above. Corresponding to this is the sixth stage of the physical being, and it is described by the same verse cited above with reference to the spiritual being:


It means: ‘Having created him once, We developed man into another creation.’ The word ‘another’ is meant to convey that this birth is so unfathomable as to be beyond the confines of human intelligence and very far from his understanding. In other words, the spirit that is infused into the body after its completion, both in a spiritual and physical sense, is so profound that all the philosophers and materialists are left to wonder about its nature. When they could not find their way to the reality, they started speculating. Some went so far as to deny the existence of the soul altogether, while others declared it to be eternal and uncreated. What Allah the Exalted says here is that the ‘spirit’ is also a creation of God, but it is beyond worldly comprehension and

1. Then We developed it into another creation. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (Surah al-Mu‘minun, 23:15). [Publisher]
just as the philosophers of this world are unaware of the spirit that is bestowed by God upon the physical human form at the sixth stage of its being, so are they devoid of the knowledge of the spirit that the true believer is granted at the sixth stage of his spiritual being and they have adopted varying creeds in this regard as well. Many started to worship the people who had been bestowed this spirit and declared them to be eternal and uncreated and deified them. And many denied the very existence of people who reach this stage, and refused to believe that man is even granted such a spirit.

But an intelligent person will readily understand that as man is the best of creation, and as God has—by granting him eminence over all birds and beasts of the earth, and by bestowing upon him mastery over all of them, and by having granted him intelligence and understanding, and having infused him with a thirst for gaining His cognizance—shown that man was created for the purpose of loving God. Why then should it be denied that having reached the stage of personal love with God Almighty, he should also progress to such a stage that God’s love falling upon his love in the form of a Spirit should remove all his weaknesses? As regards the sixth stage of the spiritual being, Allah the Exalted has said:

\[1\text{ And who are strict in the observance of their Prayers (Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:10). [Publisher]}\]

Accordingly, man should demonstrate eternal obedience and earnest supplication and servitude so that in this way he may fulfil the purpose of his creation, as Allah the Exalted says:

\[2\text{ Sūrah adh-Dhāriyāt, 51:57 [Publisher]}\]
Meaning: ‘I have created men and the jinn for the very purpose of worship.’

Of course, such worship and constant presence before the Lord of Honour is not possible without personal love for Him. And by love here is not meant a one-sided affair; rather, what is meant is both the love of the Creator and the love of creation so that the fire of lighten-ing that falls upon the man who is ready to die and which also emanates from within such a man at such a time, should burn all human weaknesses, and joining together, they should take control of his whole spiritual being.

This is that perfect way in which man can, completely and at each and every appropriate occasion, fulfil his trusts and pledges that I have outlined while describing the fifth stage of the spiritual being. The only difference is that while at the fifth stage man fulfils his obligations and pledges to God and His creatures out of taqwā [righteousness], at this stage he does so on account of the personal love that he has now developed for God, and which has also evoked in him the love of the creatures of God.

Such people fulfil all their obligations naturally and in the most becoming manner due to the Spirit that God has bestowed upon them. They are thus granted spiritual beauty—which is akin to man’s physical beauty—to a greater extent, because at the fifth stage the Spirit which is born out of personal love for God has not yet entered man, and so the beauty is not manifested to the fullest extent. But once the Spirit has entered the being, the beauty reaches its climax. It goes without saying that the splendour of beauty manifested by a dead body cannot equal that manifested by a handsome living being.

As I have already stated, man possesses two-fold beauty: One, the beauty of conduct; that is to say, that a man in the discharge of all the trusts and covenants of God should be careful not to overlook anything connected with them, as suggested by the expression رَعُوْنَ [rā‘ūn—‘watchful’] in the Holy Quran. It is equally important that man remain vigilant about fulfilling his trusts and pledges to God’s creatures. In short, he
should abide by *taqwā* in fulfilling his obligations to God and His creatures. This is the beauty of conduct or spiritual beauty which becomes apparent at the fifth stage of the spiritual being but does not yet show its full brilliance, whereas at the sixth stage when the birth has been perfected with the infusion of the Spirit, this beauty manifests itself in all its splendour and glory. And it should be remembered that in the sixth stage of the spiritual being, the Spirit refers to God's personal love which descends like a flame upon man's personal love for Him, and drives away all inner darkness, and grants spiritual life, and is necessarily accompanied by all-encompassing help from the Holy Spirit also.

The second kind of beauty that attends man's creation is physical beauty. Although both kinds of beauty begin to manifest themselves at the fifth stage of the spiritual and physical being, their true splendour and glory is only manifested after the advent of the Spirit. In the same way, as the soul enters the physical body after it has been perfected, so does the Spirit enter the spiritual being after it has been perfected; that is to say, when man takes upon himself the yoke of the Shariah and is prepared to abide by all the divine restrictions and prohibitions with effort and striving. Through practicing the norms of the Shariah and abiding by the injunctions of the Book of Allah, he becomes worthy that the Spirit of God should attend to him. But above all is the fact that through his personal love for God he becomes eligible for Almighty God's personal love, which is white as snow and sweet as honey.

As I have already stated, the spiritual being starts with the state of humbleness, and reaches its perfection at the sixth stage of spiritual development; that is, at the stage when the spiritual body having attained perfection, the flame of the personal love of God falls like a Spirit on man's heart imparting to him a perpetual consciousness of the Divine Presence. It is then that the spiritual beauty shows its fullest manifestation, but this beauty which is spiritual—which may be called the beauty of conduct—is the beauty which, by virtue of its strong powers of attraction, is far greater than the physical beauty of a person.

The physical beauty of a person may excite the ephemeral love
of, say, one or two persons, and will soon decline; its attraction being extremely weak. But the spiritual beauty which has been called the beauty of conduct is so strong and powerful in its attraction that it draws an entire world to itself—and every particle of heaven and earth is drawn towards it. This is also, in reality, the philosophy behind the acceptance of prayers; that is to say, when a man possessed of such spiritual beauty, into whom the spirit of the love of God has entered, prays for some impossible or extremely difficult matter, and exerts himself so completely in that prayer, then, as his being is equipped with spiritual beauty, so, by God’s permission and by His command, every particle of the universe, is drawn towards him, and there come into being such means as are sufficient to ensure his success.

Experience and the Holy Book of God Almighty confirm that every single particle of the world has a natural relation of deep love with such a person, and his prayers draw all those particles towards him, as a magnet draws a piece of iron to itself. So it is that extraordinary phenomena—that find no mention in science or philosophy—come about as a consequence of this attraction. And this attraction is natural and inherent: Ever since the All-Powerful Creator designed the material world with particles, He has placed in each particle this attraction, and every particle is a true lover of spiritual beauty as is every blessed soul. This is so because it is through spiritual beauty that the manifestation of God takes place. It was regarding the same spiritual beauty that God said:

\[\text{اسْجُدُوْا} \quad \\ \text{لِإِدَّمَ} \quad \\ \text{آِبْلَيْسِ} 1\]

And even today there is many an Iblis that does not recognize this spiritual beauty, but it continues to perform great feats.

**Nūḥ** [Noah] possessed this very beauty, and for its sake the Lord of Honour and Glory destroyed all the disbelievers with the calamity

---

1. ‘Submit to Adam,’ and they all submitted except Iblīs (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:35). [Publisher]
of the deluge. Then, after this, Mūsā [Moses] also came with the same spiritual beauty, and after a period of suffering lasting a few days, it led to the downfall of Pharaoh. And then at long last came the Lord of the Prophets, the Best of Creation, our lord and master, the Chosen One, Muḥammad, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, with the sublime spiritual beauty of the highest grandeur, in whose praise it would be enough to quote the noble verse:

That is to say, that Prophet drew very near to the Presence of Allah, and then he leaned towards the creation, and thus fulfilled both the obligations; viz. obligations to God and to His creation, and manifested both kinds of spiritual beauty. He became like the chord between two bows; that is to say, like the central line between two arcs that would look something like this:

The inherently impure and blind people, however, failed to see this beauty, as Allah the Exalted, says:

Meaning: ‘They look towards you but they see you not’, and in the end all those blind ones were destroyed.

1. Sūrah an-Najm, 53:9–10 [Publisher]
2. Sūrah al-ʿArāf, 7:199 [Publisher]
At this point some ignorant people state, ‘Why are some prayers of the perfectly righteous people not accepted? The answer to this is that it lies in the hands of God Almighty to manifest their beauty, so that whenever this grand manifestation occurs, and their beauty comes into play for a specific purpose and reveals its brilliance, the particles of the universe are drawn towards it and the impossible comes to be. This is what, in other words, is called a miracle. But this spiritual zeal is not aroused at all times and on every occasion, for it is dependent on external stimuli. This is so because just as the Benevolent God is Independent in His Person and free from every want or need, so has He endowed His chosen ones with the same attribute of total independence. So, being totally independent, like God, their power is not roused unless someone appeals to them for mercy through perfect humility and sincerity. What is even more wonderful is that such people are endowed the attribute of mercy more than the rest of the world put together, yet its exercise is not in their own power. Even though they may desire for that power to be manifested again and again, it is not displayed except by the will of God. They particularly have very little regard for disbelievers, hypocrites, and the weak of faith, and consider them to be like a dead insect. Their independence and freedom from any want or need possesses a grandeur and dignity like a beloved of profound beauty whose face is kept concealed behind a veil.

Another aspect of their independence is that when some evil person thinks ill of them, they sometimes, through their zealous sense of independence, cause such a one to become even more firm in his ill thoughts, because of their خلق باخلق الله [mirroring the attributes of God]. As Allah the Almighty says:

1. In their hearts was a disease, and Allah has increased their disease to them (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:11). [Publisher]
When God Almighty wills that a miracle should be manifested by them, He creates a passion in their hearts and inspires their hearts with the greatest longing and craving for the attainment of a certain objective, then it is that they remove the veil of independence from their countenance, and that beauty of theirs, which is not visible to anyone except God, manifests itself upon the angels of Heaven and upon each and every particle.

Their removing the veil from their countenance means that with their perfect sincerity and purity and spiritual beauty—on account of which they have become God’s beloved—they turn to Him in such an extraordinary manner, and such a condition of absorbing godly influences is created in them that it draws His extraordinary mercy towards them and with it, each and every particle of the world is also drawn towards them. The intensity of their ardour of love gathers together in Heaven and manifests its countenance to the angels like unto clouds, and their anguish which has the quality of lightening within itself causes a great clamour in the upper echelons of Heaven. It is then that, by the power of God Almighty, those clouds come into being that shower the rain of mercy of God Almighty that they desire. When their spirituality turns its attention—with its full and fervent anguish—to resolve some difficult issue, it draws the attention of God Almighty to itself.

Since these people have a personal love for God, they are counted among His loved ones and so everything under the dominion of God, is moved with great zeal to help them\(^1\), and—simply to fulfil their desire—the mercy of God Almighty readies to bring about a whole

---

1. The disbelievers and enemies also help them in a way because their excesses and persecution causes pain to their hearts and arouse their spiritual fervour. [As is said]:

تَأَدَّلْ مَرْدُ خَدَا تَا مَدُّ بَدِّرْ_

بَیْحٌ قَوْمِهِ رَأَ خَدَا رَسُوْا نَهَ كُرْد

*Until the heart of a man of God is filled with pain and sorrow,*

*God does not humiliate a people.*

(Author)
new creation. Such things come to pass that seem impossible in the eyes of the world, regarding which the worldly sciences are completely unaware. We cannot say that such people are God, but such is the sincerity and purity of their friendship and love for God that it seems as if God has descended upon them.

Like Adam, the divine Spirit is breathed into them. It is not that they are God, but their relationship to Him is akin to the iron which, when placed in fire, takes on a fiery hue. Thus, all that falls under God's command comes under their command. The stars of heaven, the sun, the moon, the oceans of the earth, wind, fire—all things hearken unto their voice and recognize them, remaining occupied in serving them. All things naturally and intrinsically love them and are drawn to them in the manner of a true and sincere lover, with the exception of the evil ones who are manifestations of Satan.

Worldly love is an ill-fated affair that sprouts and soon withers away. Moreover, it is based on a beauty that is bound to decline and, furthermore, there are very few indeed who come under its sway. On the other hand, the spiritual beauty that is generated in man through the beauty of conduct, sincerity, purity, and manifestation of the love of Allah, is such that it has universal appeal and draws willing hearts towards itself, just as honey attracts ants; so much so, that not just people but every particle of the universe is affected by this attraction. The man who is true in his love, whose love for God Almighty is true, is like that Yūsuf for whom every particle of the universe is like Zulaikhā. His beauty is not yet manifested in this world for this world cannot bear it. God Almighty says in His Holy Book—the Glorious Furqān—that the light of the believers is manifested on their faces and the believers are recognized by this beauty which, in other words, is called nūr ['light'].

And once, while in a state of vision, I was made to hear this apt phrase in the Punjabi language about this very hallmark of the believers [‘The love of Allah rains down upon their face; this is the hallmark of the friends of God’].

The light of the believer which is mentioned in the Holy Quran is
the very spiritual beauty and charm that is granted to a believer in the perfect degree at the sixth stage of the spiritual being. Physical beauty may have a handful of seekers, but this is a wonderful beauty that is sought by millions of souls. It is in the context of this very beauty that someone has written this eulogy about Sayyed ‘Abdul-Qâdir Jilânî, may Allah be pleased with him, describing him as extremely beautiful and handsome. These verses are as follows:

آن ترک گم یہون زیبیتی عشق طرب کرد، نارت گر سین کور و بغداد و علم کرد

That foreign sage when he became inebriated with the wine of love, He stole the hearts of Kûfâ, Baghdad, and Ḥalab.

سما لال زیب با عبید گلی فرمی تانان تم مار زر قم کرد چپ کرد

There were hundreds of faces as beautiful as flowers, He surpassed them all—such wonders did he work!

And Shaikh Sa‘âdî, may Allah shower His mercy upon him, has also

1. ☀ There is sometimes an inherent kinship between two persons. This is the case between my soul and the soul of Sayyed ‘Abdul-Qâdir that have a natural affinity with each other, and I was apprised of this through clear and true visions. One night, about thirty years ago, God informed me that He had chosen me for Himself. And, strangely enough, an old lady who was about 80 years old had a dream the same night and she came and related it to me in the morning. She said that she had seen Sayyed ‘Abdul-Qâdir Jilânî, may Allah be pleased with him, that night along with another saintly person and they were both clad in green, and it was the latter part of the night. The other saintly person was a little younger than him. They both first offered Prayer in the main mosque and then came out into the mosque's courtyard and I [the old lady] was standing beside them. A bright star then appeared from the east, and its sight gladdened Sayyed ‘Abdul-Qâdir very much and he addressed it in the words, 'May peace be upon you!' and likewise, his companion too said, 'May peace be upon you!'—This star was myself. [As has been said:] [‘Sometimes it is the believer who sees, at other times, something is shown to others for the believer.’] (Author)
said a couplet regarding this that very aptly applies to spiritual beauty. It is the following:

صورة گز دریابے چین روح چنی بین یا صورت گز یارش ہیں

O silk painter of China! Go and look at that beautiful face—
Then either portray a face like it or abandon your art.

Now, it should also be remembered that a servant [of Allah] displays his sincere love for God by his good conduct, but God’s response is astonishing indeed. In response to the rapid advance of the servant, God rushes towards him like lightning and displays Signs for him on earth and in heaven and becomes the Friend of His friends and the Enemy of His enemies. Even if 500 million people oppose him God humiliates them and makes them abject and helpless like a lifeless insect. He destroys a whole world for the sake of that one person and makes His earth and heaven the servants of such a one. He blesses his words and sends down a rain of light upon his dwelling. He places blessings in his clothes and his food, and even in the dust upon which he treads. He does not let him die as a failure and Himself answers all objections raised against him. He becomes his eyes with which he sees, and becomes his ears with which he hears, and becomes his tongue with which he speaks, and becomes his feet with which he walks, and becomes his hands with which he attacks his enemies. He personally takes on the enemies of His friend, draws His sword against the wicked ones who persecute him, and makes him victorious in every battlefield. He conveys to him the secrets of His decrees. In short, God is the very first Purchaser of his spiritual beauty and grace, which results from his good behaviour and personal love. Then, how unfortunate are the people who live during such an age while such a Sun should rise among them, yet they remain sitting in darkness!

Some ignorant people again and again put forward the objection that the sign that distinguishes the beloveds of God is that each and every prayer of theirs is heard and answered and that he who lacks this
power is not of the beloveds of God.\(^1\) But, it is a pity that, while these people utter such things, they do not realize that such senseless objections make all the Prophets and Messengers of God their target. For example, every Prophet longed that all the disbelievers of their time who opposed them should become Muslims but this wish of theirs was never fulfilled; so much so, that Allah the Exalted, addressing our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, said:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{مُؤْمِنِيْنَ يَكُوْنُوْا الَّا نَّفْسَكَ بَاخِعٌ لَعَلَّكَ\\
\end{align*}
\]

That is: ‘Will you grieve yourself to death why these people do not believe?’

This verse shows that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, prayed with such fervour and pathos that the

\[1. \text{\star} \text{ Remember that Almighty God’s relationship with the believer is one of friendship, and desires sometime to fulfil the believer’s wish and at other times He desires that the believer be content upon His will. So in one instance He addresses the believers and says:} \]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{اِذَاۤ الَّذِيْنَ الصّٰبِرِيْنَ بَشِّرِوَ ١ؕالثَّمَرٰتِوَ الْاَنْفُسِوَ الْاَمْوَالِ مِّّنَ نَقْصٍ وَ الْجُوْعِوَ الْخَوْفِ مِّّنَ بِشَيْءٍ لَنَبْلُوَنَّكُمْ وَ رٰجِعُوْنَ اِلَيْهِ اِنَّاۤوَ لِلّٰهِ اِنَّا قَالُوْۤا ١ۙمُّصِيْبَةٌ اَصَابَتْهُمْ} \\
\end{align*}
\]

[And We will try you with something of fear and hunger, and loss of wealth and lives, and fruits; but give glad tidings to the patient, who, when a misfortune overtakes them, say, ‘Surely, to Allah we belong and to Him shall we return.’ (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:156–157)]

It is a pity that the ignorant only look at one side of things and not the other.

\[2. \text{Sūrah ash-Shu‘ārā\textsuperscript{a}; 26:4 [Publisher]}
\]
disbelievers should believe, that it was feared lest the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, should himself die on account of this grief. This is why Allah the Exalted said to him not to grieve so much for these people and not to subject his heart to anguish to such a degree because those people were unmindful about believing and their aims and objectives were different. In this verse, Allah the Almighty has pointed out that: ‘O Prophet (may peace be upon him)! You pray for the guidance of these people with such determination, complete concentration, pathos, and putting your soul in hardship, that there is nothing lacking for the efficacy of your prayers. However, the prerequisite for the acceptance of a prayer is that the person for whom the prayer is made should not be overly biased, heedless, and evil-natured; in such cases, the prayer will not be accepted.

So far as God Almighty has bestowed upon me the knowledge of prayer, it is that there are three conditions for the acceptance of prayer.

[1] **FIRST**, the supplicant should be righteous to the perfect degree, for only he is acceptable of God Almighty whose characteristic is righteousness and who has grasped firmly the subtle paths of righteousness and who is a favourite of God on account of being trustworthy, pious, and true to his pledge; and who is replete and filled with the personal love of God.

[2] **THE SECOND** condition is that his resolve and attention should be of such calibre as though, to revive one person, he himself perishes and—to pull one person out of a grave—he himself enters the grave. The secret to this is that His elect are dearer to God than a handsome child—who is also the only child—is dear to its mother. Thus, when God, the Benevolent and Merciful, observes that an elect and beloved of His has reached the brink of death with spiritual labours, humble supplications, and striving, in an effort to save the life of one individual, He disapproves that he be destroyed in that state on account of His relation of love. Then, for his sake, He forgives the sin for which the other person had been seized. Therefore, if he is afflicted with a fatal disease or is overwhelmed and trapped in some calamity, then, by His
power, He creates means for his deliverance. Oftentimes He is resolved to definitely destroy or ruin a person, but through the good luck of the afflicted, someone who has a good standing before God intervenes with his earnest supplications so that the record of the case that had been completed and formulated for his chastisement, has to be torn up for the matter is now transformed, dealing with a beloved rather than a stranger. How is it possible that God would inflict torment on His sincere friends?

(3) The third condition for the acceptance of prayer is more difficult than all the conditions, inasmuch as compliance with it is not in the hands of those who are accepted of God, but is in the hands of the person who desires the supplication to be made. And it is that he should be desirous of supplication with the utmost sincerity, perfect trust, perfect certainty, perfect devotion, and perfect subservience. He should resolve in his heart that even if the supplication is not accepted, his trust and devotion would not falter. The request for supplication should not be by way of a test; rather, it should proceed from a sincere conviction.

He should fall most humbly at the door of his [the person from whom he is seeking supplication] and, so far as is possible for him, he should establish such nearness to him—with money, with service, and with obedience of every kind—so as to make a place for himself in his heart. Along with all this, he should think well of him to the extreme and should esteem him as being pious of the highest degree and should regard it blasphemy to entertain even a single thought inconsistent with his holy stature. He should prove and show to him his sincere belief in him through varied sacrifices of this nature. He should not regard anyone in the world as his equal and should be ready to lay down his life, his property, and his honour for him and should neither utter nor let his heart entertain anything derogatory of him in any way. He should establish it to his satisfaction that he is, indeed, such a believer and follower. With all this, he should wait with patience and even if he should fail fifty times in his objective, he should not slacken in his
devotion and trust. The reason is that such people have exquisitely acute sensibilities and their perspicacity can recognize the degree of a person’s sincerity from one’s countenance. These people are tender-hearted, yet they are exceedingly independent. Their hearts have been created so self-subsisting by God that they do not care the least for the arrogant, the selfish, and the hypocritical-natured person. Only those derive any benefit from these people who obey them to a degree where they are ready to lay down their lives for them. A person who thinks ill of them at every step and harbours any objection in his heart and does not have total love and devotion, derives no benefit from them and only ruins himself.

After this discourse let me add that the manner in which Allah the Almighty has—having described the six stages of a believer’s spiritual development—compared them to the six stages of the physical development is a miracle of knowledge. None of the numerous books in the world that are called divine or those written by philosophers on soul and theology, or those who have written about insights in the manner of the Sufis, have taken the lead in showing this similarity between the physical and spiritual being. If anyone refutes this claim of mine and thinks that someone else has also demonstrated this similarity between the spiritual and the physical, it is incumbent upon him to produce the like of this miracle of knowledge from any other book.

I have studied the Torah and the Gospels—as well as the Vedas of the Hindus—but I say absolutely truly that I have never encountered this kind of miracle of knowledge in any book except the Holy Quran. It is not limited to just this one miracle. The entire Holy Quran is full of such intellectual miracles, such that an intelligent person, by casting a glance at them, can realize that it is the Word of the All-Powerful God whose powers are manifest throughout the creations within the heaven and earth—the same God who is Unique and Peerless in His words and works.

Moreover, when—on the one hand—we find such miracles in the Holy Quran and—on the other hand—look at the unlettered state
of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, that he did not learn even a single word from any teacher, nor did he acquire any knowledge of the sciences or philosophy; rather, he was born among a people all of whom were unlettered and uninitiated to learning and who lived a barbaric existence; and, besides this, he did not have occasion of parental instruction—all these facts put together give us a clear insight into the divine origin of the Holy Quran, and we are convinced that it is indeed a miracle of knowledge, so much so that by beholding this Book we virtually behold God. Since it is clearly evident that these verses of Sūrah al-Mu’minūn from the beginning to the verse:

\[ \text{تَبَارَكَ} \]

are a miracle of knowledge, there can be no doubt that this verse:

\[ \text{تَبَارَكَ} \]

is a part of that miracle of knowledge, and thus, being one component of a miracle, is to be counted as a miracle. And this is what I intended to prove.

Bear in mind that the aforementioned miracle of knowledge is such a clear, open, luminous, and evident truth that even reason is now eager to add it to its rational sciences with great pride after the guidance and emphasis by the Word of God Almighty.

It stands to reason that the first act [movement] that develops in the heart of a pure-natured person, in his quest for God Almighty, is in the form of khushū’ [meekness] and humbleness. Khushū’ implies that meekness, servitude, and humility be adopted for the sake of God and all the evil traits that are opposed to this, such as arrogance, conceit,

1. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15). [Publisher]
ostentation, heedlessness, and indifference be eschewed for the fear of God.

And it is evident that unless man shuns the baser attributes, he cannot adopt the higher morals that stand in contrast to them and are the means to reaching God because two opposites cannot coexist in one heart. This is what God alludes to in the Holy Quran as He says at the beginning of \textit{Sūrah al-Baqarah}:

\begin{quote}
\textit{هُدًى لِّلْمُتَّقِيْنَ۠}
\end{quote}

\begin{flushright}
\text{Meaning: ‘The Holy Quran is a guidance for those who are \textit{muttaqīn} [‘righteous’].’ In other words, those who are not arrogant and reflect upon the Word of God Almighty with \textit{khushūʿ} and humility, are the ones who ultimately find guidance.}
\end{flushright}

It should also be kept in mind here that the word \textit{اَفْلَحَ} [\textit{afla-ha}—‘succeeded’] occurs six times in these verses. Its use is explicit in the first verse:

\begin{quote}
\textit{خٰشِعُوْنَ صَلَاتِهِمْ فِيْ هُمْ الَّذِيْنَ الْمُؤْمِنُوْنَ اَفْلَحَ قَدْ}
\end{quote}

\begin{flushright}
\text{and in others it is conjunctive. The dictionary meaning of \textit{اَفْلَحَ} [\textit{afla-ha}] is \textit{اُصِیْرَ اِلَی الفَلَحِ} meaning, ‘One was turned towards his object of success and made to move towards it.’ Thus, according to this meaning, a believer’s adoption of humility in his Prayer is the first movement towards achieving his objective, an act that involves the abandonment of pride and conceit. The attainment of the objective of success thereby}
\end{flushright}

\begin{flushright}
\text{1. \textit{Sūrah al-Baqarah}, 2:3 [Publisher]}
\end{flushright}

\begin{flushright}
\text{2. The reference is to the opening verses of \textit{Sūrah al-Mu’minūn}, the twenty-third chapter of the Holy Quran. [Publisher]}
\end{flushright}

\begin{flushright}
\text{3. ‘Surely, success does come to the believers, who are humble in their Prayers’ (\textit{Sūrah al-Mu’minūn}, 23:2–3). [Publisher]}
\end{flushright}
is that the self, adopting the attitude of humbleness, becomes ready and prepared to establish a connection with God.

The second task of the believer according to sound reason—the task by which the strength of faith reaches the second stage and faith becomes somewhat stronger than before—is that the believer should purge his mind, which has reached the stage of humility, of vain thoughts and vain pursuits. Until a believer acquires, for the sake of God, the minimal strength to abandon vain thoughts and vain pursuits—which is not very difficult at all and which is nothing but indulgence without enjoyment—it would be a false hope to expect that the believer could turn away from such pursuits withdrawing from which weighs very heavy upon the carnal self, and the carnal self has some benefit or pleasure in indulging in them.

Therefore, it proves that after the first stage which is renunciation of arrogance, the next stage is the renunciation of all that is vain. At this stage the promise that is made with the word اَفْلَحَ [aflaha]—that is, the achievement of the object of success—is fulfilled in that, when the bond of the believer with vain pursuits and vain pastimes is severed, a feeble bond is established with God Almighty and the strength of faith also becomes greater than before. I have called it a feeble bond because the bond with vain pursuits is also feeble. Thus, a feeble bond is obtained upon discarding a feeble bond.

Then the third act of the believer, according to sound reasoning, by which the strength of faith reaches the third stage, is that he not only shuns vain pursuits and vain matters for the sake of God Almighty, but he also relinquishes his valued possessions for the sake of God. And it is obvious that parting with wealth is a greater sacrifice for the carnal self than giving up vain pursuits, as wealth is earned with labour and is something useful on which depends pleasant living and comfort. Therefore, renunciation of wealth for the sake of God requires more of the strength of faith than the renunciation of vain pursuits. And the promise in the word اَفْلَحَ [aflaha] implied in these verses would here mean that the strength of faith and connection with God in this
stage becomes greater than the second stage, and the purity of the self is engendered by it; for, to give away wealth earned with one's hard labour, merely out of a fear of God, is not possible without the purity of the self.

Then, the fourth act of a believer—which carries the strength of faith to fourth stage—according to sound reason is that he not only renounces wealth for the sake of God, but he also renounces the part which is unlawful of what he loves more even than wealth; namely, his carnal passions. I have stated that everyone naturally values his carnal pleasures more than wealth, and one sacrifices wealth for their pursuit. So, renouncing carnal desire for the sake of God is much more difficult than renouncing wealth. And the word اَفْلَحَ [afla] which applies to this verse as well, here means that just as a man naturally has a closer tie with carnal desires, so—after he renounces them—a corresponding closer tie develops with God Almighty, for whosoever loses a thing for the sake of God, he finds something better in its place.

His grace does not forsake the seekers;
In His path no one suffers loss.

Whoever seeks this path, finds it;
Bright becomes the face that does not turn away from Him.

Then, the fifth act of a believer—which carries the strength of the faith to the fifth stage—according to reason is that he should renounce not only carnal desires but should renounce the very self for the sake of God and be ready to sacrifice it. That is to say, the self which is a trust from God should be returned to the same Owner and that he should consider his relationship with his self limited just like the ownership of a trust. He should fulfil the demands of righteousness in a manner as
if he has dedicated his self,\(^1\) his wealth, and all things to God. This is what is indicated in the verse:

\[
\text{ودَ آَلِينَ هُمْ أَئِلُبُبٓهُمْ وَعُمِّلْهُمْ رَعْوَنُنَّ}
\]

Since a person’s life and wealth and all kinds of amenities are trusts committed to him by God, the rendering back of which is obligatory on the trustee, therefore, the renunciation of the self etc. means that he should offer this sacrifice by dedicating this endowment in the path of God Almighty. Secondly, he should fulfil all of his pledges—his pledge with God Almighty at the time when he believed in God and all the pledges and trusts of [God’s] creations which he bears—in such a manner, with due regard to righteousness, that it also becomes true sacrifice, inasmuch as the complete fulfilment of all aspects of righteousness also amounts to a type of death. And the word اَفْلَحَ [aflaha], which is also applicable to this verse, here means that when a believer of this stature spends his life in the cause of God and carries into effect all aspects of righteousness, lights from the Majesty of Allah envelop his being and invest him with spiritual beauty, as the flesh beautifies bones by clothing them. As I have stated, both these conditions have been described by God Almighty as garments. Righteousness, too, has been described as a garment, as Allah says:

\[
\text{ليَسَ الْأَفْلَحِينَ}
\]

---

1. \(^\star\) Just as one’s self is a trust from God Almighty, so are one’s possessions a trust from God Almighty. One who only gives Zakāt out of his wealth considers the wealth to be his own, whereas one who considers his wealth to be a trust from God Almighty knows that it all belongs to Him. He, therefore, gives away in His cause all the time, even if no Zakāt is incumbent on him. (Author)

2. And who are watchful of their trusts and their covenants (Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:9). [Publisher]

3. Raiment of righteousness (Sūrah al-’A’raf, 7:27) [Publisher]
The flesh with which the bones are clothed is also a garment, as Allah the Almighty says:

\[
\text{قُلْ لَحْمًا الْعِظَّامَ فَكَسَوْنَا}
\]

This is because ت [kiswah], from which كَسَوْنَا [kasaunā] is derived, means garment too.

Now, it should be remembered that the fifth stage is the highest stage of the spiritual journey. When the fifth stage reaches its perfection, it is followed by the sixth stage, which is by way of a pure bounty, and is bestowed upon the believer without effort or toil; and his effort does not have the least involvement in it. And it is that, as the believer annihilates his soul in the path of God, he is granted a new soul. Since it is the eternal promise that whatever one will lose in the path of God, one shall find the like thereof. Therefore, those who lose a soul, find a soul. In the same way, since a believer dedicates his life to the cause of God out of his personal love, he is honoured with the Spirit of God’s personal love which is accompanied by the Holy Spirit. God’s personal love is a Spirit and works as a soul within the believer and thus it is itself a soul and the Holy Spirit is not something apart from it. There cannot be any separation between that love and the Holy Spirit. That is why we have mostly mentioned only God’s personal love without the mention of the Holy Spirit, inasmuch the existence of one essentially warrants the existence of the other.

When this Spirit descends upon a believer, all the weight of worship ceases to be a burden, and he is invested with such strength and pleasure that it prompts him to worship and remember God out of the natural urge and not through formal effort, and bestows upon him the passion of love. Such a believer perpetually stands at the threshold of God, like the angel Gabriel, may peace be upon him; and he is granted

---

1. Then We clothed the bones with flesh (Sūrah al-Mu’mīnūn, 23:15). [Publisher]
permanent nearness of the Lord of Honour, as Allah the Almighty has said about this stage:

\[\text{۱. سُرَةَ الْمُؤْمِن} {\text{۲۳:۱۰}} \text{[Publisher]}\]

Meaning that the perfect believers are those who are granted such perpetual presence before God that they guard their Prayers themselves.

This indicates the condition that a believer of this stature deems Prayer to be essential for his spiritual survival; he acknowledges it to be his sustenance without which he cannot survive. This station cannot be achieved without the Spirit, which descends upon a believer from God Almighty. When a believer surrenders his life for the sake of God Almighty, he deserves to be granted another life.

This entire discussion reveals that, according to sound reason, these six stages lie in the path of the believer who seeks the perfection of his spiritual existence, and everyone can understand with a little reflection that a believer must pass through six conditions during the course of his spiritual journey. The reason is that, until a person succeeds in establishing a perfect connection with God, his imperfect self loves five wretched conditions, and to repel the love of each condition, a motive is needed that can overcome that love and that the new love may break the hold of the previous love.

Accordingly, the first condition which a person loves is one of heedlessness in which he is absolutely estranged and distant from God Almighty. His soul is in a state of a kind of disbelief, and the veils of heedlessness pull him towards arrogance, carelessness, and callousness. There is not even a trace of humility, empathy, meekness and lowliness. He loves this condition and regards it good for himself. When the favour of God Almighty designs his reform, his heart is impressed by the grandeur and majesty and power of God Almighty with the occurrence of some event or the descent of some calamity. As a consequence,
a state of humility is created in him that eliminates his attitude of arrogance, rebelliousness, and heedlessness, thereby breaking his bond of love with them.

It is something that is seen in the world all the time and it is observed that when the whip of the awe of God strikes in the form of some terrible calamity, it bends the necks of even the most wicked, awakens them from the slumber of heedlessness, and makes them humble and meek. This is the first stage of turning to God which is attained by a man of righteous disposition through observing the grandeur and awe of God or through some other means. Although he earlier loved his heedless and unrestrained life, he has to give it up perforce when the opposing influence creates a greater impact than the earlier influence.

Then the second condition after it is that, though such a believer does turn towards God Almighty in some measure, this orientation is still defiled by the impurity of vain talk, vain actions, and vain pursuits that he has love and affinity for. Of course, he sometimes manifests humility in prayer but vain pursuits continue to preoccupy him. Vain affiliation and vain association and vain indulgences continue to hang around his neck as if he has a dual nature oscillating between the two.

Thereafter, as divine favour wills not to let him be ruined, another manifestation of divine grandeur, awe, and power descends upon his heart, which is more intense than the first manifestation. The strength of his faith is enhanced by it. Striking the heart of the believer, it consumes all his vain thoughts and tendencies in an instant. And this manifestation of divine grandeur and majesty generates in his heart such love for the Lord of Honour as overcomes his love for vain pursuits and preoccupations and, having repelled them, it occupies the space they held. It
turns the heart away from all absurd preoccupations. Then the heart develops an aversion to vain pursuits.

After the elimination of vain preoccupations and pursuits, there still remains a third evil affliction in the believer and which is far dearer to him than the second and it is that he has natural love of wealth, because he considers wealth to be essential for his life and comfort. And, in addition, he credits only his labour and hard work to be the reason for attaining it. For this reason, it is very difficult and bitter for him to part with it in the cause of God Almighty.

Thereafter, when divine favour desires to rescue him from this grave entanglement, he is given the knowledge of the providence of God and the seed of trust in God is sown in him. This is supplemented by the awe of Allah the Exalted, and these two manifestations of benevolence and grandeur bring his heart under their control. In consequence, the love of wealth also flees his heart and the seed of the love of the Bestower of wealth is sown in his heart and his faith is fortified. This strength of faith is greater than the strength in the third stage, inasmuch as at this stage the believer not only discards all things vain, but also gives up the wealth which he thinks is the basis of his happy life. And if his faith had not been granted the power of trust in God, and his eyes had not been directed towards the True Bestower, he could never have been cured of the malady of miserliness. Thus, this strength of faith not only rescues him from vain pursuits, it creates a strong faith in the providence of God Almighty and illumines the heart with the light of trust in God. Then the believer can spend wealth, which is considered most dear, very easily and cheerfully in the cause of God Almighty, and all the weakness—which results in the state of miserliness from pessimism—is dissipated due now to eager hopes pinned on God Almighty. The love of the Bestower of wealth surpasses the love of wealth.

This is followed by the fourth state which is so dearly loved by nafs-e-ammarah [the self that incites to evil] and which is worse than the third state because, in the third state only wealth had to be
discarded, but in the fourth state, the unlawful carnal passions have to be eschewed. It is obvious that the renunciation of wealth is easier for man than the renunciation of carnal passions. Therefore, this state is much more intense and dangerous than the previous ones. Naturally, the bond with carnal passions is much dearer to man as compared to the bond with wealth. This is why he gladly sacrifices wealth—which, in his view, is the basis of a comfortable life—in the path of lustful desires. As a witness to the terrible storm of this state, it should be enough to refer to the verse:

 Meaning that it is such a fierce urge that its restraint needs a mighty Sign.

Thus, it is obvious that the strength of faith at the fourth stage is very robust and immense compared to the third stage. In addition, the experience of the grandeur, awe, and power of God Almighty is also greater in it than before. Not only this much, but it is also necessary in it that the prohibited pleasure, which has been eliminated, should be substituted by some spiritual pleasure. As strong faith in the providence of God Almighty is needed to cure miserliness, and a strong trust in God is required when the pocket is empty so that miserliness may be repelled and hope in the opening of hidden sources should be engendered; in the same way, for deliverance from impure carnal passions and the deliverance from the fire of lust, it is necessary to have strong faith in the existence of the fire which subjects both body and soul with severe torment. Also needed with it is the taste of the spiritual ecstasy which makes one not care and not need these gross pleasures.

1. And she made up her mind with regard to him, and he made up his mind with regard to her. If he had not seen a manifest Sign of his Lord, he could not have shown such determination (Sūrah Yūsuf, 12:25). [Publisher]
A person who is in the grip of forbidden carnal passions is in the jaws of a dragon that has extremely toxic poison. Thus, it is obvious from this that, as the malady of miserliness is graver than the malady of vain pursuits, in the same way being caught in the claws of forbidden carnal passions, in comparison to the malady of miserliness, is a calamity graver than all other calamities, and is in need of a special mercy of God Almighty. When God Almighty wills to deliver someone from this calamity, He visits him with such a manifestation of His grandeur, awe, and power, as grinds down all forbidden carnal passions and then invests his heart with eagerness for His own superior love as a manifestation of His beauty. Just as a suckling baby, on being weaned, passes only one night in distress and soon forgets that milk such that it loathes suckling even if his mouth is put to the breast, a righteous man develops the same repulsion to the forbidden carnal passions when he is weaned away from the milk of the physical desire and is granted spiritual nourishment in its place.

Then, after the fourth stage, is the fifth stage, the evils of which are intensely and dearly loved by the self that incites to evil. At this stage, only one struggle is left and the time approaches near when the angels of the Powerful and Glorious God would conquer the whole territory of this being, and bring it under their complete control, and disrupt the whole system of the ego, and devastate the territory of carnal faculties, and humiliate and debase its chieftains, and destroy the earlier sovereignty. That is what happens when a government is toppled. [As the Holy Quran says:]

\[\text{1. Surely, kings, when they enter a country, despoil it, and turn the highest of its people into the lowest. And thus will they do (Sūrah an-Naml, 27:35).} \]

This is the last trial and last battle for a believer with which all stages

---

1. Surely, kings, when they enter a country, despoil it, and turn the highest of its people into the lowest. And thus will they do (Sūrah an-Naml, 27:35).

[Publisher]
of his journey come to an end. His progress, through his effort and striving, reaches its climax and human efforts complete their operation up to their ultimate point. Thereafter, only the operation of the bounty and grace (of God) remains, which pertains to the other creation.

This fifth stage is even more difficult than the fourth stage. In the fourth state, the believer only has the challenge to discard unlawful passions of the self but in the fifth state, he has the challenge to surrender his self altogether and to restore it to God Almighty as a trust which had been committed to his care. Devoting his self to the work of God, he should put it into service, resolve to spend his self in the cause of God, and strive to annihilate his self altogether; for, as long as the self persists, temptations to sin which are opposed to righteousness, also persist. Besides, so long as the self persists, it is not possible for man to tread the narrow paths of righteousness or to discharge fully the trusts and covenants of God or His creatures.

However, just as miserliness cannot be discarded without trust in God and faith in His providence, and deliverance from illicit carnal passions cannot be achieved without the realization of the awe and grandeur of Allah, and spiritual delights; in the same way, this grand rank—where the self is abnegated and all trusts of God Almighty are restored to Him—can never be attained until a fierce windstorm of the love of God begins to blow and makes a person pursue it with utter devotion. These are, in truth, the lot of those who are intoxicated and inebriated with the love of God—these are not the pursuits of the worldly wise.

آیال بار امانت نتوانست كشید 
The heavens could not bear the burden of the trust—
The lot fell on a madman like me.

Almighty Allah points towards this by saying:
We presented Our trust—which must be rendered back to Us like a trust—to all the creation in the earth and in heaven, but all of them refused to accept it out of apprehension that a default might ensue, but man accepted this trust as he was zalûm [able to subdue himself] and jahûl [able to be unfair to himself]. Both these terms [zalûm and jahûl] as applied to man, are complimentary and not derogatory in nature. They signify that man had been endowed with the capacity of being harsh upon his own self for the sake of God and he could incline towards God Almighty such as to forget his self. That is why he accepted the responsibility of treating his entire being as a trust and then to expend it in the cause of God.

And the declaration by Allah the Exalted with regard to this fifth stage is:

1. Sûrah al-Ahzâb, 33:73 [Publisher]
2. Sûrah al-Mu’mînûn, 23:9 [Publisher]
operation of all these faculties and organs is not directed by his desire, but by the will of God—nothing of his own will should remain; rather, the will of God should work through them. His self should be in the hand of God Almighty like a corpse is in the hand of the living. He should dispossess himself of his volition and complete control of God Almighty should be established over his being, so much so, that by Him should he see, and by Him should he hear, and by Him should he speak, and by Him should he move or stop. The minutest impurities of the ego, which cannot be observed even with a microscope, should be removed, leaving only the spirit.

In short, the protection of God should envelop him and should isolate him from his own being; he should have no dominion left over his being and all the dominion should belong to God. All carnal incitement should become extinct and the will of God should rage in his being. The previous governance should be totally uprooted and another government should establish itself in his heart. The house of selfishness should be laid waste and the camp of the Lord of Honour should be erected. Divine awe and might should uproot, from the foul land, all the plants that were watered from the foul spring of the ego, and replant them in the holy ground of seeking the pleasure of the Lord of Honour.

All the desires and designs and ambitions should become subordinated to God. All the structures of the self that incites to evil should be demolished and razed to the ground, and such a palace of purity and holiness be erected in the heart that the Lord of Honour may descend and His Spirit may dwell therein. Only then could it be said that a person has restored those trusts that the True Bountiful has committed to him. Then would this verse be truly applicable to such a person:

1. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:9 [Publisher]
At this stage a framework is prepared and, thereafter, the Spirit of manifestation of God which means the personal love of the Lord of Honour—enters into such a believer together with the Holy Spirit and bestows a new life upon him and a new power is granted to him. All this happens under the influence of the Spirit, which at this stage, establishes a relationship with the believer but does not yet take up its abode in his heart.

This is followed by the sixth stage of the spiritual being—the stage in which the personal love of the believer reaches its climax and draws to itself the personal love of Allah, the Lord of Glory. Thereupon, the personal love of God Almighty enters into the believer and envelops him, in consequence of which he is granted a new and extraordinary power. That power generates life in his faith like a soul entering a lifeless body. Having entered the believer, it indeed acts like the soul. All faculties are illumined by it, and the support of the Holy Spirit assists the believer of this stature so that he is given access to matters and to knowledge that are beyond human ability.

The believer of this stature, having traversed all stages of the progress of faith, is designated in heaven as the Vicegerent of God on account of the excellences which he receives—by way of reflection—of the excellences of the Lord of Honour. Just as when a person stands before a mirror, all the features of his face are clearly reflected in it; similarly, a believer of this stature—who not only discards the self but carries the task of negating his being and discarding the self to such a degree of perfection that there remains nothing of his own being, and he becomes like a mirror—then all the features and all the attributes of the Divine Being are comprehended in him. Just as it can be said that the mirror, which reflects all the features of the one standing before it, becomes his vicegerent; in the same way a believer, by having gathered within him the attributes and qualities of Allah by way of reflection, attains the station of the Khalifatullah [Vicegerent of God] and becomes the expression of the countenance of God by way of reflection. As God is Hidden upon hidden and Transcendent beyond
transcendent in His Being, in the same way, the perfect believer is hidden upon hidden and transcendent beyond transcendent in his being. The world cannot attain his reality because he moves far away from the sphere of the world. It is remarkable that, after that holy change in the perfect believer—when he loses his self altogether for the sake of God and emerges from it donning a new garment of the holy change—God, who is Unchangeable, Ever-Living, and Self-Subsisting, makes a change in His being for his sake also. However, this does not mean that any change takes place in the eternal attributes of God; nay, He is Unchangeable from antiquity and eternity—but it is only a manifestation of His Providence for the perfect believer. A change, the mystery of which we cannot comprehend, appears in God as well corresponding to the change in the believer, but this happens in a manner which does not soil God’s remaining Unchangeable with the dust of the creature-state—He remains Unchangeable as He eternally is.

However, the change which occurs at the time of the change in the believer is of the type spoken of in the statement: ‘When the believer moves towards God Almighty, God comes towards him with a faster movement.’ Though it is obvious that as Allah the Exalted is not subject to any changes, so is He also not subject to any movements. All these expressions are metaphorical and the need for their use arises because experience testifies that as a believer builds a new being—by self-abnegation, annihilation, and mortification in the cause of God Almighty—God also becomes new vis-à-vis the believer corresponding to the changes in him, and deals with him as He does not deal at all with others. God reveals to him of His kingdom and mysteries that which He does not reveal to others at all, and displays for his sake that which He does not display for the sake of others at all. He helps and supports him to such an extent that causes people to marvel. He shows extraordinary happenings for such a person, and displays miracles and establishes his supremacy in every respect. He places in him a power of attraction, whereby a whole world is drawn to him and only those remain unaffected who are overpowered by eternal misfortune.
Thus, all this shows that, with the immaculate transformation of the perfect believer, God Almighty also appears to him with the manifestation of a new form. This is proof that God Almighty has created man for Himself; for, whenever anyone begins to turn to God Almighty, He begins to turn to him—the same day—the same hour—nay rather, the same moment! He becomes his Guardian, his Providence, his Supporter, and Helper. And if the whole world were to be on one side and a perfect believer on the other, it is he who dominates in the end, because God is True in His love and Perfect in His promises. He does not let one who becomes truly His, go to waste.

Should such a believer be thrown into fire, he emerges from the midst of a garden; be he pushed into a whirlpool, he reappears in a beautiful garden. The enemies design many stratagems against him and wish to destroy him, but God shatters all their machinations and plans, for He is with him at every step. Therefore, in the end, those who seek to humiliate him die in disgrace and their lot is failure; but he who becomes God's with all his heart and soul and determination, never dies a failure. His life is blessed and, it is certain, that he should remain alive till he accomplishes all his undertakings. All blessings are in purity and all purity is in seeking the pleasure of God, and all seeking of God's pleasure is in surrendering one's own pleasure. This is the ‘death’ which is followed by life. Blessed is he who partakes of this life.

Now let it be clear that I have written everything that I intended to write about the above-mentioned verses of Surah al-Mu'minun being a miracle. I have meticulously elucidated that the six stages that have been mentioned for the spiritual being of a believer in the beginning of this particular Surah—the sixth of which has been named Khalq-e-Akhar ['Another Creation']—are the same six stages that have been outlined with regard to the physical birth in verses that follow the description of the spiritual birth. This is a miracle of knowledge and this intellectual insight has not been mentioned in any book prior to the Holy Quran. The last portion of these verses:
is undoubtedly the essence of this intellectual miracle, for it has been applied at a miraculous occasion. It is not possible for man to work such a miracle in his discourse and then to apply to it the verse:

And if someone demands a proof as to how the comparison between the stages of man’s spiritual and physical being outlined in the above verses amount to an intellectual miracle, the answer is that a miracle is something the like of which man is unable to perform, or had previously been unable to perform, or there is no proof that he will be able to perform it in the future. So I say this with authority that this description of the profound philosophy of man’s birth mentioned in the Holy Quran is such a unique and unparalleled description that the like of it cannot be found in any previous book. Nor do we know in this age of anyone, not versed in the Holy Quran, who matched the Holy Quran in presenting this philosophy. Since the Holy Quran claims to be a miracle in terms of all its insights, its Signs, and its eloquence and diction—and these verses are part of the Holy Quran and fall under the purview of the claim of being a miracle—this illustration of it being unmatched and unparalleled, in the presence of its claim of being a miracle and its challenge to produce a match, undoubtedly constitutes a miracle. The answer to the remaining objections of the critic is set out below.

1. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15). [Publisher]
2. So blessed be Allah, the Best of creators (Sūrah al-Mu’minūn, 23:15). [Publisher]
HIS STATEMENT—[‘Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out’] is a line from a couplet of an ancient poet. Did any Prophet ever have a revelation which was word-for-word the same as issued forth from the tongue of a human being before that Prophet?

MY ANSWER—As I have mentioned before also, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, himself had such a revelation and it was:

قَبَرَ اَللَّهُ اَحِسْنَ الْخَالِقِينَ

[So blessed be Allah, the Best of Creators].

This is the sentence that had come out of the mouth of ‘Abdullāh bin Abī Sarāḥ, and exactly the same descended as the revelation of God. And it was due to this very trial that the unfortunate ‘Abdullāh turned apostate. Making such objections, therefore, amounts to following the thinking of ‘Abdullāh, the apostate, which ought to be avoided. As for the words عفت الدِّيأر مَلِّهَا و مَقَامُهَا they form the first line of a couplet of Labīd, may Allah be pleased with him, a Companion [of the Holy Prophet]s]. The complete couplet is:

عفت الدِّيأر مَلِّهَا و مَقَامُهَا

یَمِشَّ تَأَبِّد غُولُهَا فَرِجَامُهَا

It means that the homes of my loved ones were demolished; there remained no trace of the buildings, neither of temporary nor of permanent residences. Both kinds of buildings were destroyed. They were located in Minā, which is in the land of Najd. There are two Minās: a Minā of Makkah and a Minā of Najd. Here the Minā of Najd is meant. The poet then says that there were two towns in that land—one was called Ghaul and the other Rajām—both of which were destroyed and levelled so completely that there is now a forest in place of these towns where wild animals such as deer live. These are the meanings of the
Arabic word 

[ta`abbada], which appears in the couplet. 

[ta`ab bada] is derived from [awābid], which means animals of wilderness, like deer etc. 

[awābid] is derived from [abad] which means ‘something that lives forever’. Since the deer and other such animals mostly do not die a natural death—rather, they are hunted and are killed by others—they were called [awābid].

**HIS STATEMENT**—If the words of man can coincide with the Words of God, then what would be the difference between the Word of God and the word of man?

**MY ANSWER**—I have just explained that the Holy Quran is a miracle in the sense that the writing of any human being cannot be identical to a long passage—which should not be less than ten verses—of the Holy Quran. Such a passage of the Holy Quran possesses so much eloquence and elegance and other insights and verities that its like cannot be offered by human efforts. The Quranic text is, therefore, a miracle provided it is no less than ten verses, as the Quran points out explicitly. But as for one sentence—which is equal to, at most, one or two verses—it is possible that the word of man may appear to correspond with the Word of God. Even then some hidden insights and a kind of light, are inherent in the Word of God. Besides, an element of its miracle is hidden. To illustrate, the distinction between man and deer is obvious on looking at them as a whole, but the eye of deer is similar to the eye of man. Nevertheless, the human eye has certain capabilities that the eye of a deer does not have at all.

**HIS STATEMENT**—When the revelation عفت الدیار محلّها و مقامها 

[ʻTemporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped outʻ] was published, it was stated in its context that it was concerning the plague, but now it is stated that it is concerning the earthquake.
**My Answer**—The chastisement of عفت الديار [‘afatid-diyār—‘residences will be wiped out’] being related to the plague cannot literally make it the plague. Besides, the statement that the phrase عفت الديار [‘afatid-diyār—‘residences will be wiped out’] is concerning plague, is the composition of a human. The objection would have been valid if this word had been present in Almighty God’s revelation. The revelation of God Almighty clearly says that it pertains to the earthquake. Refer to the revelation that was published in the same *Al-Hakam* newspaper towards the end of December 1903, and whose words are:

شَوَاقٌ كَأَمْحَا

Shock of earthquake.

Then five months later, in the issue of 31st May 1904 of the same newspaper, this revelation was further explained by the second revelation that:

عفت الديار محلها ومقامها—

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

Alas what an era has emerged! God’s Word is recorded in two issues of the same newspaper and one Word explains the other, but no one cares to look at it and, instead, people point towards the words of a human being—whose error cannot be attributed to the revelation of God. Such prejudice while being called the progeny of Muslims! God knows what will be its evil consequences in future.

Further, I do not deny that the entire truth of any prophecy is not clear before its appointed time, and it is possible that an error may occur in human interpretation. Thus it is that there has not been any Prophet in the whole world who has never made an error in interpreting any of his prophecies. If a Prophet, however, makes any error by way of interpreting in explaining the meaning of his prophecy before its time, it does not diminish the glory and the honour of that prophecy itself, for
the divine prophecy is extraordinary, beyond human insight, and above human intellect. Can you claim that it does get diminished? If that is the case, I can produce before you a long list of prophecies in which eminent Prophets made errors of interpretation. However, I trust that you will not raise such an objection after this and that you will be cautious in view of the far reaching ramification of this objection.

It is obvious that when a prophecy is fulfilled and, with its fulfilment, reveals its true meaning by itself, and, on comparing that meaning with the words of the prophecy, it is quite clear that it is the correct meaning of the words of the prophecy, it is not honesty then to find faults with it. Is it not true that the above revelation, indeed, means that buildings in a part of the country will collapse? This being so, how can the words of the revelation, in their apparent sense, apply to the plague? And when a calamity destroyed buildings, that very calamity must be considered to have been referred to in the prophecy. Does the plague ever cause buildings to collapse? Also, in a revelation prior to this prophecy, which was published just five months previously in the same newspaper, the word ‘earthquake’ is clearly mentioned. The words of that revelation were:

زَلْزَلْتُ كَذَلْكَ دَهْرًا

Shock of earthquake.

So is there any doubt that the news of the future earthquake has been given in the same newspaper?

Now, you be the judge and consider whether the revelation:

عفت الديار محلها ومقامها

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

in its literal sense applies to this prophecy of the earthquake, and it was mentioned beforehand too, or whether it applies to the plague. Moreover, the prophecy about the earthquake relates to the statement
And it is that the prophecy about the earthquake had been revealed in clear words five months prior to the prophecy [عفت الديار 'afatid-diyār—‘residences will be wiped out’] and both prophecies have been published one after the other; i.e. the prophecy:

\[
\text{زلزلہ کا دھکّ} \\
\text{Shock of earthquake.}
\]

And then:

\[
\text{عفت الديار محلّها ومقامها} \\
\text{[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].}
\]

Neither of them make any mention of the plague.

**HIS STATEMENT**—If categorical knowledge was not given about the prophecy [عفت الديار 'afatid-diyār—residences will be wiped out...] that it pertained to the earthquake, then what benefit did such a revelation provide?

**MY ANSWER**—Alas! You know nothing of the practice of Allah. It is not necessary for a Prophet to have definitive knowledge of a particular aspect of a prophecy that it shall necessarily be fulfilled only in this particular way. What is necessary for a prophecy, though, is that its implication should be supernormal, and human prowess or machination or contrivances should not be able to match it; but it is not necessary that the true nature of the prophecy should be made known in every respect. In the Torah, there is an important prophecy about our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, but it is worded in general terms, that:
A Prophet like unto Moses will be raised from the Israelites from among their brethren.  

Nowhere was it clearly stated that he will be from among the Ishmaelites, his name would be so and so and his father’s name would be so and so, he will be born in Makkah, and he will come after lapse of this much time. This is why the Jews did not benefit the least from this prophecy and, for this very error, hundreds of thousands of the Jews ended up in Hell, even though the Holy Quran has alluded to this same prophecy in the verse:

And the Jews say that the ‘like of Mūsā’ [Moses] was the Prophet Yāsū’a [Joshua] who succeeded him after his death. And the Christians say that ‘Īsā [Jesus] is the ‘like of Mūsā’, for, like Mūsā, he too came as a saviour. Now, tell me what good did this prophecy of the Torah do since it did not make a clear decision. Neither the Jews nor the Christians could recognize the Prophet, may peace be upon him, whom the prophecy was about and both groups remain deprived of the blessing of accepting him.

However, the revelation of Allah that descended upon me:

عفت الدیار محلّھا ومقاومها

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

is not ambiguous, as you imagine it to be, for another prophecy had previously been published in the same newspaper as:

1. In the Torah, the Israelites have been addressed at certain places to the effect that he would be raised from among them. (Author)
2. Verily, We have sent to you a Messenger, who is a witness over you, even as We sent a Messenger to Pharaoh (Sūrah al-Muzzammil, 73:16). [Publisher]
زَلْزَلَةٌ كَذَٰلِكَ دعْوَةً
Shock of earthquake.

Then subsequent to it, this second revelation:

عَفْتُ الْدِّيَارِ مَحلَّلَا وَمَقَامَهَا
[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

describes the features of that very earthquake already mentioned in the same newspaper. This prophecy cannot apply to the plague in any way. Both of these revelations were published in the same newspaper Al-Hakam just five months apart. Tell me, is it obduracy or not to declare such a grand prophecy—which foretells this great calamity twice in the same newspaper, specifying the term ‘earthquake’ and its attributes—to be useless and absurd? If that is so, it is doubtful if you can remain faithful to Islam, for it is written, in authentic commentaries, that when the verse:

سَيَهْرُكُمُ الْعَجْمَانَ وَيَوْمُ الْقِيَامَةَ

was revealed, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, said that he did not know what event that prophecy referred to.

Later, at the great victory in the Battle of Badr, he said that he had now realized that this was the victory the prophecy had foretold. On one occasion he said that [in a vision] he was given a bunch of grapes and was told that it was for Abū Jahl, but he was surprised that Abū Jahl was so thoroughly evil that he was not worthy to enter Paradise. And he [the Holy Prophet] did not comprehend its purport at

1. The hosts shall soon be routed and will turn their backs in flight (Sūrah al Qamar, 54:46). [Publisher]
all. At last that prophecy was fulfilled when Abū Jahl’s son ‘Ikrimah became a Muslim. On another occasion, he made a long journey from Madinah to Makkah in conformity to a divine revelation in which the glad tiding was given that he would enter Makkah and make a ǧarrah [circuit] of the Kā‘bah. The time had not been disclosed. However, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, suffered the hardship of that journey only on account of his interpretation, but that interpretation did not prove correct and he could not enter Makkah. So here an error was made in understanding the prophecy due to which some of his Companions were put in a trial.

Similarly, God had informed Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, that he would be a king. He took this revelation to mean a worldly kingdom and on that very basis Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā ordered his disciples to buy arms by selling their clothes. Eventually, however, it turned out to be a misunderstanding of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā and that the kingdom implied heavenly kingdom and not the kingdom of the earth. The essential point is that a Prophet too is a mortal, and it is not a blemish for him if he happens to be mistaken in his interpretation. He is not, however, allowed to persist in the error and, at some point, he is necessarily informed of his error.

The prophecy of a Prophet should always be viewed with regard to its extraordinary import. The greatness and the significance of the prophecy does not suffer the least if the prophecy is not fulfilled in one specific way; rather, it is fulfilled in another manner. However, the essential element of the prophecy—namely, its extraordinary import—is evident in this second aspect as well; and, at the occurrence of the event, every reasonable person realizes that the true meaning of the prophecy was indeed the one that the unfolding event had itself revealed. To unfairly object to it is tantamount to mischief, dishonesty, and obduracy.

**HIS STATEMENT**—To make an ambiguous statement that some calamity is about to come without specifying its nature and timing is not a prophecy but is mockery. And anyone can make such a statement.
MY ANSWER—What shall I say except لَعْنَةُ اللِّٰلِّٰ عَلَی الْكٰذِبِیْنَ ['The curse of Allah be upon the liars']! Such an opponent ought to merely say [as a counter prophecy] that such a calamity will not strike. Just think for yourself: How can this prophecy be deemed ambiguous when the word ‘earthquake’ is clearly present in it, it is also stated that a part of the country will be annihilated, it is also stated that it will occur within my lifetime, and with it is also the prophecy that it will be like unto Doomsday for those whom it will afflict? If this is ambiguous, then what else is called a clear prophecy? And saying that there is no indication of time in it, is tantamount to an attack not only Islam but on all heavenly Scriptures. The prophecies of the Holy Quran, in most cases, do not make any mention of time. [Tell me], what time limit did the Torah give for the prophecy about Nebuchadnezzar and Titus of Rome? Similarly, what time stipulation was made in the prophecy that was present in the Torah concerning the advent of a ‘like of Mūsā’? And with regard to the prophecies about earthquakes and wars contained in the Gospel—can you tell what is the stipulation about time with regard to them? And then there is the prophecy about the advent of the Promised Messiah—which you construe to justify bringing Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary] back upon the earth a second time. What is the time frame given to you by God Almighty so that you may take a few steps forward with the intention of welcoming the one coming from so far off—at least proceed up to the extreme cold of the stratosphere if not farther—and take quilts etc. along with you?

I wish that you had considered that such objections are not just against me but your objections strike Islam and—God forbid—the Holy Quran itself! Rather, they constitute an assault on all past Prophets. The essential point is that when a prophecy is extraordinary in itself or comprises of the unseen such that its knowledge is beyond human ken, if the prophecy contains a clear claim that such an event has never happened in this country for centuries, and that it had not in fact happened, and if, then, that event happens as claimed—to raise objections against such an extraordinary prophecy is the wont of the
faithless who care nothing for God or the truth. Such unfortunate people, owing to their hard-heartedness, have always criticized every Prophet. Now you tell me! The certainty and persistence with which the news about the earthquake is given in the prophecy—can you cite its parallel in this country during the last two thousand years?

Also bear in mind that it is not just one prophecy; rather, my God has foretold about it through me again and again in the previous volumes of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya. It is mentioned in Mawāhib-ur-Rahmān [‘The Bounties of the Gracious One’]. It is mentioned in the pamphlet Āmīn, and it is mentioned in various revelations in several issues of the newspaper Al-Hakam. And yet, the prophecy, in your estimation, is vague. Now what is the remedy for this! رَاجِعُوْنَ انَّا للِِّٰ وَ انَّا إِلَیْهِ رَاجِعُوْنَ [Surely, to Allah we belong and to Him shall we return].

The unjustified assaults on Islam that was the wont of other religions are now being made by Muslims themselves! If it was not in their lot to defend their faith, they should at least have given a moment’s thought before the attack. Facing humiliation and being ultimately exposed as liars—is this practicing your faith?

کُی بَعث شَانُ دَن سَعِید [Cutting the very branch of the tree upon which one is sitting!]

Had their hearts been illuminated by the light of Islam, they would not have only understood all this themselves, but would have also countered those who raise such objections.

**HIS STATEMENT**—The Honourable Holy Mirza Sahib has again given news of an earthquake, but at the same time he has also said that he has not been informed whether it would be an earthquake or some other severe calamity, and that he has not been informed when such a calamity strike.

---

1. A phrase from the Holy Quran which is recited by Muslims to express their deepest sorrow. [Publisher]
MY ANSWER—No objection can be levelled at this statement of mine, for even in the case of the chastisement that was promised to the Arabs, God Almighty did not provide details of that chastisement as to what kind of chastisement it would be and what would be its nature. He only said that God has the power to bring it down from heaven, or send it from the earth, or make the infidels taste the swords of the Muslims. In these verses the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, himself admits that he has not been informed as to what kind of chastisement it would be. And when he was asked about the time of its occurrence, he did not specify any date, as the Holy Quran says:

Meaning: ‘The disbelievers ask, “When will this proclamation come to pass; tell us the date if you are indeed true?” Say to them, “I do not know of any date, only God has this knowledge. I am only a warner.”’

And when the disbelievers repeated their question about the date, they got the answer:

Meaning: Tell them, ‘I know not whether the chastisement is near at hand or far off.’

Now, remember—O you who listen! It is true, and absolutely true—and there is no choice but to accept it—that the prophecies of God Almighty are at times fulfilled literally while at other times they are fulfilled metaphorically. Therefore, no Prophet or Messenger can dare to claim everywhere and in every prophecy that this prophecy would be fulfilled in such a manner. The Prophet, however, has the right, as

1. Sürah al-Mulk, 67:26–27 [Publisher]
2. Sürah al-Anbiyā’, 21:110 [Publisher]
I have stated, to claim that the prophecy he narrates is extraordinary or is far and beyond the reach of human knowledge. If the Punjab had experienced earthquakes like the one that occurred on 4th April 1905 even once in every century, this prophecy would have no significance, and everybody would be entitled to say that such earthquakes occurred in the Punjab all the time and it was nothing impossible. However, when the recent earthquake struck in the extraordinary manner that was foretold by the prophecy, all objections were rendered meaningless. Similarly, the prophecy about the future earthquake, that has been made, is also not an ordinary prophecy. If it ultimately does turn out to be ordinary, or does not occur within my lifetime, then I am not from God Almighty.

God informs me that the calamity which He has designated ‘the earthquake’ shall be like unto Doomsday, and that it will be mightier than the first one. There is no doubt that in this prophecy about the future, as in the previous prophecy, the word ‘earthquake’ appears repeatedly and no other word is used. The literal meaning has greater right to be accepted than the metaphorical meaning, but it has to be said—in keeping with the practice of all Prophets to show deference to the providence of God and to the vastness of the knowledge of God—that although the word ‘earthquake’ has been used apparently, it may possibly mean some other calamity of the nature of an earthquake but it might be even more devastating than the previous one, and may severely impact buildings as well.1

1. The prophecy that had been made to the Jews about the coming of the Promised Messiah was that he would not come until Prophet Ilyās [Elijah] descends upon the earth from the heavens. But no one descended from the heavens, and Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, claimed that he was the Promised Messiah, and that Ilyās [Elijah] referred to Prophet Yaḥyā [John], who had appeared before him. Thus, the prophecy about the re- advent of Ilyās, which the Jews awaited, and still do, was metaphorically fulfilled by the advent of Prophet Yaḥyā. Thus, it is obvious that it does happen in case of prophecies that God Almighty fulfils them metaphorically and ignores their literal sense. (Author)
This prophecy cannot be invalidated just because it does not specify the date and the time, for it contains so many other details that make it unnecessary to mention the date and time. For example, God said: The earthquake will appear within your lifetime; the occurrence of this earthquake will mark a great victory for you, and a great many people will enter your Jamāʿat [Community]; it will be a heavenly Sign for you; God Himself will descend for your support and will show His wonderful works that the world has not seen before; people will come from far off places and enter into your Jamāʿat. And that earthquake will be greater than the previous one, and the signs of Doomsday will appear in it and it will bring about a revolution in the world. God says that He shall come when the hearts would have become hardened and people would feel safe from the possibility of an earthquake.

And God says: ‘I shall come secretly, and I shall come at the time when no one would be aware.’ That is to say, people will be busily and calmly engaged in their worldly pursuits when all at once the calamity will befall. Prior to this people would have felt reassured that no earthquake would come, and they would imagine themselves to be out of danger and secure. Then the calamity will suddenly befall them. And God says: Those will be the days of spring—the sun would rise in the morning of spring and would set in the evening of autumn. Then there will be wailing in many homes, for they did not recognize the time. No astrologer nor geologist has access to the unseen, and no one knows what will happen tomorrow, but God—who created all this—is aware of the most hidden aspects of His creation.

**HIS STATEMENT**—Whereas the Holy Quran contains the news of both earthquakes, why is it said that perhaps it is an earthquake or it is some other calamity?

**MY ANSWER**—I have said time and again that the literal words of the Holy Quran and those of this revelation that I received, indeed, foretell
an earthquake. But God’s custom compels us to bear in mind the possibility of the metaphorical fulfilment. God Almighty says, on one occasion, in the Holy Quran with the regard to a people:

\[
\text{شَدِيدًا زِلْزَالًا زُلْزِلُوْا وَ}
\]

Meaning: ‘They were struck by a terrible earthquake’, even though no earthquake overtook them. Thus, some other calamity was called ‘earthquake’ in this instance.

Allah the Exalted also says:

\[
\text{وَكَنَّا كُنَّا فِيۡ هِيَمٌ أَخَذْنَاهُمُ فَقَمَ شَبَاهُ فِيۡ الأَمْرِ أَخَذْنُ}
\]

Meaning: ‘He who is blind in this world will also be blind in the Hereafter.’ This is also a prophecy, but it does not mean what is understood from the literal words. It is a characteristic of Prophets and Messengers that they believe in the limitlessness of the knowledge of God and do not hold their own knowledge as equal to His. In the Holy Quran, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was repeatedly given the promise of the victory over the disbelievers, but when the Battle of Badr—which was the first battle of Islam—started, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, began supplicating and praying, and these are the words that issued from his tongue:

\[
\text{أللّهُم إِن أُهلكت هَذِه النِّصاَبَة فَلَنْ يُعْبَد فِي الْجَهَالَةِ أَبَدًا}
\]

Meaning: ‘O my Lord! If you destroy these people (they were just three hundred and thirteen men), none will worship You till Doomsday.’

When Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him, heard

1. Sūrah al-Ahzāb, 33:12 [Publisher]
2. Sūrah Bani Isrā’īl, 17:73 [Publisher]
these words from the mouth of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, he submitted, ‘O Prophet of Allah, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, why are you so perturbed? God has given you the firm promise that He would give victory.’ He said, ‘This is true, but I am keeping my eyes on the fact that He is in need of no one.’ That is to say, God is not obligated to fulfil any promise. Now, it must be understood that when the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessing of Allah be upon him, observed this much deference to etiquettes of respect of God, why should one turn aside from this accepted belief of all Prophets, may peace be upon them, that sometimes God’s prophecy is fulfilled literally and sometimes it is fulfilled metaphorically and figuratively? It is folly to controvert this position. To ask what kind of prophecy it is whose words cannot be depended upon and whose time has not been specified, is a very lowly way of thinking. It only goes to show that the person who raises such an objection has no understanding of the way of Allah.

The truth of the matter is that when a prophecy has some grandeur and majesty and some extraordinary news in it, and, at the time of its fulfilment, God’s hand is clearly witnessed, hearts accept it and no one mentions anything about date etc. Indeed, such controversy and such objections are quite premature. Let the time come and then you can object afterwards. It is not proper to raise such hue and cry beforehand. When the time comes for its fulfilment, the prophecy will speak for itself as to whether it is something ordinary or extraordinary.

**His Statement**—When, according to your own statement, the Holy Quran also gives tidings of two earthquakes, there should be no room left to doubt that the impending calamity will be an earthquake.

**My Answer**—The verse in the Holy Quran is:
Meaning that, on that day the earth will make a severe agitated movement, and severe and fierce agitation will develop in the earth, and after that another agitation will develop in the earth which will manifest after the first one. There is no mention of ‘earthquake’ in the explicit words because, according to the lexicons, the word رجفان [rajfan] means ‘severe agitation’.

When رجف الشَّيْءُ [rajfa shai’] is used, it means إضطراب اضطربًا شديدًا [‘It suffered extreme agitation’]. However, since the earth’s agitation is often due to an earthquake, this is why I have taken ‘earthquake’ as its most probable meaning at this place. Otherwise, it is possible that this agitation may be due to some other calamity and not due to an earthquake; or the agitation might signify some other calamity. So what I have said before remains true in this instance as well; namely, that this verse too does not conclusively refer to an earthquake, even though the greater probability is that the words تَرجف الرَّاجفۃ [‘will suffer severe agitation’] here does indeed refer to an earthquake. واللّٰه اعلم [And Allah knows best].

When and where did I interpret the words of my prophecies as not meaning ‘earthquake’? On the contrary, what I have maintained is that probably and preponderantly the word زَلْزَلَة [zalzalah] means ‘earthquake’. And yet it is possible that these words may, in conformity with the eternal practice of God, signify some other such terrible, extraordinary, and devastating calamity that has the appearance and characteristics of an earthquake. Metaphors do abound in the discourse of God Almighty, which men of learning do not deny, yet the literal words need to be given precedence, and the explicit words of these prophecies do, indeed, imply an earthquake.

The critic has again and again questioned how this can be considered a prophecy when the one making the prophecy has neither

---
1. Sūrah an-Nāzi‘āt, 79:7–8 [Publisher]
declared the word 
[زَلْزَلَة] [zalzalah] to be definitively an earthquake
nor has he spelled out the time. Some calamity or other would befall
between now and the Doomsday anyway and it would be convenient
to claim every such event to be the fulfilment of his prophecy!

It is strange that while I keep saying over and over again that the
word 
[زَلْزَلَة] [zalzalah—‘earthquake’], in my prophecies, most probably
implies an earthquake—if it is not that, then an extraordinary calamity
is implied that would have a very great resemblance with an earthquake
and would have the character of an earthquake fully—yet the critic is
not satisfied with these many words. I do not know how, with such
doubts, he ever came to be satisfied with Islam. Everyone knows that,
with regard to the prophecies of past Prophets, may peace be upon
them, it has been considered adequate that they should be extraordi-
nary and beyond the power of human beings, or that they should com-
prise the unseen that is beyond human foresight.

When a prophecy is narrated as consisting of an extraordinary hap-
pening—and at the time of its announcement no mind or imagination
can conceive that such an event is going to happen, and it is clearly an
unusual event which has no parallel in earlier centuries nor are there
manifest signs of its occurrence in the future—and that prophecy turns
out to be true, then sound reason dictates that such a prophecy would
necessarily be taken to have been from God. Otherwise, all the proph-
ecies of Prophets would have to be rejected.

Now, listen to this carefully: The notion that my prophecy regard-
ing the future earthquake does not specify any time limit is a com-
pletely false notion that has developed merely from lack of deliberation,
excessive prejudice, and hastiness because the revelation of Allah
has apprised me time and again that this prophecy will come to pass
within my own lifetime, in my own country, and only for my sake. And
if it turns out to be only something ordinary, having hundreds of prece-
dents and if it is not something extraordinary that manifests the marks
of Doomsday—then I myself tell you not to regard it as a prophecy.
Treat it as the hoax you say it is.
I am now almost seventy years [of age], and a period of more than thirty years has passed since God had informed me in clear terms that I would live to the age of eighty, or that five to six years more or five to six years less. So in this scenario even if God Almighty were to cause much delay in the appearance of this severe calamity, there are, at the most, 16 years—not more than that—as it is essential that this incident should take place within my lifetime.1

However, it is not the intent of the prophecy that the fulfilment of this prophecy will remain in abeyance for the full sixteen years; rather, it is possible that this prophecy may be fulfilled within the next one or two years, or even earlier. Nor is there a promise of God that my age will necessarily exceed eighty years. Rather, the hope implied in the words in the revelation of God is that, if God so desires, my age could even somewhat exceed eighty years. The actual words of the Revelation that pertain to this promise, however, fix the age between 74 and 86. In any case, it is a false allegation against me that I have not defined the time limit for this prophecy at all. God says again and again in His revelation that, ‘We shall demonstrate this Sign for you’, and, ‘Tell them that this Sign shall be a witness to my veracity; I will descend for you and show My Signs for your sake; I shall come to you with my hosts at the time when no one will be aware.’ No one knows of the time but God. Just as it happened in the time of Mūsā [Moses] when Pharaoh and Hāmān remained deceived until the flood of the river Nile overtook them, so will it happen now too. God also said, ‘Prepare the ark

1. ☆ There is another revelation of God Almighty:

ئیہو ہے اُن کے بدلے جب ہے پوری بحثی

[Spring is here again, and again God’s word is fulfilled].

This shows that the promised earthquake would happen in spring, and as some revelations show it would probably be the morning time or near it. And the time probably is near when this prophecy should be fulfilled, and possibly God might delay it a little. (Author)
before My eyes and do not plead for the transgressors and do not be an intercessor on their behalf, for I shall cause them all to drown.' There are other similarly explicit revelations of God and the gist of them all is that that this prophecy will come about in my lifetime and in my very age, and this is the limit that is determined and fixed which it cannot exceed. It is not known, however, whether it will come about after months or after weeks or after years; in any case, it will not exceed sixteen years.

This is similar to the statement that the life of the world starting from Ḥaḍrat Ādam is 7,000 years as inferred from Quranic verses, of which 6,000 have elapsed until our own time, as may be reckoned by the numerical value of the letters of Sūrah al-‘Aṣr. We are now in the seventh millennium according to the lunar calculation, and the Promised Messiah, who was to be raised at the end of the sixth millennium, has already appeared.1

1. ✡ God created Adam on the sixth day, Friday, at the time of ‘Aṣr. This is what is established by the Torah, Quran, and the Hadith. And God has ordained seven days for mankind, and, as against these days, one day of God spans a thousand years. It is inferred on this basis that the age of the world, starting from Adam, is seven thousand years, and the sixth millennium—which corresponds to the sixth day—is the day for the advent of the Second Adam. That is, it is destined that in the sixth millennium the spirit of righteousness would disappear from the world, and people would become extremely heedless and irreligious. Then will the Promised Messiah appear to re-establish man’s spiritual dispensation. And, like the first Adam, he will appear at the end of the sixth millennium which is the sixth day of God. So has he appeared, and he is none other than the one who is proclaiming the truth through this writing at this time. My being named Adam here is meant to point out that the perfect individual of the genus man started with Adam and ended with Adam too, for the shape of this world is circular and the climax of a circle is it should end at the point from where it started. Thus, was it necessary to name the Khātamul-Khulafā’ [Seal of the Successors] as ‘Adam’. And for this very reason, just as Adam was born a twin, my birth is also twin; and just as Adam was born on a Friday, so was I born on a Friday as well; and just as the angels raised objection about Adam, so did the revelation of Allah come down concerning me which is as
Similarly, when it is said that the hour of Qiyāmah [the Resurrection] is not known, it does not mean that God has not given mankind even some general information about the Resurrection. Otherwise, describing even the Signs of Doomsday would be a meaningless exercise, for what was the need to even describe the Signs of something that God wishes to keep secret?

What is meant by such verses is that though the specific hour of Qiyāmah is not known to anyone, God has given mankind this much knowledge—like the duration of pregnancy—that when the seventh millennium has passed, the Qiyāmah shall have come upon the dwellers of this world. This is just like the human foetus in a womb—which must be born before nine months and ten days have passed—and yet the exact hour of its birth is not known. In the same way Qiyāmah will occur before 7,000 years have passed, but the exact hour of its occurrence is not known. It is also possible that after the completion of 7,000 years, two or three more centuries may be additional as fractions which would not count.

And the other objection of the critic—that it has not been claimed that it really is an earthquake—is also born out of lack of insight; for, I have written again and again that, from the apparent words of the

_____ 

follows:

قالوا اجعل فيها من يفسد فيها. قال انی اعلم ما لا تعلمون. 
[They said: What! Wilt thou place in it such as shall make mischief in it? He said: I know what you do not know].

And just as the command to prostrate for Adam was issued, so regarding me too, there is the prophecy in God’s revelation:

یَخِرُّون علی الذقان سُجَّدًا ربّنا اغْفِرلنا اِنّنا كُنّا خاطئین۔
[They will fall down prostrate on their faces, supplanting: Lord, forgive us, we were in error].

(Author)
prophecy, it seems most probable that it is an earthquake and the first earthquake also testifies to this, and the following verse of the Holy Quran supports it too:

2 \[2^{1,1} \]

Besides, the Scriptures of God Almighty also direct our attention to it that, at times, such prophecies are fulfilled figuratively, though the character of being extraordinary and of being unusual occurrence remains in them. In my own opinion, ninety out of a hundred indications are that it, indeed, will be an earthquake and not anything else, it speaks of the shaking of the earth and the collapse of buildings. This is what my understanding is. Beyond it, God knows well His hidden secrets, and it is possible that He may at a later stage disclose to me more than this, for He has power over all things.

It is a strange statement of yours and a strange opinion that you say that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus] did not provide any interpretation of the earthquakes mentioned in his prophecies, and hence those prophecies were specific. It is obvious that in these prophecies Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā \[Jesus\] did not speak of any terrible, destructive, and extraordinary earthquake. The land where he lived, hardly any year would have passed in which there was no earthquake. History establishes the frequent occurrence of earthquakes in that country—and, even some terrible ones too. Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā himself must have witnessed many earthquakes while he was in that country and had not yet travelled to Kashmir.\[3^{*}\]

1. \[Publisher\] 

2. ‘On that day, the earth will make an agitated movement, and then there will be another agitated movement.’

   This means that two terrible earthquakes will strike close to Qiyāmah [the Day of Resurrection]. The second earthquake will come after the first.
   \[Author\]

3. I have proven that the ascension of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā \[Jesus\] to heaven is no more than a myth. Rather he, having survived the cross, travelled through Persia and
Hence, I cannot understand why such common occurrences should be given the name of prophecy. The material for scoffing that you sought—unsuccessfully—to find in my prophecies, you may readily have found in the prophecies of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as without much effort. It is also not true that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as designated the earthquake as an earthquake and did not give any interpretation for it. Can you show me any statement of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as in which it is stated that the earthquake, in these prophecies, literally means an earthquake and is not a figure of speech?

How can your statement be accepted without the testimony of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as, because it is established, from a study of his prophecies, that they are all metaphorical in nature? For instance, Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as had proclaimed that he was ‘King of the Jews’, and this matter was reported to the Roman government that, while the Jews were under the Roman Empire, this man claimed that the Jews were his subjects and he was their king. When the Roman government demanded a reply, he stated

Afghanistan, reached Kashmir and he lived a long time there. Ultimately he died and was buried in Mohalla Khanyar, Srinagar, and his tomb is there to this day. People visit it and seek blessings by it. He did not die on the cross, he suffered some wounds on his body that were treated with Marham-i-ʿĪsā [Jesus’ Ointment], which was given this name for this very reason. (Author)

(*) Just as our lord and master the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was wounded in the Battle of Uhud; and Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, sustained several sword wounds on his forehead and he was soaked in blood from head to toe, in the same way—rather to a much lesser degree—did Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā suffer wounds on the cross. I wonder what sort of idolatrous adulation ignorant people have for Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as that, while they acknowledge the wounds suffered by the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, they consider it beyond the status of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as to be injured and wounded. They raise a clamour to such a notion and wish to bestow upon Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as a special quality distinct from the entire world. He alone rose to heaven and then would return to earth. He alone had such a long life, but God did not keep him unique in his birth; rather, he had several real brothers and several real sisters from the same mother, whereas our Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was an only child, had neither any brother nor sister. (Author)
that his kingdom was not of this world; rather, the kingdom meant the Kingdom of Heaven.

Notice here that, in the beginning, Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāas himself believed that he would be granted earthly kingdom—and he even bought weapons on this very assumption—but ultimately it turned out to be the Kingdom of Heaven. Thus, it is not too far-fetched that by ‘earthquake’, he also meant some heavenly event. Otherwise, the land of the area of the Levant has always been prone to earthquakes. To make a prophecy about earthquakes in such a land would be, in the eyes of an opponent, an occasion to ridicule.

So also Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāas had declared that his twelve disciples would sit on twelve thrones in Paradise. This prophecy is also contained in the Gospel. But, one of those disciples, Judas Iscariot, died an apostate. Now explain how the prophecy about the twelve thrones could be true! If you can reason it out, help me understand; I will be grateful to you. In this instance, it cannot even be taken as a metaphor.

Similarly, Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāas had said: The people of this age will not have passed before I return. The onus to answer it is upon those who claim that he has ascended to heaven—be they Christians or Muslims—that nineteen centuries have already passed but Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāas has not yet returned. For nineteen centuries, all those who had lived out their spans of life have become part of dust, but no one saw Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāas descending from heaven. Moreover, what are we to make of the promise that the people of that time would still be alive when Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāas would return? Then, what happened to the promise that the people of that generation would still be alive when he would return?

In short, whoever wants to exult in such prophecies, let him do so by all means. As for us, we consider Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāas to be, as per the verdict of the Holy Quran, a true Prophet. Otherwise, going by the Gospels that exists today, even his Prophethood is suspect. The Christians cry about his ‘Divinity’, but I find it impossible to prove even his Prophethood except by means of the Holy Quran.

Although it is true that the Christians have distorted the Gospels
so much that you cannot trust anything of it, good or bad; yet, even if we accept the distorted version, the prophecy of Ḥaḍrat Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as about the earthquake is totally unacceptable to the Muslims as there is no mention of this prophecy of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as in the Holy Quran at all. Therefore, how and on what basis can it be accepted as valid?

Alas! The extent to which you have striven to repudiate my proph- ecies and, setting aside the fear of God, have tried tooth and nail to somehow prove to the public that these prophecies are trivial you have opted for this pleasure-less sin for nothing. If you had some success in breaking my arguments, you could at least have won the admiration of the Christians. Even if you had remained silent there would have been some benefit. What did you achieve by opening your mouth? And you have not launched this attack upon me; rather, you have attacked the God who has sent me. Alas! It is only sheer hard-heartedness and the desire for fame that has prompted most people to stand up in opposition to me; otherwise, it was not at all difficult to understand my claim and my arguments.

Thousands of Signs have appeared so far, and even the heaven and earth have given testimony [for me], but still those whose hearts are sealed did not desist from opposition. They have called for a chas- tisement from God that will befall at its due time. For those who are opposing God, it was better for them if they had died prior to this. But they have been intoxicated by the wine of prejudice and vanity and the days are coming when God will bring them to their senses.

I will now dispose off some objections that Maulawī Abū Saʿīd Muḥammad Ḥusain Batālawī published in the newspaper Paisah Akhbār issue dated 19 June 1905. And they are as follows:

**His Statement**—He writes (the reference is to this humble one) that I had given news of this earthquake in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya and had written that mountains would burst asunder. This is a falsehood beyond measure.
**MY ANSWER**—Do you have any doubt that the following passage is present on page 516\(^1\) of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*:

*فلمّا تجلّٰی ربّه للجبل جعلہ دكًّا۔ والله موهنٰ كيد الكافرين وبنجعله أية للمناس ورحمهً متاَْ ْوكان آنوا مُقَّدِشًاْ* 

Meaning that: ‘When the Lord of this humble one shall manifest His glory on a particular mountain, He will cause it to break asunder, and God shall thwart the schemes of the deniers. And We shall make this event of the mountain a Sign for the people and it shall be a source of mercy for the believers. This matter was decreed from the very beginning. That is to say, past Prophets had foretold that such terrible earthquakes would take place in the time of the Promised Messiah.’

Similarly, I again ask, do you have any doubt that page 557\(^2\) of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya* records this second prophecy relating to the same event:

*فلمّا تجلّٰی ربّه للجبل جعلہ دكًّاْ قوطة الرحمٰن لعُبید اللّٰٰ الصمدَْ ْ(Translation) When his (my humble self’s) Lord manifests Himself at the mountain, He shall cause it to break asunder. This shall come about by the power of God and it shall be in support of His servant; that is, to demonstrate his truthfulness.*

Now that both these passages are present in *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*, and they contain the promise, in clear words, that God shall show a Sign and shall help and support, how can that which has been written

---

1. In the 2008 edition of *Rühání Khazá’ín*, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, pages 615–616. In the 2016 English translation of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*, Part IV, this text appears on page 395. [Publisher]

2. In the 2008 edition of *Rühání Khazá’ín*, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, page 665. In the 2016 English translation of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*, Part IV, this text appears on page 435. [Publisher]
in this regard in the Announcement be a white lie? Does the breaking asunder of the mountain not necessarily signify an earthquake? Is it not a clear promise here that He shall make the breaking asunder of the mountain a Sign for this servant of His, and this incident shall signify help and support of Allah? And can there be better and clearer words than those found on page 516\(^1\) wherein it is stated:

ولنجعله آية للناس

That is, ‘We shall make the rending asunder of the mountain a Sign for the people.’

Likewise, what could be a more explicit statement than the one given on page 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya because first the promise was made for breaking asunder of the mountain and then it was said:

قوّۃ الرحمٰن لِعُبَید اللّٰه الصمد

Meaning: ‘It shall come about by the power of God for the support and succour of His servant?’ Whoever, despite these explanations, considers such a clear prophecy to be a white lie, we can only say that his own eyes have turned white; for, he considers the bright day to be the night.

Besides, the context in which this verse appears in the Holy Quran also points to an earthquake; for, the Torah clearly has it, to this day, that when the mountain was rent asunder to show Mūsā a Sign of power of Providence, it was the result of an earthquake. If someone does not accept this even after so many testimonies, he is not free from either of these two states: Either there is something amiss with his senses and he has a defect in his eyesight, or the veil of extreme prejudice has deprived

---

\(^1\) In the 2008 edition of Rūḥānī Khazā’in, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, page 616. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on page 395. [Publisher]
him of the capability of seeing the light and accepting it. Besides this, every sane person knows that the rending asunder of the mountain necessitates an earthquake and this incidence categorically and necessarily implies an earthquake. How, then, can Maulawi Sahib say that there is no mention here of the earthquake at all? Are mountains rent asunder even without earthquakes?

Alas for the Maulawi Sahib’s intelligence that he doesn’t comprehend something so obvious! Having reached the age of seventy years, he is again exhibiting the naivety of a child. Moreover, when there is also the declaration that, ‘We shall make this event a Sign and shall help and assist this appointed one through it,’ who but the one whose heart is covered with the rust of villainy, can deny that the rending asunder of the mountain mentioned in Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya is an event that God will make a Sign for His appointee? This is as He said, at the same place, by way of a promise:

\[/
\text{ولنجعله أٰیةً لِّلنّاس}~/
\]

Meaning: ‘We shall make it a Sign for the people.’

**His Statement**—Let the Government and the public examine the aforementioned pages of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya. Is this passage to be found anywhere. There is no limit to this fraud and forgery.

**My Answer**—What can I write in response to this brazenness, audacity, and temerity other than [‘Allah’s curse be upon the liars’]?

O mortal man! You are going to die one day. Visualise, for once, the hour when the rattle of death will set in. Are both these statements in Arabic, to which I have referred in my Announcement, not present on
pages 516 and 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya? So much fabrication and in this old age! Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya has spread all over the world and is not just in your possession. So what can you gain from such audacity and mischief? Is it not true that these verses mention the rending asunder of mountains? Is it not true that God Almighty says in the same revelation, ‘We will make the rending asunder of the mountain a Sign for the people, and for some this Sign will be a cause of mercy’? Is it not true that God says in these revelations that ‘We shall show this Sign for the support and help of Our servant’?

And is it not true that the Arabic revelation on page 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya is preceded by the Urdu revelation:

خدا اُسے قبول کرے گا اور بڑے یا نے اس کو قبول نہ کیا لی کیا جسے تکثر کے کوئی کوئی گا اور کہا گا

A Warner came unto the world, but the world accepted him not; yet God shall accept him and demonstrate his truthfulness with mighty assaults. 

1. In the 2008 edition of Rūhānī Khazā’in, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, pages 615 and 665. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on pages 395 and 435. [Publisher]

2. ☆ Some similar prophecies can be found in past Scriptures with regard to Haḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, that say that the Jews would not accept him. It is written in the Gospels also, with reference to the same prophecies, ‘The stone which the builders rejected has become the chief cornerstone.’ That is, he became the Khātamul-Anbiyā’ of the Israelite Prophets. Similar to these prophecies is this prophecy for God says that the world accepted him not; yet I shall accept him and make his truth manifest with very powerful assaults. So it is necessary that the world should not come to an end until all these things have come to pass. And just as it is written in the Gospels that ‘The stone which the builders rejected has become the cornerstone,’ so does God say to me that though they reject you I will make you the Khātamul-Khulāfā’. The divine revelations in this regard are contained in many passages, and it will be too lengthy to cite them all here. (Author)
that whereas the breaking asunder of the mountain has been mentioned in Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya, it has also been written in the same book that it is a prophecy? It cannot, however, be denied that I could not beforehand determine in what manner this prophecy of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya would manifest itself. And this is a phenomenon shared by all Prophets. But never have I, either in Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya or in any other book, denied that this is a prophecy. How indeed could I deny it when it is clearly written on page 516\(^1\) of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya:

\[
\text{ولنجعله آية لِّلناس ورحمۃ منا}
\]

Meaning: ‘We shall make the rending asunder of the mountain a Sign for the people.’ And then, on page 557, it is written:

\[
\text{قوة الرحمٰن لعُبَید اللّٰه الصمد}
\]

Meaning: ‘The rending asunder of the mountain shall be by the power of God—in support of His servant.’

Thus, who—other than a mischievous and dishonourable person who cares nothing for faith, God, or the Day of Reckoning—can deny that this is a prophecy, and a Sign has been promised in it? When God Almighty Himself has called it a Sign and has promised that He would manifest it for the benefit of the people at some point in time, who then dare say that it is not a Sign and it is not a prophecy? As for my admission that at the time of the writing of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya I was unable to specify any particular facet of the prophecy, it cannot benefit the opponent at all, for it is not necessary for a Prophet to define the specifics of every prophecy before its time. I have already dealt quite extensively with this subject in this very book, and there is no need

---

\(^1\) In the 2008 edition of Rūḥānī Khazā‘in, the referenced text appears in vol. 1, page 616. In the 2016 English translation of Barāḥin-e-Ahmadiyya, Part IV, this text appears on page 395. [Publisher]
to write it again and again. [One call is enough to know if somebody is at home.]

**HIS STATEMENT**—The ‘Krishna of Qadian’ has lied in these three sentences. The first is the sentence mentioned above that has already been answered. The second was my statement that ‘after the earthquake, the thought crossed my mind over and over that I had committed a grave sin1 for not having publicized the prophecy of the earthquake as much as I should have.’ And the third is the statement that ‘although I knew at that time that my writing would not move the hearts to take proper precautions, still I was beset by sorrow for not having adequately publicised the news that had been given to me by All-Knowing, All-Wise God.

---

1. ☆ Maulawi Muhammed Husain has been very jubilant over my statement that ‘I thought again and again that I committed a very great sin’. Even though he calls himself a maulawi, he does not know that perfect insight for a man is that, before his Glorious God, he should hold himself guilty on every occasion. This is the practice of Prophets. It is only Satan who does not show humility before God Almighty. The anguish and grief—the crying and wailing that the Prophets did—was for this very reason that they felt that they had committed a sin that they did not discharge the trust of conveying the message of God as it deserved. To them all honour consisted in confessing this shortcoming before their Lord and Master. All the istighfar [seeking of forgiveness] offered by our Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was on this basis alone that he was extremely fearful that he did not perform the task assigned to him—the task of propagation and the task of vigorous striving in the way of God—the way it deserved. This, despite the fact that no one performed this task as well as the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, did. But he had extreme fear of the glory of God Almighty and the awe of God in his heart. For this very reason he occupied himself with perpetual istighfar. We find in the Torah too: ‘And Moses made haste, and bowed his head toward the earth and he said “O Lord... pardon our iniquity and our sin.”’ (Exodus 34:9) The Prophet Saul said, ‘Now I beg you, forgive my sin’ (Samuel 15:25). And Prophet David says to God Almighty, ‘For I acknowledge my transgressions’ See Psalms 51:3. (Author)
**MY ANSWER**—Distrust is something that has no cure. Otherwise, it is obvious that if a person is given the knowledge that a certain calamity is going to befall a certain people, and he fails to duly warn them of the destruction about to befall them—at the same time he also believes that his warning them or not will be equal to them—still his heart will be saddened after that calamity that only if they had listened to him they would have been saved. I think every heart has this quality in it, but it may be that the hearts of some of the maulawīs of this age are such that God has taken away this quality from them.

And if it is wondered as to why they should believe that the recipient of the revelation had become convinced that the revelation:

٤٨٥

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

referred to an earthquake, I have already written in answer to this that it is such a clear revelation that even a child, on being informed of its meaning, would be convinced that this is the prophecy about a severe calamity that will impact buildings. Moreover, the prophecy about an earthquake is present in clear words in the newspaper *Al-Hakam* a year and five months prior to it; that is, in its issue towards the end of December 1903.

And then the same prophecy about the earthquake is present in *Mawāhib-ur-Rahmān*, published in 1902. Again, the very same prophecy about the earthquake is present in *Risālah Āmin*, published in 1901. Therefore, despite such repetition, how can any intelligent person think that I was totally unaware of this prophecy? Of course, I have also reiterated again and again, as is my belief, that it cannot be categorically claimed with regard to the prophecies that they will necessarily be fulfilled in a certain way. It is possible that God—the All-Knowing, the All-Wise—may choose some other manner for its manifestation
that has the same grandeur and power and awe-inspiring feature as the prophecy signifies.

Thus, I had the fullest conviction of the grandeur and gravity of the prophecy:


عفت الدیار محلّھا ومقامھا

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

and I believed it, with full faith, to be the word of God Almighty, and its fulfilment had made it clear to me that it came about as were the literal words of the prophecy. Therefore, was it not the time when compassion for mankind should have been stirred and I should have strived that, in order to be saved from the future earthquake, they should turn to repentance and seeking forgiveness and should adopt some appropriate measures? Did I do something wrong that I warned people to save themselves from the calamity regarding which I had been granted certainty? Is it not in the nature of man that when he learns of a calamity his heart is stirred with sympathy for his fellow beings? Of course, there are some people of butcher-like mentality who care nothing for the pain and suffering of the other. But I do not consider such people to be humans.

**HIS STATEMENT**—By having admitted his sin (referring to myself), he has foolishly cut at the root of his own original claim to Prophethood.

**MY ANSWER**—Like the Jews, you may twist my words as much as you want; what can I say to you! Nonetheless, those who fear God Almighty, despite being Prophets and Messengers, maintain that they were not able to do discharge the obligation of the propagation of
the message as was its due. And even this, they considered to be a grave sin and they wail and weep and well up with anguish and remain constantly in istighfar. However, these barren maulawis—who possess only dry bones—what do they know of this spirituality? None of the Prophets displayed the self-assurance of being sinless. The one who came into the world as Afdalur-Rusul [the Most Exalted of the Messengers] and Khatamur-Rusul [the Seal of the Messengers], had even uttered:

ربنا اغفرلنا ذنوبنا وبايع بيننا وبين خطائنا

[O our Lord, forgive us our sins and create a distance between us and our shortcomings].

The Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him always said, ‘Surah Hud has aged me.’ He used to offer istighfar more than anyone, and used to say that he offered istighfar more than seventy times a day.

Addressing him, God Almighty said:

١اسْتَغْفِرْهُ وَ رَبِّكَ بِحَمْدِ فَسَبِّحْ اَفْوَاجًا اللّٰهِ دِيْنِ فِيْ يَدْخُلُوْنَ النَّاسَ رَاَيْتَ وَ الْفَتْحُ وَ اللّٰهِ نَصْرُ جَآءَ اِذَا

2 تَوَّابًا كَانَ اِنَّهٗ

This Surah was revealed near the time of demise of the Holy Prophet,

1. The Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, said: ما عبدناك حقًا عبادت، Meaning: ‘O our Lord, we were not able to discharge the obligation of Your worship as was its due.’

Will you object here that if the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was himself unable to worship, how could he admonish others to do so? Alas! (Author)

2. When the help of Allah comes, and the victory, and you see men entering the religion of Allah in troops, glorify your Lord with His praise and seek forgiveness of Him. Surely, He is Oft-Returning with compassion (Surah an-Nasr, 110:2–4). [Publisher]
may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. In it Allah the Exalted emphatically informs of His help and support and the attainment of the objectives of the faith: ‘Now O Prophet, praise and extol God, and seek forgiveness from God, for He is Tawwâb [Oft-Returning with compassion].’ The mention of seeking forgiveness at this juncture means to point out that now the work of propagation has ended, and now you should pray to God that He should forgive if there has been any minimal lapse in the task of propagation. Mûsâ [Moses] too, in the Torah, cries recounting his errors. And as for the one whom the Christians have made into ‘God’, a man once addressed him as ‘Good Master!’ and the latter replied: ‘Why callest thou me good? There is no one good but God.’

This has been the custom of all the Auliyâ’. All declared istighfâr to be their practice. Satan is the exception.

They killed the horse having ridden it hard through the night,
And in the morning they lament that they have been left behind.

**HIS STATEMENT**—In order to justify the prophecy in Barâhîn-e-Ahmadiyya and to paint it to be about an earthquake, and to establish, thereby, his knowledge of the unseen and prophethood, he (meaning, this humble one) has claimed that, through the prophecy in Barâhîn-e-Ahmadiyya, he had been given the information from God with great clarity that it implied an earthquake; but, due to the fear of abuse and distrust of people, he concealed it and did not translate the Arabic into Urdu and publish it. And by virtue of this act he (meaning I) says that he was guilty of a grave sin against God and remained firm and persistent in this very sin for twenty-five years.
MY ANSWER—Maulawi Şāhib! You have, today, surpassed even the Jews in distortion. To be called maulawi and commit such wilful dishonesty in expounding the meaning of such a clear text! Can it be the work of people who believe in the Day of Reckoning? Where and when in my announcement did I write that I remained firm and persistent in this sin for twenty-five years that I did not publish the translation of the Arabic revelation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya? Open pages 516 and 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya and see the translation of the Arabic revelations is present at both places. Then how could I have said that I did not translate and publish the Arabic revelation and remained firm and persistent in this sin for twenty-five years?

In the presence of the fact that both these revelations are recorded on pages 516 and 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya along with their Urdu translation, can any wise person accept that I could have written in my announcement that I had not set out the translation of those revelations in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya? Rather, my statement in my announcement of 11 May 1905 pertained to the Arabic revelation that had been published without translation in my announcement of 31 May 1904, namely, the revelation:

عفت الديار محلّها ومقامها

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

Translation of this had not been set out in Urdu. Maulawi Şāhib made this distortion so as to establish the blame on me as if I wilfully did not translate the Arabic revelation of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya for twenty-five years and kept it concealed.

Apart from this, there were, in fact, two prophecies in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya regarding the earthquake, one was recorded on page 516
and the other was recorded on page 557. And in my announcement of 11 May 1905, it is written with regard to just one prophecy that it had not been translated into Urdu. Hence, if the announcement of 11 May 1905 refers to those two prophecies of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, it should not have contained this statement: ‘The Arabic prophecy was not even translated.’ Instead it should have had the statement, ‘Two Arabic revelations were not even translated.’ But even then writing such would have been false because the translation of both the Arabic prophecies is present in *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*. Let him who so desires, look them up.

Besides this, the announcement of 11 May 1905, which has been thus criticized by Maulawi Sahib has not vanished from the world; many may still have it. Its actual text is: ‘After that earthquake, it occurred to me again and again that I committed a grave sin for not having publicised the prophecy as it should have been, since that prophecy had been published only in two Urdu newspapers and two magazines, and there had also been the omission that the Arabic prophecy was also not translated.’

Now, it is quite evident that the Arabic prophecies of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, which are recorded on page 316 and page 557, were neither published in two Urdu newspapers nor was their translation omitted, nor were they mentioned in any other magazine. Rather, the prophecy that was published in two Urdu newspapers and was not translated from Arabic to Urdu was this very prophecy:

مکہ و مکرمہ میں عفت الدیار محلّہا و مقامہا

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out]

because it was not only published in two newspapers, *Al-Ḥakam* of 31 May 1905 being one of them, but was also published by Maulawi Muḥammad ‘Ali, M.A. in both of his magazines on 20 March 1904.
His own handwritten note is recorded in the footnote.¹

Now, just open your eyes, and first read the note of Maulawi [Muḥammad ʿAlī], and then drown in shame. There is no need to say anything more. O mere mortal! Such slyness could not have been practiced even by the Jews regarding whom Allah says:

Part 6, Rukū́ 7—١٠٣

What kind of specimen of your scholarship did you show? I cannot imagine that you were so naïve that you erred, in your simplicity, in understanding the text. You had written a review on Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya, and you knew well that the Arabic revelations which I have mentioned in the Ishtihār [Announcement] were not set out without translation.

And you knew well that these Arabic revelations of Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya have neither been mentioned in our two newspapers Al-Ḥakam and Al-Badr, nor has anyone from my Community composed two such magazines in which there is any mention of these revelations of Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya. Hence, when these Arabic revelations of Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya have their translation recorded in Barāḥīn-e-Ahmadiyya, and when they are neither mentioned in any newspaper nor magazine, nor do they constitute one prophecy so that this text of the announcement of 11 May 1905, ‘The Arabic prophecy was not even

1. ★ My master, peace, mercy and blessings of God be upon you! This revelation:

 enfrent diyar ʿalāhi ṭamāmah

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out.] had been published in both magazines in March, and is to be found on page 126 of the magazine. It was after reading this revelation and then reading the news of the earthquake in newspapers that Charles S. Wright Abdul Haq, who was then in New Zealand, wrote a letter expressing his great joy at the fulfilment of this prophecy by way of an earthquake. (Muḥammad ʿĀlī)

2. They pervert the words from their proper places (Sūrah al-Māʿidah, 5:14).

[Publisher]
translated,’ might apply to them, and when they are in fact two proph-
ecies—it becomes quite legitimate to demand from you as to why did
you lie so much? Perhaps you acted on the fatwa justifying ‘expedient
lie’ against me issued by the maulawis in the course of the Karam Dīn
trial. In any case, you must explain as to why you applied to the two
revelations of Barāhin-e-Ahmadiyya found on pages 516 and 557¹ the
words meant for the revelation:

عفت الديار محلّها ومقامها

[Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out].

Is this the honesty and integrity you people have in your status as
maulawis that you fabricated such a lie and you felt no fear of God
Almighty in your heart? That is not all; you have slyly and mischie-
vously written something on your own in your article and have tried to
make it appear to people as though the statement you have attributed
to me had indeed come from my pen.

Thus the text you have imputed to me by way of forgery is:

Through the prophecy in Barāhin-e-Ahmadiyya, I had been
given the information from God with great clarity that it
referred to an earthquake. Nonetheless, I concealed it due to
the fear of abuse and distrust by people and did not render the
Urdu translation of the Arabic and publish it. By so doing I
committed a great sin against God and persisted and perse-
vered in this very sin for twenty-five years.

O wretched fabricator! Should I still not say: ‘God’s curse be upon the
liar!’—who fabricated words and attributed them to me? O callous

¹. In the 2008 edition of Rūḥānī Khazā’in, the referenced text appears in vol. 1,
pages 615 and 665. In the 2016 English translation of Barāhin-e-Ahmadiyya,
Part IV, this text appears on pages 395 and 435. [Publisher]
tyrant! You call yourself a Maulawī and yet were not ashamed when you unjustifiably lied so much about me. Can you show me these words that you have written in my announcement of 11 May 1905 or in any other announcement or in any magazine? [May the curse of Allah be upon the liars].

Let those who consider such people to be maulawīs [religious clerics] and honest and are eager to act upon their word, be cautious. This is the state of their honesty. The words of a liar necessarily have contradictions, and so is this statement of the Maulawi Śāhib full of contradictions. Thus, on page 5, column 3, lines 15 and 24, he quotes the statement of my Ishtihār as: ‘I had given the news of this earthquake in Barahīn-e-Ahmadiyya, and even though at that time my mind did not envisage something out of the ordinary, but now, looking at these prophecies, it seems that they were about a future earthquake which remained obscure to me at that time.’

Now, readers should see for themselves that the statement recorded above just means that at the time when I was writing Barahīn-e-Ahmadiyya, my mind could not turn to it that the earthquake means an actual earthquake. This point remained obscure from my mind, and now after twenty-five years when the earthquake came about did I realize that those prophecies of Barahīn-e-Ahmadiyya were related to the future earthquake.

This is what he has written as an admission on my part and it is quite accurate, for I did indeed publish this in my announcement of April 1905, entitled An-Nidā min Wahy-ī-Samā’ on page 7 of the announcement published at the Nawal Kishore Press, Lahore. The full text is as follows: ‘It should be noted that both these earthquakes are mentioned in my book Barahīn-e-Ahmadiyya which was published in many countries twenty-five years ago. Even though at that time my mind did not envisage anything out of the ordinary, yet looking at these prophecies now, it seems evident that they were related to future earthquakes that remained obscure to me at that time.’

Now readers can understand that I have clearly written in this
Ishtihār that prior to the occurrence of the earthquake on 4 April 1905, my mind had not moved to realize—as is understood from the literal words of ‘the rending asunder of a mountain’—that the prophecies of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya did in fact mean ‘earthquake’.

And there is an argument for it too that the translation of both of these prophecies as is in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, has not been done literally either. This is why in the Ishtihār of 21st April 1905, which was composed after 4 April 1905, I openly admitted that for twenty-five years I could not designate the prophecy recorded in both places in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya which is:

\textit{فلمّا تجلّٰی ربّہ للجبل}

specifically to be about an earthquake. However, it became clear after the earthquake of 4th April 1905 that it was about this very earthquake. And this is the fact that is established by my Ishtihār of 21 April 1905.

As against this announcement, the claim that Maulawī Muḥammad Ḥusain has falsely forged against me and the statement of his own which he has attributed to me, is given below once again. Here it is: ‘I had been given the information from God with great clarity that the prophecy in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya referred to an earthquake. Nonetheless, I concealed it due to the fear of abuse and distrust by people and did not render and publish the Urdu translation of the Arabic. By so doing I committed a great sin against God and persisted and persevered in this very sin for twenty-five years.’

Now let the readers decide in all fairness whether or not in this statement, that Maulawī Šāhib has attributed to me is opposed to the text of my announcement of 21st April 1905, which I have cited above. In the aforementioned announcement I had clearly written that, prior

---

1. When God shall manifest His Glory on the mountain, He will cause it to break asunder! [Publisher]
to my announcement of 11 May 1905, which was published twenty-five years after Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, my mind had not moved to consider that the earthquake meant a real physical earthquake. But the meaning of the revelation became clear twenty-five years later at the occurrence of the earthquake.

Since the two statements are contradictory, and I only accept one of them, which has been set out in this article of Maulawī Ṣāḥīb with his own hand, namely, that for twenty-five years I could not ascertain the meaning of the prophecies found on pages 516 and 557 of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya. Now can there be any doubt that the second statement would be considered a fabrication of Maulawī Ṣāḥīb until he proves it from any of my books or announcements, that I have written the afore-said statement somewhere or I have written somewhere that I persisted and persevered in this sin for twenty-five years that, I had categorically learnt about the earthquake from the time of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya and yet kept this news concealed?

Now, readers, for the sake of God, being mindful of your death, tell me honestly whether or not a person who fabricates so much and concocts statements and ascribes them to me deserves some punishment and penalty as per the Shariah? Make a clear statement and be rewarded. And also tell me, solely for the sake of Allah, whether such a person who commits forgery with such cheek, deserves to be called a maulawī in the future? And is it not appropriate that a council of scholars should be appointed and he should be summoned and asked in which book or magazine have I written the imagined statement that he has attributed to me?

I shudder at the thought of someone being called a maulawī, and yet being guilty of such forgery, distortion, dishonesty, falsehood, impertinence, and insolence. Do those who label me as a kāfir and faithless not remember the hadith of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, in which it is written that the majority of maulawīs in the Latter Days would develop similarity to the Jewish divines? Rather, even worse than that, some ʿabādīth [pl. hadith] state
that they would develop similarity to the extent that if a Jew had committed incest with his mother, they, too, would do the same.\(^1\)

Despite the fact that the Batālawī has hurt me by lying to this extent and by his dishonesty and distortion, if he can still produce from any of my books the statement that he has ascribed to me, that I persisted and persevered in this very sin for twenty-five years, I can give him fifty rupees in cash. Otherwise, for my part, it suffices to say لَعْنَةُ اللِّٰ عَلَی الْكٰذِبِیْنَ [‘The curse of Allah be upon the liars’].

**HIS STATEMENT**—It is not the hallmark of a true Prophet or recipient of revelation that he should knowingly and wilfully conceal and not proclaim for twenty-five years what God has commanded him to proclaim.

---

1. \(^\star\) Those ulema of the Latter Days whom the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, termed as the Jews of this Ummah are specifically this particular kind of maulawīs who are opposed to the Promised Messiah, thirst after his blood, are ever eager to destroy him, call him a disbeliever, faithless, and deceiver, and are ready to crucify him if it were possible for them; for this is how the Jewish divines and Pharisees treated Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, and sought to kill him. But the ulema who are not of this kind, we cannot call them the Jews of this Ummah; rather, the Jews are only those who, like the enemies of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, call me a deceiver, disbeliever, and faithless. It is not I that call them ‘Jews’, it is the Word of God Almighty that labels them as such. And this cannot be avoided in view of the fact that I am indeed true and am not a disbeliever, deceiver, or faithless. Thus, anyone who calls the true Messiah with these names, he is designated by the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, as a ‘Jew’. Had Maulawi Abū Sa‘eed Muḥammad Ḥusain not declared me to be faithless, disbeliever, deceiver, and not considered him worthy of being killed, I would not call him a ‘Jew’, but while he does use such words regarding me, and while God knows that I am the true Promised Messiah, he makes himself a ‘Jew’ by justifying the application of the hadith of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, to himself, and yet asks me how I came to be ‘Isā. The answer to it is that it happened just because of you people—had you not become ‘Jews’, I could not have this name. (Author)
MY ANSWER—This calumny has already been answered and I have stated that I never claimed in any announcement that the true connotation of the two prophecies recorded in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, namely:

فلما تجلّى ربه للجبل جعله دكًّا

[When God shall manifest His Glory on the mountain, He will cause it to break asunder!]

had become evident to me at that time. Rather, I have written time and again that their true meaning became manifest after twenty-five years. And if the meaning had become apparent to me earlier, why would the error in its translation, as recorded in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya have occurred?

Again, I am surprised at this statement of this ignorant Maulawī who says that it is not the hallmark of a true Prophet or a recipient of revelation to knowingly and wilfully conceal for twenty-five years that which God commanded him to proclaim. This ignorant one doesn’t know it yet that the propagation relates to the injunctions and not to prophecies, which the recipient of revelation is not ordained to propagate. Rather, he has the prerogative whether or not to announce them. Moreover, since the reality of the prophecy had not become manifest to me, I was not obliged to reveal its meaning and purpose to the people. And yet I did publish its translation in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya insofar as I could understand it with due diligence. So how was I remiss as far as propagation is concerned?

لا يجَّبُ اللّٰهُ مِّن عِبَادِهِ أَن يَثْقَلْهُمْ بِمَا لَا قُوَّةَ بَيْنَهُمَا ۚ إِنَّ اللّٰهَ هُوَ الْقَهْرُ Walton (Publisher)

But if the reality of those prophecies of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya—which became clear to me after the earthquake of 4 April 1905—had been

1. Allah burdens not any soul beyond its capacity (Surah al-Baqarah, 2:287).

[Publisher]
known to me at the time of the publication of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*, then, even though I was not ordained to publish it, I would still have done all in my power to inform the people about its true purport, out of sympathetic consideration for mankind.

**HIS STATEMENT**—This is a strange excuse, worse than the charge it is intended to explain, that not only the ordinary people, but also the Prophets, may Allah be pleased with them, commit errors in interpreting prophecies!

**MY ANSWER**—It is these things that prove dishonesty being your profession. I know well that you are not a suckling infant. You are not so ignorant of the knowledge of hadith as should be called an ignoramus of the first order. You are not insane whose senses are not stable at all. Is it dishonesty or something else that you deny that Prophets, may peace be upon them, can commit an error in interpretation. Everyone knows that, without a doubt, an error can be made. But they cannot be allowed to persist in that error forever. I have written much about it in this very Supplement, there is no need to reiterate.

**HIS STATEMENT**—Whenever the charge against you of a prophecy turning out to be false is established, you try to refute the objection with the same excuse.

**MY ANSWER**—O Maulawi! May God guide you aright and bring the day when your eyes open up. Like the person who has a large carbuncle on the back of his neck—and because of it, he is always leaning towards the earth and is unable to lift his gaze towards the sky—you, are deprived of heavenly light and do not benefit from it. To this day, God Almighty has manifested more than 10,000 Signs in my support which have been fulfilled like a bright day, but according to you every
one of the prophecies has turned out to be false, and, in your estimation, I have been making excuses as if to make falsehood appear true. Now here too, what can I say other than لَعْنَةُ اللِّٰهِ عَلَی الْكٰذِبِیْنَ ['The curse of Allah be upon the liars']?

Anyone who stays in my company even for 40 days does witness one Sign of God Almighty or another. It is for this reason that thousands of people have inclined this way, and despite your malice and miserliness and continuous babble, a whole world has come to me and continues to come. No harm could be caused by the air blowing from your mouth. God caused the solar and lunar eclipses in the heaven for me, but according to you the hadith [which prophesied these happenings] is erroneous. I came at the head of the 14th century, and by the grace of God and in accordance with the conditions set down by the Traditions, I have already lived for a quarter of a century; but, in your estimation, this hadith also is erroneous! It was also written that plague would strike—and strike forcefully—when the Promised Messiah would appear, but even this hadith is false in your eyes. It was written that a Sign would appear in the sun—and this has appeared and can be viewed with a telescope—but in your eyes even this hadith is false. And it was mentioned in hadith that in those days the Star of Dhus-Sinīn [comet] will rise. Accordingly, that star did rise long ago but, according to you, this hadith, too, is erroneous. And it was written that the Promised Messiah would be from this very Ummah and would appear towards the east of Damascus but, according to you, this hadith too is erroneous. And it was written that in the time of the Promised Messiah the she camels would be rendered useless—and, in it, there was an indication that trains would run between Madīnah and Makkah, but, according to you, this hadith too is erroneous! Thus, when, in your estimation, the āḥādīth of the Messenger, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, are erroneous, then why
would you feel hesitant at pronouncing my prophecies to be erroneous?¹

Let alone the discussion of hadith and my prophecies, you turn away even from the Holy Quran despite being called a Muslim. God Almighty proclaims that Jesus has died; you designate him to be alive and have him seated in some chamber in Heaven. Did God Almighty not say on behalf of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāᵃˢ that:

Does this not mean: ‘After You caused me to die, You Yourself were the Watcher over them.’? Does it not become clearly established, after reviewing all these verses, that the answer Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, gives to Almighty God’s question is that: ‘As long as I was among my ummah, I was a witness over their deeds and knew of their condition. When, however, You caused me to die, thereafter it was You who were their Guardian and Protector.’

Thus, is it not clearly the purport of these verses that his people were not corrupted during his lifetime but were corrupted after his death; and he did not know what befell them and what creed they adopted after his death? Hence, it is clear from this Word of God Almighty that, if we were to suppose that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is still alive, we will also have to suppose at the same time that the Christians have not been corrupted yet and are still established on the true faith, since Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā ties the adherence of his people to the right path to his own life span and repudiates that he taught them to accept him and his mother to be god. And he submits before God, ‘As long as I lived among my Ummah, I only imparted them the teaching that You had directed me

¹. In some of the hadiths it is also said that at that time people would be barred from performing the Hajj, but in your estimation all these hadiths are erroneous since they furnish proof in favour of my claim. (Author)

². Sūrah al-Mā’idah, 5:118 [Publisher]
to impart. And when You caused me to die, I know not what became of them thereafter.’

These verses also make it clear that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāʿ will not come to the world a second time; otherwise, it necessarily implies that Jesus would lie before God Almighty on the Day of Judgment, for had he returned to the world before Qiyāmah, it would be a blatant lie to say that he had no knowledge what doctrine his people adopted after him. One who comes to the world a second time and has seen with his own eyes that his people have been corrupted—and witnesses their state of disbelief not for one but continuously for forty years—how can he say before God Almighty on the Day of Judgment that he is completely unaware of the state of his people?

Now, it is obvious that your belief that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsāʿ is alive and shall descend upon the earth a second time is clearly and blatantly against the explicit statements of the Holy Quran, and yet you do not abandon this belief. Therefore, in this state of affairs, why should I regret if you—having seen hundreds of my Signs—should reject them outright? Your condition is like that of a person who gets into the habit of eating clay and even when he is presented with the choicest food, he still craves for the clay.

It is also a lie to say that you understand Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, to be alive on the basis of the Hadith. It is clearly written in Ṣaḥīḥ Bukhārī, which you consider to be the truest book after the Book of God, that on the night of the Miḥrāj [Spiritual Ascension] the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, saw Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, among the deceased souls who had passed away from this world. In fact, he found his station close to Ḥaḍrat Yaḥyā [John the Baptist] who had died. Pray, have some fear of God. If Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā had gone to heaven along with his earthly body without surrendering his soul, then what compatibility did he have with those souls who have reached the other world after death? For him, a separate house or room was needed where he could live his physical life; rather, than going to the dwellers of mortal world who have already tasted
death. So, how great a lie it is that hangs from your neck like a garland; namely, that that you declare a person alive who died 1900 years ago!

Everyone was excusable as long as God had not unravelled this mystery. Now that the Ḥakam [Arbiter] has come, and the reality has come to light, and the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿIsā has been established from the Holy Quran, and the testimony about his residence among the souls of the dead was found on the basis of the Hadith, and the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿIsā stands proven by the Word of God and by the act of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—that he had given his eyewitness testimony. Moreover, it has been established from the Hadith of Muslim and Ṣaḥīḥ Bukhārī that the Messiah would be from within this very Ummah, and this Messiah—in his capacity as the Ḥakam—has also testified in keeping with the Holy Quran and these ahādīth. If you still do not accept, pray tell, is it honesty or dishonesty?

Why should I be disappointed in someone who does not accept my Signs, when he neither believed the Word of God nor did he accept the testimony of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—and he did not wish to disavow his error by being fearful of God? Then why should I regret if such a person fabricates a lie against me?

One person’s error cannot be used as justification by the other. If during the Dark Ages, such a notion had developed in the heart of people that Ḥaḍrat ʿIsā had gone to heaven alive, it cannot serve as an authority. In the best of ages [the age of the Holy Prophet Ḥas and his Companions], there was no trace or sign of this concept; otherwise, why would the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, have reached the agreement that all Prophets, peace be upon them, had passed away?

In Islam, the very first consensus was that all Prophets had died. When the Messenger of Allah, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, passed away, some of the Companions were also of the opinion that he had not died, and would return to this world and would
cut off the noses and ears of the hypocrites. At that time, Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr Siddique, may Allah be pleased with him, gathered them all in the Prophet’s Mosque and read out the verse:

1. Sūrah Al-e-’Imrān, 3:145 [Publisher]

Meaning that Muhammad, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is a Messenger and all previous Messengers have died before him.

Thereupon, the Companions, who were all present, may Allah be pleased with them, realized that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, had undoubtedly passed away, and they were fully convinced that none of the Prophets was alive. No one raised the objection that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is outside the purview of this verse and he is still alive. Was it possible that those true lovers of the Messenger of Allah, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, could be reconciled with the notion that their own Prophet died at a relatively young age while ‘Īsā had been alive for 600 years and would continue to live until Doomsday? Indeed, such a thought would have killed them. This is why Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him, reassured them by reciting this verse to them:

2. Muhammad is only a Messenger. Verily, all Messengers have passed away before him (Sūrah Al-e-’Imrān, 3:145). [Publisher]

And such was the impact of this verse upon the hearts of the Companions that they roamed the bazaars of Madinah reciting this verse as though it had been revealed that very day. In Islam, the earliest ijmā’ [consensus] was that all Prophets had died. But O Maulawī Şāḥib!! What would you care for this ijmā’ of the Companions! Your religion is prejudice, not Islam.

The religion of Islam is being destroyed day after day by such **false beliefs** but you people are exulting;

روقت دين عقائد ت روها وشمان شدو ويار آزووه
Your beliefs have demolished the splendour of the Faith;
Enemies are happy, but the friends are sad.

It appears that prior to this *ijma* upon the death of all Prophets, may peace be upon them, some of the less-informed Companions, who lacked perspicacity, were still unaware of the doctrine that all Prophets had died, and this was the reason why [Abū Bakr] Siddique, may Allah be pleased with him, needed to recite this verse to them. Upon hearing this verse, they all became convinced that all the people of the past had been consigned to their graves. It was in this context that Hassān bin Thābit, may Allah be pleased with him, wrote these few couplets as elegy for the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, in which he has alluded to this. These are:

كنت التواد لتاظری فعمی علیك الناظر
من شاء بعدك فلیمت فعلیك كنت احذر

(Translation): You were the pupil of my eye, so I became blind with your demise. After you, it makes no difference to me if someone (be it Jesus or Moses) dies, for I was only fearful of your demise.

May God reward him the best reward [for these verses]. This indeed is called love.1

---

1. Ṣad Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr Siddique has done such a great favour to this Ummah that it cannot be adequately thanked. Had he not gathered all the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, in the Prophet’s Mosque and recited this verse to them that all the previous Prophets had died, the Ummah would
And if there is an iota of fairness, you would realise that Ḥaḍrat Masiḥ, may peace be upon him, was himself against the belief that someone can go to heaven and then return to the world. Therefore, when the Jews asked him about the second coming of the Prophet Ilyās [Elijah] and showed him the Scriptures—that it was written that Ilyās would return to the world, and only after the coming of Ilyās, the Messiah whose advent had been promised to the Jews, would come and he was to be the Khātamul-Anbiyā’ [Seal of their Prophets]. Hearing this objection, ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, said that Prophet Yaḥyā [John the Baptist] who was among them and has come before him [Jesus] ‘He is Ilyās who is to come. He who has ears to hear, let him hear!’1. His statement greatly displeased the Jews and they labelled him disbeliever, an innovator, and violator of the consensus of the people.

In the same vein, in a book recently compiled by a great Jewish

have perished. For, in that case, today’s mischievous ulema would have contended that the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, too believed that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is alive. But now, due to the presentation of Siddique the Great this verse, an ijma’ has formed among all the Companions that all past Prophets had died—even couplets were composed reflecting this consensus. May God shower thousands of blessings upon Abū Bakr’s soul. He saved all souls from perdition. All the Companions were included in this ijma’, not even a single one of them was out of it. It was the first ijma’ of the Companions and was an act deserving of the utmost gratitude. There is a mutual similarity between Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him, and the Promised Messiah, namely, the promise of God, in the Holy Quran, regarding both of them was that they would appear at a time when a state of fear will prevail upon Islam and a chain of apostasy will start. So, that is exactly what happened in the time of Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, and in the time of the Promised Messiah. That is, in the time of Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr hundreds of ignorant Arabs had turned apostate after the demise of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and there remained only two mosques where prayers were held. Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr re-established them on Islam. Similarly, in the time of the Promised Messiah hundreds of thousands of people renounced Islam and became Christians. Both these circumstances are mentioned in the Holy Quran, that is, they are mentioned by way of a prophecy. (Author)

1. Matthew 11:15 [Publisher]
scholar, which I have with me in which he makes a great clamour to
denounce Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, and calls him, God for-
bid, a great liar, a disbeliever, and heretic and appeals to people and
says: ‘Be a judge and consider that whereas God had given the infor-
mation in His book—as is written in Malachi, which is declared by the
author to be authentic and from God—that the Promised Messiah of
the Jews would not come until the Prophet Ilyās comes to the world
again having descended from the heavens; and it is acknowledged that
the Prophet Ilyās has not yet descended from the heavens—whose
descent in advance of the Promised Messiah is essential—how, then,
can we accept him as the true Promised Messiah? Are we to ruin our
faith or turn away from the Torah? What should we do? And when
the Prophet Malachi has told us, having received revelation from God
Almighty, that it is necessary that the Promised Messiah must not be
born among the Jews until Prophet Ilyās returned to the world accord-
ing to the promise of God, how can this man be the Promised Messiah
for Jews?1 And [he further says that] since we received the news of

1. ✫ It is the belief of the Jews that there are two Messiahs: (1) One is that
Messiah of the earlier advent, for whom there is the precondition that Elijah
would come to the world before him. This is the Messiah who Jesus claimed
to be, but the Jewish scribes did not accept this claim and said that this claim
was contrary to the categorical dictates of the Book of God, the reason being
that Elijah, as told by the book of God, did not return to the earth from heav-
en. Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā told them again and again that such texts are metaphorical in
nature and that the Elijah referred to here was the Prophet Yāḥyā. But, since
the Jews were strict literalists they did not accept this explanation and, for
this very reason, they still do not accept Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā to this day and vilify him.
(2) The second Messiah awaited by the Jews is the one regarding whom they
believe that he would appear at the end of the sixth millennium. Therefore,
there is much consternation among the Jews these days, since, according to
the lunar calendar, the sixth millennium since Adam has ended and now
the seventh millennium is underway, and that Promised Messiah has not
yet come. The Christian scholars also held the same belief that the second
coming of their Messiah would take place at the end of the sixth millenni-
um. They too are in despair now as the sixth millennium has ended. At last,
having despaired, they have expressed the view that the Church itself should
Ilyās’s return to the world before the coming of the Promised Messiah with such clarity and detail, which cannot have any different interpretation, if we artificially turn away from its obvious import and give some interpretation to this prophecy, it will be a terrible dishonesty. God did not tell us in His book that someone the like of Ilyās will come before the Promised Messiah; rather, He told us in explicit terms that Ilyās himself would descend from heaven. How can we deny such categorical tidings?

And then, at the end of his article, he writes: ‘If God were to ask them on the Day of Judgment why they did not accept this man—Jesus son of Mary—and why they did not believe in him, they would submit Prophet Malachi’s book before Him.’

In short, it is a long-standing belief of the Jews that their true Messiah—the first Promised Messiah—will only come when Prophet Ilyās has returned to the world before him. And yet Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, wouldn’t listen to anything from them and insisted that the one who was to come was meant to be the Prophet Yahyā. This is the verdict of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā which you have raised a clamour against. Did Prophet Ilyās return to the world so that ‘Īsā should come back too? Indeed, were it permissible for anyone to return to the world, then Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā would not be deemed a true Prophet. His Prophethood would be invalidated, for in that case, it would have to be conceded that, to unfairly justify his claim, he made Prophet Yahyā to be Ilyās while Ilyās had not yet descended from heaven. Shouldn’t the story about the return of Elijah serve as a lesson for the wise as it led hundreds of thousands of Jews to reject Jesus and to be cast into Hell?

be considered the Messiah and give up the hope about the one expected to return. In short, according to the Jews, there are two Messiahs, and that the last Promised Messiah, who was to appear at the end of the sixth millennium, is far superior and triumphant compared to the first Messiah, yet they have been deprived of both, having found neither the one nor the other. (Author)
When the Prophet Ilyās—whose descent from heaven had been appointed as a Sign for the truth of the claim of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā—did not descend from heaven, why then do the Muslims of today adopt the same path that led the Jews to disbelief before it? If descent from heaven had been the practice of God, then what were the obstacles in the path of Ilyās that he could not descend while the Scripture promised his descent, forcing Jesus to suffer embarrassment before the Jews and finally having to rescue himself from the nonsensical critique of the Jews by declaring Prophet Yahyā to be the ‘like’ of Prophet Ilyās?

Just imagine how ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, would have been hurt by this contention of the Jews when they kept questioning how he could be the true Messiah when the Signs of the Promised Messiah were not to be found in him, for the Scripture says in clear words that the Promised Messiah would not appear until Ilyās had first come to this world. The Jews were apparently justified in this argument, for Ilyās had not descended from heaven—nor has he descended from heaven to this day. It would seem that all the audacity that the Jews showed in mischief and impertinence was due, indeed, to the fact that Ḥaḍrat Masīḥ did not possess the required Sign for the Promised Messiah as given in the literal words of the Scripture. And Ḥaḍrat Masīḥ had realized in his own heart that his reply was merely interpretative which the Jews would not accept. He, therefore, stated in soft words that the Ilyās who was to return to the world was none other than Yahyā son of Zakariyyā [John the Baptist son of Zachariah], so accept him if you will. In the same vein, it was demanded of our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, as is mentioned in the Holy Quran, that he should show a miracle of ascending to heaven and descending back, but ultimately they were told in categorical terms and God Almighty said:
To this day the Jews taunt the Christians that if Jesus was indeed the Promised Messiah, why did Prophet Ilyās not descend before him? The Christians have never been able to answer this objection and cannot argue with them.

Hence, our opponents should learn a lesson from the prophecy regarding the return of Prophet Ilyās lest their fate be like that of the Jews. However, to complete the similarity, it was also necessary that just as the earlier Jews had quarrelled much with Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā about the second coming of Ilyās and had declared him faithless, disbeliever, and apostate, so would these people quarrel with me regarding the return of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. Little do these ignorant people realize that the person they supplicate for, and on whose account they hurl abuse at me, has himself decreed against them, for what I say to them with regard to the return of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is exactly what Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā said to the Jews. And just as God has named me as ‘Īsā, so had He named Prophet Yaḥyā as Ilyās.

This aforesaid precedent is reassuring to a person who has faith. And God also affirms:

The Jews were excusable to some extent because in their time there was to be found no decisive pronouncement in God’s books regarding the second coming of anyone, but now the verdict is already before us. Did the Prophet Ilyās return to this world in keeping with the prophecy of Prophet Malachi, so that these people too should entertain hope of the return of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā?

1. Say, ‘Holy is my Lord! I am not but a man sent as a Messenger.’ (Sūrah Banī Isrā‘īl, 17:94). [Publisher]
2. So ask the people of the Reminder, if you know not (Sūrah al-Anbiyā‘, 21:8). [Publisher]
In fact, the authentic *ahādīth* do not even contain the word ‘second coming’ and only use the word نزول [nuzūl—‘descent’], which is only used for honour and respect. We may say of an honoured guest that ‘when he comes he will “descend” at our house’, but would we take this to mean that he will return from heaven? In Arabic, the word for return is رجوع [rujū‘—‘return’], not نزول [nuzūl—‘descent’]. It is a pity that this creed that helps Christianity has—without rhyme or reason—become such an entanglement for those who call themselves Muslims.

Thus humiliated and silenced, our opponents finally come up with the excuse that this is what their forefathers have been saying. They do not consider that those elders were not infallible, and that just as the ancestors of Jews stumbled in the understanding of their prophecies, so have these elders stumbled. By the will and providence of God Almighty, a similar false creed has gained currency among them—the creed had found currency among the Jews that Prophet Ilyās would descend from heaven a second time, and the elders of the Jews awaited the second coming of the Prophet Ilyās with much love and eagerness. Their writings—in poetry and prose—reveals how much their yearning and ecstasy was in anticipation of that event.

Your ancestors were not infallible, but the elders of the Jews even had among them God’s Prophets and recipients of revelation, yet they remained engrossed in this error and it remained hidden from them that some other Prophet was implied by the second coming of Prophet Ilyās and not that literally Ilyās would descend himself. Not until Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā had appeared could any of the Prophets or saints understand this sealed mystery that the return of Ilyās meant the coming of Prophet Yaḥyā and not the real return of Ilyās. So it is nothing new that some of the elders of this Ummah were to be mistaken in the understanding of a matter.

What is even more interesting is that even these elders are not unanimous in this matter. There have been many ulema who were convinced of the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā. Among them is Ḥaḍrat Imām Mālik, may Allah be pleased with him, as it is written:
قد اختلف في عيسى عليه السلام هل هو حي أو ميت وقال مالك مات. Meaning that there was disagreement concerning Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, as to whether he is alive or dead and Mālik, may Allah be pleased with him, said that he is dead. And Muḥy-ud-Dīn ibn al-ʿArabi wrote in one of his books—which is his last book—that ‘Īsā would indeed come but only in a new manifestation; that is, that some other person of this Ummah would appear in the spirit of ‘Īsā. It is an established creed among the Sufis that some perfect people return to this world in the manner that their spirituality manifests itself in some other person, and this latter person virtually becomes as if he is the same first person. The Hindus also maintain a similar principle and they call such a person an ‘Avatar’.

As for the belief that a living human being went to heaven or disappeared, it is also an ancient concept which had a different connotation in remote times, but the ignorant later took it to mean that a person goes to heaven with his body and then returns therefrom. Somewhat similar notions regarding Sayyed Aḥmad Barelvī are in vogue among his followers even to this day, as though he too will return like Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. And they believe that though, like ‘Īsā, he remained unsuccessful in his first advent, he would wield the sword with great strength the second time. The truth is that such creeds were concocted to cover up for those people who left the world in failure and frustration after making grandiose claims.

No one holds such a belief regarding our Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, that he too would come again because in his very first advent he showed such might of his hands to the disbelievers that they remember it only too well to this day, and he died after having fully accomplished his mission.

It seems that Ibn al-ʿArabi had recanted in his later life from his previous utterances, and that is why his last statement is contrary to the earlier one. There are also other Sufi sects who openly profess the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. And I have just described that, at the time of the
death of Holy Prophet, may peace and blessing of Allah be upon him, all the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, had reached an *ijmāʿ* [consensus] that all past Prophets, which includes Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā too, were deceased, and that not one of them was still alive. But as ignorance and innovations began to find their way into Islam, so did this innovation become part of the religion that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā would leave the group of souls of the dead and return to the world again. This doctrine has done great harm to Islam, for only one person out of the entire world has been accorded this distinction that he went to heaven with his body and will come back with the body at some point in time. This doctrine is the initial brick in building the ‘Divinity’ of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, because he has been accorded a distinction that no one else shares with him. May God soon remove this stain from the face of Islam. ᴬᵐⁱⁿ.

Finally, merely *for the sake of God*, I would like to advise Maulawi Abū Saʿīd Muḥammad Ḥusain that you have reached the last stage of your life. Now you should give up absurd shenanigans against God. You tried very hard and connived in every way and used shameful ploys to extinguish this light, but you remained unsuccessful. Had I been an impostor, something must have worked for you and I would have been destroyed long ago. A person who speaks falsehood against God every day and who concocts words on his own—thereafter claiming it to be the revelation from God that he has received—such a person is worse than dogs and swine and apes, so how would it be possible for God to help him? Had this been the enterprise of man and not from God, then no trace of it would have remained. It has been twenty-five years—indeed, an even longer period than this!—since I claimed that I am from God. Although there has been a whole host of people who showed the fury of opposition to my claim, but you—Maulawī Șāhib!—left no stone unturned to harm me; and you kept deceiving not only the public but even the British Government with complaints that I was an impostor and wished ill towards the Government. Grave charges like murder were brought against me
and you appeared in the courts as a witness to prove such charges; you had edicts of apostasy written against me and tried to dissuade people from me. This was when there were only a few people with me, but after your antagonistic endeavours, many hundreds of thousands joined me. Had I not been from God, there would have been no need for your efforts to destroy me; I would have perished by my own imposture and the consequences of my actions. Sound reason cannot accept that an impostor should be given a respite so long as to surpass the time of the ministry of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. In such a case there would be no security, and no distinction would remain between the truthful and the impostor. Can you reply to this: How is it that ever since I have made this claim, so many criminal cases have been brought against me and efforts were exerted to apprehend me—you leaving no stone unturned in the support of such litigation—yet did you or your ilk ever succeed in any of them?

Had I not been true, why would God keep helping the ‘liar’ in every instance and at every occasion; and why would those who were called ‘truthful’ humiliated in every conflict? Their noses were worn down from prostrations invoking malediction upon me, but God continued to support me day after day and none of their prayers against me was accepted. It has been your wont up till now that you wish to incite the British Government and to make them think evil of me by repeatedly publishing reports in your periodicals and newspapers concerning me that are contrary to the facts, but what can be achieved by such cunning? Bear in mind that you will always remain frustrated in such schemes; nothing can transpire on earth until decreed in heaven.

And, in my heart, I harbour no ill-will towards this benevolent government. I was young and now I have grown old. For a long time, I have repeatedly published in many of my books that we are indebted to this government that under its protection we fulfil our duty of propagation with freedom. You are aware that in terms of apparent means there are other countries where you can live. If you were to leave this
country and move to Makkah or Madinah or Constantinople, all these countries are of your religion and disposition, but if I were to go there, I realize that all of them are like beasts to me with exceptions, as Allah may desire. In these circumstances, it is obvious that it is Almighty God’s favour upon me that He has raised me under a government that does not believe in persecution and provides security to its citizens. Notwithstanding this, however, I put all my trust in only One Being, and I am cognisant that it is of His hidden interventions that He has caused this government to be benign towards me, and did not allow the schemes of mischievous reporters to come to fruition. And I do hope that till the time I leave this world, I will not have to depend on anyone other than my True Master, and He will keep me in His protection from every enemy.

فَالحمد للّٰ اوّلً واٰخرًا وظاھرًا وباطنًا ھو ولیّ فی الدّنیا والٰخرۃ وھو نعم المولٰی ونعم
النصر.

[So, praised be Allah—the First and the Last, the Manifest and the Hidden—He is the Protector here and in the Hereafter—and He is the Best Guardian, and the Best Helper].

I trust that He will help me and will never ever let me be wasted. Even if the whole world were to become worse than beasts in their animosity towards me, He will still support me. I will not descend into my grave as a failure at all, for my God is with me at every step, and I am with Him. No one knows my inner self as is known to Him. Even if all were to abandon me, God would raise another people who would be my companions. The foolish opponent imagines that this affair will be damaged on account of his schemes and machinations and the Movement will disintegrate, but little does the fool know that the earth has no power to efface what has been decreed in heaven. The earth and heaven tremble before my Lord.

God is He who sends down His holy revelation on me and informs
me of the secrets of the unseen. There is no God beside Him. And it is certain that He will cause this Movement to flourish and advance and thrive until He demonstrates the distinction between the holy and the unholy. Every opponent may do everything in his power to annihilate this Movement, and strive tooth and nail and then see who ultimately triumphs: him or God? Before this, how hard did Abū Jahl and Abū Lahab and their comrades strive to annihilate the truth—but where are they now? Is there any trace now of the Pharaoh who wished to kill Mūsā? So know for certain that the truthful cannot perish. He is surrounded by an army of angels [to protect him]. Unfortunate is the one who does not recognize him.

Think for yourself: What happened to your reformer [i.e. Nawwab Siddique Hasan Khan of Bhopal] whom you had given the title of Mujaddid? If this had indeed been his title in Heaven, then, in keeping with his own statement published in Hijajul-Kirāmah, he would have lived twenty-five years into this century, but he died at the very onset of the century, and the one whom you call a liar has seen through almost a quarter of the century.

For the sake of God alone, I once again remind you that though it is the wont of all those who oppose any Prophet to claim that no miracle was worked at his hands, and that none of his prophecies was fulfilled—just as we read in Jewish literature with regard to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, and this indeed is what we find written in the Christian literature with regard to our Prophet, may peace and blessing of Allah be upon him—but I give you good advice that, even now, abandoning beastly ways, you should carry out investigations with regard to me.

First of all, you can ask me for the scriptural proof as to whether it is necessary for the Messiah of this Ummah to appear from within this very Ummah. Secondly, you should ascertain how many Signs have appeared from me in support of my claim.

As for the claim that a certain prophecy was not fulfilled, this is
absolutely false,\textsuperscript{1} for the fact is that all prophecies have been fulfilled, and there can be levelled no such objection against any prophecy of mine that has not been raised by ignorant and faithless people against the prophecies of the former Prophets.

If you feared God Almighty, you would understand that your opposition to me is far removed from righteousness. Your reliance is totally on such \textit{ahādith} from among which some are inauthentic and some fabricated, and some from among them are such as you do not understand their true meaning. As against this, my claim is based on insightful discernment. I have such faith in the revelation that has informed me that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, has died and

\textsuperscript{1} Given that, the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is established from the verse of the Holy Quran ['when You did cause me to die']; and in \textit{Ṣābih Bukhārī}, Ibn 'Abbās has interpreted the word \textit{mumātukā} to mean ['I shall cause you to die']; and Shāh Waliullāh also gives ['I shall cause you to die'] to be the meaning of \textit{mumātukā} in \textit{Fauzul-Kabīr}; and it is established from the Holy Quran that \textit{rafa‘a}—'He exalted'—comes after \textit{tawaffī}—'death', for Allah the Exalted, says:

\begin{center}
\textit{اِلَيَّ رَافِعُكَ وَ مُتَوَفِّيْكَ اِنِّیۡ یَۤا عِیْسَی \[‘O Jesus, I will cause you to die a natural death and will exalt you to Myself’ (\textit{Ṣūrah-Āl-e’Imrān}, 3:56).\]}
\end{center}

And not ['O Jesus! I will exalt you to Myself and will cause you to die']. And taking words of the Holy Quran out of their context at one’s own whim falls under the purview of the verse:

\begin{center}
\textit{مَّوَاضِعِهٖ عَنْ الْکَلِمَ يُحَرِّفُوْنَ [They pervert the words from their proper places (\textit{Ṣūrah al-Mā`īdah}, 5:14)].}
\end{center}

And no reliable hadith permits the placing of \textit{rafa‘a}—'exalt you' before \textit{mumātukā}—'I will cause you to die' in this verse. Thus, the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is proven from every aspect. It is also proven that the ‘Īsā who was to come would be from within this Ummah, as the following hadith of the Holy Prophet [ṣaw] is recorded in \textit{Bukhārī} ['your Imam from among you'], and in \textit{Muslim} it is cited as ['your leader from among you']. (Author)
my humble self is the Promised Messiah who was to come, as I have [faith] in the Holy Quran.

This faith is not based merely on good intentions but has been bestowed upon me by the light of revelation from God which shines on me like the sun. How can I expel from my heart the certainty which has been raised to the utmost level by the continuous display of extraordinary Signs, unequivocal knowledge, and the daily experience of clear and unquestionable converse with God? Shall I reject the bounty of understanding and true knowledge which has been bestowed upon me? Or should I turn away from the heavenly Signs that are shown to me? Or should I disobey the commandment of my Lord and Master? What should I do?

I consider death to be a thousand times preferable than turning away from Him who has revealed Himself to me in all His beauty and grace. How long will this worldly life last; and what fidelity can I expect from the people of the world, for the sake of whom I should abandon the Beloved Friend? I know well that my opponents rely only on a moth-eaten crust and they desire that I too should adopt it and should give up the kernel. They try to intimidate and threaten me but, I swear by that Dear One whom I have recognized, that I attach no weight to their threats. I would prefer sorrow in His company to the joy in the company of another. I would prefer death in His company to a long life by abandoning Him. Just as you cannot say that it is night when you have seen the day, in the same way I cannot consider the light that has been shown to me to be darkness.

When you are not prepared to renounce your doctrines which are a collection of doubts and superstitions, how can I leave the path upon which I perceive that a thousand suns are shining? Am I insane or mad that I should not accept the truth even when God Almighty has exhibited it to me with evident Signs? I call God Almighty to witness that thousands of Signs have been displayed to me for my satisfaction, some of which I have communicated to others and some of which I have not communicated to anyone. I find that these Signs are from God
Almighty and no one else beside that One—who has no associate—has the power to exhibit them.

And apart from this, I have been bestowed knowledge of the Quran and the true meanings of ḥadīth [pl. hadith] have been disclosed to me. Why then should I give up such a bright path and adopt the path of ruin? What I say is based on enlightened conviction and what you say is only speculation.

And the example of this is like that of a blind person plunging along on uneven ground in the darkness, not knowing where his foot lands. How shall I then exchange the light that has been bestowed upon me for darkness? I find that God hears my prayers, displays great Signs in my support, talks to me, and discloses the secrets of the hidden to me, helps me with His powerful hand against my enemies, and bestows victory upon me in every conflict, and gives me knowledge of the deeper meanings and verities of the Holy Quran. Then, whom should I accept if I leave such a Powerful and Supreme God?

I know with complete conviction that God is the very same Powerful God, who has manifested Himself to me and who has enlightened me of His existence and His Word and His Work. And I fully believe that the manifestations of His power which I see, and the knowledge of the hidden that He discloses to me, and the Strong Hand from which I receive help at every time of danger, are all the manifestations of that same Perfect and True God who created Adam, and appeared to Nūh, and showed the miracle of the flood. He indeed is the same who helped Mūsā when Pharaoh was about to destroy him, and He indeed is the same God who bestowed complete victory on Ḥaḍrat Muhammad, Chief of the Messengers, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, guarding him against the designs of the

1. Conjecture avails naught against truth (Sūrah an-Najm, 53:29). [Publisher]
disbelievers and the pagans. This same God has manifested Himself to me in these Latter Days.

Some ignorant ones, who are malicious and evil-minded, say: ‘It must be Satan that has appeared to you.’ [May the curse of Allah be upon them till the Day of Resurrection]. These fools do not know that Satan does not have power over all things, whereas the God who appeared to me through His words and His works has power over all. Is there anyone who can stand against Him? The opponents are lifeless, and the enemies are dead insects.

There is none that can defeat the mighty Signs that are revealed to me through His Word and His Work. He possesses all the attributes and perfect powers and there is none like Him in earth or in heaven. If there is another god in earth or in heaven, other than the One who manifests Himself to me every day and shows me His profound secrets, then give proof of such a being—but never shall you be able to provide such proof!

I can see that there is no God other than Him. He is the One who created the earth and the heavens. When He is shining upon me like the sun and has granted me perfect insight and shown me His wonders and granted me the true knowledge and thus apprised me of His existence, how then can I ever leave Him? It is easier for me to surrender my life than to forsake the God who manifested Himself to me.

The blind foe speaks nonsense, for he knows nothing of God. His heart is stricken with leprosy and his eyes are bereft of sight. The knowledge of such people is limited to the worship of the idol of their conjectures. In their eyes there exists nothing beyond this idol. They are totally deprived of the knowledge of God who is recognized through His powers. They are like the blind one who steps forward but knows not whether there is an elevation or depression in front of him, or whether he is treading upon clean land or dirty soil.

In their foolishness, they stress one aspect and totally ignore the other. They say that when ‘Īsā descends, he will become an ummati.'

---

1. See footnote for ummati on page 474. [Publisher]
and the difference between their words and the Word of God is that while they declare ‘Īsā to be an ummatī, God Almighty declares an ummatī to be ‘Īsā. This was not such an error as could not have been rectified. If the providence of God Almighty could bestow the title of ‘Īsā upon an ummatī, and thus establish the superiority of this Ummah over the Israelites, then what was the need to bring ‘Īsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary] down from heaven and contradict the promise of God (that the one who leaves this world never returns to it)?

Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was the last Khalifah of Bānī Isrā’īl [the Children of Israel], therefore declaring an ummatī to be ‘Īsā signified that he would also be the last Khalifah of this Ummah, and that the ‘Jews’ of this Ummah would attack him too and would refuse to accept him. But

1. They do not realize that if they have given Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, the title of an ummatī, then why should they object if God Almighty gives an ummatī the title of ‘Īsā? Does not the hadith: إمامكم منكم mean precisely that: ‘O people of the Ummah! The ‘Īsā who is to come will be from among you and not from another people?’ (Author)

2. Allah the Exalted says:

[Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:26]—تُخْرَجُوْنَ مِنْهَاوَ تَمُوْتُوْنَ فِيْهَاوَ تَحْيَوْنَ فِيْهَا
Meaning that, ‘You will indeed live your lives on the earth, and indeed die on the earth, and be resurrected from this very earth.’

How then was it possible that a person live in heaven for hundreds of years? And God says:

[Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:37]—مُسْتَقَرٌّ الْاَرْضِ فِي لَكُمْ وَ
Meaning that, ‘And for you there is abode in the earth.’

How then is it possible that abode of ‘Īsā for hundreds of years should be in heaven? Again God says:

[Sūrah al-Mursalāt, 77:26]—كِفَاتًا الْاَرْضَ نَجْعَلِ اَلَمْ
Meaning that, ‘We have made the earth such that it draws everyone towards itself and holds every body in its grip.’

How then was it possible for Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to have escaped the grip of the earth?

(Author)
what is the wisdom in declaring a Messenger to be an ummatī? Also, it is evident from the Holy Quran that every Prophet is part of the ummah of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, as Allah the Exalted says:

Thus, in this way, all Prophets, may peace be upon them all, belong to the ummah of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. What then is the meaning or significance of declaring Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to be an ummatī? Are we to think that—God forbid—he recanted the faith that he had professed along with all the Prophets, and that as a punishment he was brought down to earth again to reaffirm his faith, whereas for other Prophets their previous affirmation was considered sufficient. Does such frivolous talk not amount to ridiculing Islam?

The matter was clear enough, for just as ‘Īsā appeared at the end of the Jewish line of Khilāfat, and the Jews rejected him and refused to believe in him, so was it destined that a Khalīfah would be born at the end of the Islamic line of Khilāfat whom the Muslims would reject and renounce. This is why he will be called ‘Īsā, for he would be Khātamul-Khulafā’[the Seal of the Successors] and also for the fact that he would be rejected just as ‘Īsā was rejected. This is how Allah the Exalted had outlined this similarity in Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya in these words:

A Warner came unto the world, but the world accepted him not; yet God shall accept him and demonstrate his truthfulness with mighty assaults.

1. You shall believe in him and help him (Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:82). [Publisher]
So, this was simple enough; everyone, where there is a similarity like that, would give a person such a name. A mountain has been made out of a molehill for nothing.

Had our opponents limited their belief to the point that ‘Īsā would definitely return, but that he would follow the teaching of the Gospel, that he would not be bound to follow what is deemed lawful or unlawful in Islam, and would also pray in his own manner separately, and would recite the Gospels in his prayer instead of the Holy Quran, and would consider himself a Messenger independently and not an ummati, and, in short, would not exhibit any characteristic that would lead him to be called an ummati; rather, he would abide by the Torah and the Gospel and follow their faith, then the point at issue would be whether the return of such a person could be considered beneficial for Islam while he practically shows himself to be separate from and even against Islam?

Obviously, the coming of such a person would not augur well for the Muslims. If a man of such stature presented himself as someone who does not conform to the norms of Islam, and did not pray like the Muslims, and preached the Gospel to the people instead of the Holy Quran, and ate what Muslims do not eat, and drank wine, then he would undoubtedly be the cause of great tribulation for Islam, and possibly there might also be some strife between him and the Muslims. Such a dangerous person would cause Muslims to be led astray, and it would hardly be surprising if they started converting to Christianity.

But if ‘Īsā, immediately after his descent, professes لَا إِلَّهَ إِلَّا اللّٰهُ ﷺ ﱠ ﺪِرَنُوُسُ اللّٰهُ [‘There is no one worthy of worship except Allah; Muhammad is the Messenger of Allah’] with full sincerity of his heart, and abides by the Prayer which the Muslims perform and observes the fast that was taught to the Muslims, and follows the injunctions of Islam in everything lawful and unlawful, in this case there can be no doubt that he would declare himself an ummati. There is nothing peculiar about being an ummati, for one becomes an ummati when he performs all the deeds necessary for being part of the Ummah. However, if ‘Īsā, may
peace be upon him, were to be weaned from the teaching of the Torah and made an ummati, it would need to be explained as to whether bringing the same ‘Īsā—who was the Khātamul-Khulafā’ [Seal of the Successors] of the Jewish Prophets—as the last Khātamul-Khulafā’ of the Muhammadan dispensation fulfils the purpose desired by wisdom of Allah Almighty.

It should be evident to the wise that when God Almighty willed to establish a dispensation among the Ishmaelites parallel to the dispensation of Israelites, he desired to create a similarity and likeness in every way between the two dispensations. It was with this intent that He raised our lord and master, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, in the likeness of Mūsā [Moses], as He says,

\[
\text{1. Sürah al-Muzzammar, 73:16 [Publisher]}
\]
Jews who did not accept Ḥadrat ‘Īsā, sought to crucify him, and were declared as مَغْضُوبِ عَلَیْهِمْ—those who have incurred displeasure.

This is why God Almighty has taught us to recite this very prayer of Sūrah al-Fāṭiḥah in our five daily obligatory Prayers:

1. Guide us in the right path, the path of those on whom You have bestowed Your blessings, those who have not incurred Your displeasure, and those who have not gone astray (Sūrah al-Fāṭiḥah, 1:6–7). [Publisher]
to me through revelation that as ‘Īsā did not acquire his spirit through his father, in the same way I, too, did not acquire the spirit of learning and knowledge through a spiritual father; that is, a teacher.

Thus, in all these things, I have a marked resemblance with Haḍrat ‘Īsā. And this is why God Almighty established the Ishmaelite dispensation similar to the Israelite dispensation and chose me to be its ‘Īsā. At the beginning of this dispensation was Our Lord and Master, Muhammad, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, who was given the title of Mūsā and both of whose parents were from among the Quraish. And at the end of this dispensation is my own humble self, who is only descended from the Quraish on the maternal side and is given the title ‘Īsā.

Thus, in all these things, I have a marked resemblance to Haḍrat ‘Īsā. And this is why God Almighty established the Ishmaelite dispensation similar to the Israelite dispensation and chose me to be its ‘Īsā. At the beginning of this dispensation was Our Lord and Master, Muhammad, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, who was given the name Mūsā and both of whose parents were from among the Quraish. And at the end of this dispensation is my own humble self, who is descended from the Quraish only on my maternal side and is given the name ‘Īsā.

Unworthy people ask me how I became ‘Īsā;
Here is my reply: O jealous people!

Since the Holy Quran named you ‘Jews’;
Hence for these ‘Jews’ He named me ‘Īsā.

Otherwise, you are not from the bloodline of the Jews,
Nor am I physically the same Ibn Maryam [the Son of Mary].
Without you I would not even exist;  
My advent is because of you; so, what is the point of all this clamour?

Whatever there was of good and evil among the Israelites,  
Found its way into the followers of Ahmad as well.

Our people are like the people of Mūsā [Moses] in every respect;  
Some are good while others are as worthless as unwanted lumps.

As our Prophet—the Chief of the Faith—was ‘Mūsā’,  
Necessarily and as a consequence, I was ‘Īsā by the command of the Loving Lord.

Moreover, here too, evil-natured ‘Jews’ have come into existence,  
To torment ‘Īsā, as they did among the earlier people.

In short, the Gracious God, in terms of every good and every evil,  
Has opened the door for this Ummah as He did for the Israelites.

Since God named the Holy Prophet the ‘like of Mūsā’;  
So when Abū Jahl’s animosity towards him reached its peak, he was named ‘Pharaoh’.

اسلام
Just as in the beginning of this Ummah there appeared by God’s command a Kalim,

So did He cause an ‘Isā to appear in its Latter Days to complete the parallel.

To turn away after understanding this is sheer misfortune;

For what I have said is enough to dispel every doubt and suspicion of yours.

Of what use is shooting arrows at the truthful ones?

He who does not desist from evil becomes the fuel of the Fire.

In short, I stand upon the truth and my claim is in accord with the explicit texts of the Holy Quran and Hadith, and thousands of Signs stand witness to my truthfulness. Nor is the door of Signs closed for those who will seek the truth in future. And whatever the opponents say about a certain prophecy not being fulfilled is a result of their inner blindness; otherwise, all prophecies have been fulfilled or will be fulfilled. However, as their vision is obstructed by the dust and smog of prejudice, and though they have to accept the prophecies that have been clearly fulfilled, when it comes to prophecies that require a somewhat refined vision, they consider them as not having been fulfilled; but such a prophecy is perhaps one in ten thousand. How great is the curse that stains the heart that derives no benefit from 10,000 prophecies and keeps barking like a dog that such a prophecy was not fulfilled, and goes on to hurl abuses with extreme shamelessness. If such a person had lived in the times of the Prophets of the past, would he have
believed in them? Absolutely not. For one or the other of the prophecies of every Prophet remained doubtful in the eyes of the disbelievers.

O ignorant one! Remove the veil of prejudice from your eyes, for then you will come to know that all the prophecies have been fulfilled. Support from God Almighty is assailing the opponents like a fast and raging river, but alas! these people are not influenced at all. The earth showed Signs, as did the heavens, and Signs were manifested among friends as well foes, yet the sightless ones think that no Sign has yet appeared. But God will not leave this task undone and He will manifest the distinction between the pure and the impure.

The opponents wish for me to be annihilated, and that some ruse of theirs may succeed in wiping out my name and all trace of my existence; but they will fail in these desires and will die in frustration. Many from among them have died before my very eyes, taking their frustrations with them to their graves; but God will fulfil all my desires. These ignorant ones do not realize that I do not engage in this battle of my own, but for the sake of God. Therefore, why should I perish, and who can harm me? And it is also obvious that when someone is devoted entirely to another, then that other necessarily becomes his.

Some people say that although it is true that it is written both in Șaḥīḥ Bukhārī and Muslim that the Īsā who is to come will be from this very Ummah, but he has been described explicitly as ‘Prophet of Allah’ in Șaḥīḥ Muslim, so how then can we believe that he will be from this very Ummah?

The answer to this is that all this unfortunate deduction is the outcome of a misunderstanding arising from the fact that they have not reflected on the true meaning of the term Nabi [Prophet]. The term Nabi only means one who receives knowledge from God through revelation and is honoured with converse and discourse with Allah. It is not necessary that he should be the bearer of a new law, nor is it necessary that he should not be the follower of a law-bearing Prophet. Thus, no harm is done if an ummatī [follower] is said to be such a Prophet,
particularly when such an ummati derives spiritual bounty from the Prophet whom he obeys. What is most perverse is to declare that, after the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, this Ummah is unworthy of enjoying converse with God until the Day of Judgment.

That religion does not deserve to be called a religion nor is that Prophet worthy of being called a Prophet, whose followers cannot attain such nearness to God Almighty as to be honoured with His converse. Accursed and detestable is the religion that teaches that human progress depends only on a few narrated things, that all revelation is a matter of the past and there can be no further revelation, and that hearing the voice of the Ever-Living and All-Powerful God is to be wholly despaired of. And that even when such a voice from the unseen reaches someone’s ears, it remains dubious and it cannot be said with certainty whether it comes from the Gracious God or from Satan. A religion such as this would more properly merit being labelled ‘satanic’ rather than ‘godly’.

True religion is that which brings one out of darkness and takes them into the light, and does not confine man’s recognition of God to mere anecdotes; rather, it grants him the light of cognizance. Thus, a follower of the true faith—provided that he himself is not veiled by nafs-e-ammārah [the self that incites to evil]—is able to hear the word of God Almighty. To turn an ummati into such a Prophet is the essential Sign of a true religion.

If *Nabi* means someone upon whom the shariah descends—that is to say, he must bring a new law—then this meaning will not apply even to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, as he cannot abrogate the shariah of Muhammad, nor can he be the recipient of a revelation that would abrogate the Holy Quran. Thus, by his coming again, a suspicion would arise that through him perhaps some alteration would be made in the Law of Islam. But if *Nabi* is taken only to mean a person who enjoys converse with Allah, the Lord of Glory, and to whom certain matters of the unseen are revealed, then what harm can there be if an ummati should become
such a Prophet, particularly when God Almighty has raised the hope in many a place in the Holy Quran that an ummatī can be the recipient of a word and discourse from Allah. God Almighty does speak with and listen to His friends, and this is the very blessing for the attainment of which we were taught the prayer in Sūrah al-Fātīhah, which is recited in the obligatory prayers five times a day:

1. Guide us on the straight path—the path of those on whom You have bestowed Your favours (Sūrah al-Fātīhah, 1:6–7). [Publisher]

So why is the possibility of an ummatī attaining this favour denied? Does the favour that is asked of God Almighty in Sūrah al-Fātīhah, and which was bestowed upon the Prophets, may peace be upon them, consist of dirhams and dinars? It is evident that the Prophets were blessed with the gift of converse and discourse with Allah, whereby their cognizance of God reached the level of true certainty, and verbal communion substituted for the physical beholding of God. So when we pray, ‘O Lord, show us the path whereby we too may inherit that bounty,’ what else can it mean other than that we too should be blessed with the same gift of converse and discourse?

Some ignorant ones say at this juncture that this prayer means only that God may strengthen our faith, bless us with the opportunities to do good deeds, and enable us to do the works that please Him. But these ignorant ones do not understand that the strengthening of faith, doing of good deeds, and acting in accord with the will of God Almighty results from perfect cognition of the Almighty. The heart that has not acquired the slightest cognition of God Almighty will also remain bereft of firm faith and good deeds. It is only through marifat [divine cognition] that the fear of God Almighty develops in the heart.
And it is only through cognition that the love of God Almighty surges in one's heart.

Even in worldly affairs we see also that the fear or love of something is born out of knowledge. If, for instance, a lion was standing beside you in the dark, but you did not know that it was a lion and thought that it was only a goat, you would have no fear of it at all. But as soon as you realize that it is a lion, you would at once flee in panic from that place. Similarly, if in the wilderness you come across a diamond worth hundreds of thousands of rupees, but you take it for a stone, you will not care for it at all. If, however, you were to realise its magnificence and value, you will fall desperately in love with it and do everything in your power to possess it. This shows that all love and fear is based on knowledge. Man will not thrust his hand into a hole wherein he knows that a poisonous snake resides, nor will he abandon a house underneath which he believes with full certainty that a valuable treasure is buried.

Therefore, since all fear and love depends on cognizance, man can bow fully before God Almighty only when he truly recognizes Him. First, one has to learn about His existence, and then realize His excellences and His perfect powers. But how can such cognition be achieved unless one is gifted with divine converse and discourse, and is convinced through divine Signs that He is the Knower of the unseen and has power to do what He wills. Hence the true bounty (on which depends the strength of faith and the performance of good deeds), is to be bestowed divine converse and discourse, through which one realizes His existence, learns about His powers, and then, in accordance with the knowledge, beholds His powers with his own eyes. This is indeed the bounty that was bestowed upon the Prophets, may peace be upon them, and it was promised to this Ummah that it, too, will be given this bounty if it asks God for it. Thus, he whose heart has been blessed with the thirst for this bounty will surely find it.

But God Almighty does not care for people who are unmindful of Him. Divine converse and discourse is the very root of all cognizance and the fountainhead of all blessings. Had this door been closed upon
this Ummah, all the doors of heavenly bliss would also have to be shut upon it. But, ‘divine converse and discourse’ does not meant such words of speech regarding which even the recipient himself is unsure whether they come from Satan or from the Gracious Lord. Indeed, words that are so devoid of blessings that even Satan could have a part in them should be considered to be satanic. Almighty God’s luminous, blessed, and sweet words cannot be similar to the words of Satan. Hearts that have nothing satanic in them and have been perfectly purified, receive revelations in which Satan has no part. Satan only descends upon the unclean hearts that have within them the impurity that Satan has. The words of the Pure One descend upon pure hearts, while the impure receive the words of the impure one [i.e. Satan].

And if the recipient is confused about his revelation, and cannot tell whether it comes from Satan or from God, it will prove to be disastrous for him, for it is quite possible that he might, on the basis of that revelation, declare a pious one to be evil, even though the revelation is from Satan, and it is also possible that he might declare an evil one to be pious, even though such information may be entirely from Satan. Likewise, it is possible that he may follow a commandment he has received through revelation, considering it to be from God, whereas in fact it is from Satan. And, contrarily, he might ignore a commandment thinking it to be from Satan, whereas it is in fact from God Almighty.

It is evident that without a decisive judgement, i.e. unless and until the heart is filled with certainty that a particular command is indeed from God, one cannot call forth one’s full determination to carry it out, more so because these commands at times pertain to matters that are apparently contrary to the Shariah; for instance, in the case of Khidr there were many objections as far as the Law was concerned, for in no Law given by any Prophet do you find the command to kill an innocent child. Therefore, if Khidr did not have firm conviction that the revelation was from God, he would never have killed him. Similarly, if the mother of Mūsā was not certain that the revelation was from God Almighty, she would never have placed her child in the river.
Obviously, therefore, how can a person take pride in such revelation—and how can man be safe from its harm—that at times he thinks is from God Almighty, and at other times imagines to be from Satan? Such a revelation would be ruinous to both life and faith. It would be a tribulation that would sooner or later destroy such a person. God Almighty would never allow those of His servants who have cut themselves off from the baser self, have become totally His, and for whom the fire of His love has consumed all else, to be caught in the clutches of Satan. And the truth is that just as there is a clear distinction between light and darkness, so is there a clear difference between satanic insinuations and holy revelation from God Almighty.

Some superficial clerics go so far in their denial that they assert that the door of revelation from Allah is closed altogether and it is not at all in the lot of this unfortunate Ummah to perfect its faith by acquiring this bounty and then act righteously under the attraction of this faith. The answer to such thinking is that if the Muslims are indeed so unfortunate and blind and are the worst of people, why have they been named the best of people by God? The truth is that those who think like this are themselves foolish and stupid. In fact, just as God Almighty has taught the Muslims the prayer that is set out in Sūrah al-Fāṭiḥah, He has also designed to bestow upon them the bounty that was bestowed upon the Prophets; that is to say, the bounty of converse with the Divine, which is the fountainhead of all bounties. Has God Almighty merely deceived us by teaching us this prayer? What good can there be in a useless and fallen people who are inferior even to the womenfolk of the Children of Israel?

Obviously, the mother of Haḍrat Mūsā and the mother of Haḍrat ʿĪsā were both women and, as our opponents believe, they were not Prophets. Yet they were favoured with unequivocal converse and discourse with Almighty God. So now, is it to be imagined that if a Muslim were to be so perfect in the purity of his soul as to develop the heart of Ibrāhīm; and were to be so obedient to God Almighty as to cast aside his ego altogether; and were to be so absorbed in the love
of God Almighty that he should lose his own self entirely, yet despite achieving such great reformation, he cannot be the recipient of revelation like the mother of Mūsā? Can any reasonable person attribute such miserliness to God Almighty? My only response to such people is: لَعْنَةُ اللِّٰه عَلَی الْكٰذِبِیْنَ [‘The curse of Allah be upon the liars’].

The truth is that when these people became wholly the insects of the earth, and the only signs of Islam left in them were their turbans, beards, circumcision, a few verbal affirmations, and mere formalities of observing the ritual Prayers and fasting, God Almighty deformed their hearts and thousands of veils of darkness fell upon their eyes, and their hearts became dead. And they came to be bereft of any living examples of people who are alive spiritually. Helpless and forlorn, they thus denied the possibility of converse with the Divine. And this denial is, in truth, a denial of Islam; however, since their hearts are dead, they do not realize their own miserable condition.

These fools do not realize that if this is how things stand, then what is there to distinguish Islam from other religions? As it is, even the Brahmū Samajists say that they believe God Almighty to be One and without partner. Likewise, they do not believe in reincarnation, do not commit idolatry, believe in the Day of Reckoning, and affirm that لَ إِلـٰهَ إِلَّ اللهُ [‘There is no one worthy of worship except Allah’]. So, when the Brahmūs share all these qualities with the Muslims, and the Muslims cannot attain spiritual advancement greater than them, then what would be the difference between them and the Brahmūs?

If—God forbid—Islam is a religion that does not bestow any distinctive favour and confines itself to the extent of human thought, it cannot be taken as being from God Almighty. When there is a person whose beliefs conform to the holy creed of Islam, with the exception that he considers the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, to be an imposter—as do the Brahmū Samājists—what can a Muslim who thinks like this claim before such a person, by way of a distinction of his faith, which is not mere tales and fables but is such
a manifest and tangible favour that has been bestowed upon them and not given to others?

O wretched and unfortunate people, this favour is none other than divine converse through which knowledge of the unseen is attained, God’s support is manifested, and the succour of God bearing the testimony of revelation from Allah is experienced, and it is through this testimony that such people are recognized. There is no other distinction apart from this. And when you yourself believe that God hears prayers, then why, O heedless of faith and blind of heart, can He not speak if He can listen! And if listening does not denigrate His status, then why should it be unworthy of Him to speak to His servants too? Otherwise, you will have to believe that as divine revelation has been sealed up now for some time, so too, for the same time, God’s power of hearing has also been sealed; that God is now among the deaf and dumb, God forbid! But can any sane person believe that in this age God does indeed listen but that He does not speak, for then the question would arise as to why He does not speak. Has his tongue been stricken with some disease while his ears are safe from suffering any illness? When it is the same God and the same people, and the needs for the perfection of faith are the same, indeed they are more acute today on account of the hold that atheism has taken on people’s hearts, and there is as much need for God to speak as there is to listen, then how is it that He still has the power to listen but the power to speak has become dormant?

What a pity that twenty-two years of the 14th century [of the Islamic calendar] have passed—and so much time has elapsed since I made my claim that those who were in wombs at that time are now themselves parents of young people—and yet you do not realize that I am true. And you keep saying that you do not believe in me because it is written in our aḥādīth that thirty dajjāls [deceivers] will come.

O unfortunate people! Have only dajjāls fallen to your lot? You have already been trampled from every side like a field that has been decimated by a stranger’s cattle at night. Your inner conditions have deteriorated terribly, and the external attacks have also reached their
peak. The Mujaddids [Reformers] used to come at the head of every century; but perhaps God has forgotten this—God forbid!—and at the head of this century He has instead sent, according to you, a deceiver. You have been reduced to dust and yet God did not attend to you. You were swept away by innovations but God did not come to your help. Spirituality bade you farewell, and not a trace of truth and righteousness remained in you. Tell me truly, where is your spirituality now, and where are the signs of belonging to God? What is faith in your eyes but the sharpness of the tongue and mischievous quarrels and blind attacks fuelled by bigotry? A star appeared from God but you recognized it not and opted for darkness, so God left you to languish in darkness.

In this state of affairs, what is the difference between you and other religions? Can a blind person who is sitting with other blind people claim to be better than them?

O foolish people! Who should I compare you to? Indeed, you are like the unfortunate person around whose house a generous man built an orchard—wherein he planted all kinds of fruit-bearing trees, and irrigated it by a canal carrying sweet water—and it contained large, shady trees which could protect thousands from the sun. Then the generous man invited the people, who were sweltering under the sun without any water, shade, or fruit, to come and sit in the shade and to eat and drink. But those unfortunate people rejected his invitation and died of hunger and thirst and intense heat under the sun. God, therefore, says that He will bring another people who will sit under the cool shade of these trees, and eat these fruits, and drink this sweet water. In a parable, God relates in the Holy Quran that Dhul-Qarnain came across a people who were burning under the sun with nothing to protect them from its heat, and yet they did not seek any help from him, and so they continued to languish in their misery. But then Dhul-Qarnain came across another people who sought his help against an enemy, so he built for them a wall that protected them against the onslaught of the enemy.

So I say truly that, in keeping with this prophecy of the Holy Quran
about the future, I am that Dhul-Qarnain ['man of two centuries'] who has seen two centuries, per the reckoning of every people. The people being burnt by the sun are the Muslims who did not accept me, the people languishing in the pool of muddy water are the Christians who did not even care to look up at the sun, and the people for whom the wall was built are the people of my Jamā‘at [Community]. I say most truly that they alone are the ones whose faith will be saved from the onslaughts of the enemy. Every foundation that is feeble will be eaten away by idolatry and atheism, while this Jamā‘at will live long. Satan will not be able to overpower them, and the satanic horde will not be able to overwhelm them. Their argument will be sharper than the sword and more deeply penetrating than the spear, and they will continue to prevail over every other religion until the Day of Judgment.

Alas for these fools who did not recognize me. How dark and sightless were the eyes that could not see the light of truth. I cannot be seen by them, for prejudice has blinded their eyes. Their hearts are covered with rust and over their eyes are veils. If they strive to seek the truth and cleanse their hearts of all malice, and fast during the day and wake up at night to pray and cry and supplicate and call out, then it can be hoped that the Benevolent Lord will disclose to them who I am. They should fear God, who is entirely Independent in His Being.

When the Jews did not accept the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and did not desist from bigotry and prejudice, God sealed their hearts. Despite the fact that there were hundreds of sages and divines and scholars of the Torah among them, they were unable to realize the truth, and neither did God reveal the truth to them through dreams or revelations. Since this Ummah is also following those people step by step, their eyes too can never be opened, nor can they recognize me—unless they are blessed with true righteousness. God cannot be pleased with senseless verbosity, for He looks at the hearts. No one who tries to hide his dishonesty can avoid His penetrating gaze.

Truly righteous is he alone who is proven to be righteous through divine testimonies, for a righteous one is in the benevolent embrace
of God, just like a beloved child in its mother's lap. The world falls upon him to destroy him and he is stung from all sides, but God saves him. And just as the sun rises and its rays fall visibly on the earth, so is the righteous one openly attended by the help and succour of God Almighty. God becomes the enemy of his enemies and, before their eyes, grants honour to the righteous one whom they had sought to debase. He is neither wasted nor destroyed until he has accomplished his mission. **Opposition to him is like striking a bare hand against the edge of a sharp sword.**

Do you know of any such impostor who is helped by God as I am? For the way of my Lord is He cuts off every branch not bearing fruit.

You say that this person is a liar, whereas my truth has become manifest; It appeared with such Signs in which there is no impurity.

You witness the help of my God—how it is arriving and manifesting—And everyone who has eyes is hastening towards us.
Can day and night be equal in light?

How then can a liar be the same as the truthful who has been purified?

Reflect, therefore, and hasten not in attacking me;

But if you fear not, proceed to reject me, employing every deceit.

Call me a disbeliever—for your calling me a disbeliever is nothing new;

Deniers before you slandered like you and were ultimately destroyed.

This is indeed the time that can benefit you;

Therefore, repent before the time you are summoned and held to account.
The Sun of Guidance is at its zenith, and our works
Shine forth like rubies, but you wish to smear them with dust.

Had you not been frenzied by these three qualities, you would have been drawn towards me:
One of them is certainly ignorance, the second is the arrogance which rages within you,
And the third—whose poison is destroying you—
Is your fear of the people who hate [me] on account of their foolishness.

Yet the one who fears God does not fear people;
He is the blessed tree, blossoming flowers and bearing fruit.
And the person who believes in Allah the Protector

Worries not the least about the ravages of time.

I salute the people who merely witnessed a single blossom of my tree,
And finding it pleasing they became eager to partake of its fruit.

How dull you are, O son of frivolity!
You bebold all my fruits and yet show hesitation.

God will soon guide you after your going astray;
I have come to know this by revelation of God Almighty, so I hereby inform you.
The end of your affair was revealed to me by my Friend, God Almighty. It brought solace to my heart and I am reminded about it.

By God, I do not forget our past relationship; My heart is not like stony soil.

I find no permanence in my displeasure— Like a wave in a sea, it subsides as suddenly as it rises.

When a person replaces evil with good, I forget his evil and remember his good deeds.

And if I had said some harsh words in any of my discourses— For a long time I had suffered at your hands and I am broken-hearted.
I have come from God Almighty—not of my own accord—
And I have only said what God has commanded.

Had God so willed, I would not have been appointed in the position of Ibn Maryam [the Son of Mary];
The matters that God has decreed are such that they leave us astonished.

And God is not questioned about what He does,
But a people who go astray are held to account why they did so.

Such is His eternal practice with regard to His will;
He decrees such orders from which eyes are blinded and twisted.
And I am not the kind to forsake the Truth out of fear;
Ours is the stallion that darts forth during battle.

And when one battle prolonged, they said,
‘Victory is ours!’—but look how they were ground down!

I have never witnessed their victory upon the battlefields;
Rather, the one made arrogant by any given talent was seen turning his back in flight.

I have witnessed the favours of my Friend in times of hardship;
Indeed, a friend is truly tested during arduous times.

I find myself unable to desist in pursuit of His path;
And I do not see it relenting in times of fear.
I forget all grief, sorrow, and affliction
When His help and revelation bearing glad tidings comes to me.

And we—by the grace of God—are advancing forth on our path,
Riding she-camels that swiftly glide forward like the blowing breeze.

As if they are boats sailing in the river of cognizance.

The Sun of Cognizance has turned towards us,
So we proceed forth, seeing with the light of this Sun.

The cloud gradually moving towards us after a fearful delay.
Twenty and some years have elapsed since this affair—

Since God chose me and I started receiving glad tidings.

Thus did He say, ‘People will flock to you and will help you;

People will come to you upon every road, and you will be helped.’

Thus, all these groups of people who have been alighting at my home

This is that very promise of God, and—should you wish—remember it.

Yet should you be in doubt and fail to believe it—

Imagining what I write and recite to be false—

Then [remember], I have documented all these revelations in Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya;

For these are incidents that you were previously made aware of.
 فلا تتبع أهواء نفس مبية ولا تختر الزوراء عمدا فتخسر

So do not follow the self that ruins the soul
And do not adopt the crooked path, for you will thereby suffer loss.

أتعلم هيئة غفرة الله ذي الغلى وإن حسام الله بالمن بيت

Do you think it is easy to fight God who is the Most High?
And the sword of God kills but with a mere touch!

وأبان كنت أزمعت النضال تثورا فأتى كما يأتي لصيد غضنفر

And if you have indeed made up your mind to fight,
Then we will come forth as a lion pounces upon its prey.

لنا أروؤ في الله موعد إذا ما أمرنا منه لا نتأخر

We are accustomed to bearing adversity in the path of God;
When we are commanded, we tarry not [the least].

انترك قول الله خوفا ممن الوزى انخفي لثم الحج جيبا وحنجز

Should we reject the command of Allah for fear of the people?
Should we be cowards, frightened by the accursed horde?
So look not [in admiration] at the turbans they wear,

For underneath them are heads which are deceiving.

Do you desire their [transient] world while those Gardens go to ruin?

Are you unmindful of the Gardens [of Paradise] that will never suffer change?

And in your anger, you think much ill of me;

But I am innocent of all that you imagine about me.

I am in the centre of the abode of my Protecting God,

Yet—by God—without seeing me, you simply utter nonsense.
I am a lion—I do not fear the braying of donkeys!

And why would I fear them? They are my prey and I roar at them.

Do you threaten me with mortal objects? This is utter ignorance!

And of a truth, the pain of this world passes and vanishes.

I am not the one whom any death would turn away from the path of God,

Even though I be injured or slaughtered in the way of God!

The faces of the ill-informed were distorted with anger

When they were given the news of the death of Ḥadżrat ʿĪsā [Jesus].
They clamoured, ‘He is a lying disbeliever, following his selfish desires!’

And they incited and chided the people to kill me.

So the mischief of their group constrained the earth for me;

Had it not been for the hand of God, I would have surely perished.

Their machinations were of no avail to them;

But when the Sun of the favours of God shone, they turned on their heels and ran away.

I returned to find their spears pointing back at them;

The matter was decided by the Friend with whom no denier can compete.
On account of their rancour and enmity, they are—all of them—uttering sheer nonsense; My affair is bright and clear, would they but only reflect!

The crux of the disagreement between them and ourselves is—in reality— Small and trivial but with their frivolous thinking they exaggerate it manifold.¹

¹ The root of this debate has to do with Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, as to whether he is dead or alive. So this matter is clear to those who reflect. Allah the Exalted has said:

[O Jesus, I will cause you to die a natural death and will exalt you to Myself (Ṣūrah Āl-e-‘Imrān, 3:56)]

Here tawaff[i dying] precedes raf’a [exaltation], as you can read. So this is the verdict of Allah, and whoever does not judge in accord with what Allah has sent down such are surely the disbelievers. And it does not behove anyone to change the word of Allah from its place. And Allah has cursed all interpolators, as you well know. The second testimony is the verse:

[But since You did cause me to die... (Ṣūrah al-Mā‘īdah, 5:118)]

Glad tidings be to those who reflect! And the third testimony from the Holy Quran is the word of God:
We inclined towards peace when they desired peace,

But we sallied forth—armed with lance—when they prepared for battle.

God manifested many a Sign, but their egos

Are crooked and furious like a flaming fire.

And if they desire peace, we do not like war;

Should someone advance seeking peace, we honour him.

We dislike those who dislike us;

But he who comes forth for peace, we too move forward with peace.

[And Muhammad is only a Messenger. Verily, all Messengers have passed away before him. (Sūrah Al-e-'Imrān, 3:145)]
Some of them were my opponents in the darkness of their twilight;
But when the day dawned, they were blessed with faith and guidance and began to see.

Their ignorance only augmented my knowledge and compassion;
I remained calm in the face of their repeated expressions of anger.

I am amazed at the enemy's fury and wrath;
I view them as those who get intoxicated by drinking liquor at night.

Open your eyes, for life will not last forever!
Every one of us—no matter how long we live—will die one day.
Falahal ka tayyir kiyaa jo pura lagta hai to nazar na hota hai. Aur faalha ka tayyir kiyaa jo pura lagta hai teri khaam se bhi mazaa par hai.

*What has befallen you that you do not fear God the Reckoner?*

*What has come over you that you have opted for Hell!*

*Do you—by declaring me a disbeliever—cause yourself to be a disbeliever!*

*Do you not fear the day that will drag you into the grave?*

*And while you seek comfort in the life of this world,*

*What has come over you that you—becoming lax—seek not the comfort of the Hereafter?*

*If you are indeed hungry for guidance, then come to me;*

*I serve my guests, slaughtering (animals) for them.*

*When the Sun of Guidance shines forth and its light becomes manifest,*

*There would, then, be no glory in declaring that you can now see.*
ولو كان خوف الله مثقال ذرةٍ لو افیتنی والسَیلَ بالصدقِ تعبر
او اگر ذرّہ کے موافق خدا تعالیٰ کا خوف بھٹتا تھا تو میرے پاس آتا اور اپنے صدق کے ساتھ سے
کو اپنے نفس سے دور کرنا

Had you even a particle of fear of God,
You would have come to me and would have saved yourself sincerely
from being swept away by the ego.

بلَمَّاعۃٍ قَفرٍ رضیت جھالۃً
و تسعٰی لفانیۃٍ وفی الدین تُقصِرُ
یوی دوڑ رہا ہے، اور دِئے لے کے
قُو کوتاہی کرتا ہے

You became enamoured with the earthly mirage that is bereft of
vegetation;
You run after the transitory world and are heedless about the Faith.

ألّرث غبارًا للناس لیحسبوا وجودی مُضِلًّ للورٰی ولکفروا
ثنّی لوگوں کے لئے ایک غبار افیتک تہیے وہ وہ وہ کوہ راو اکے والائی کرین اور مَکِیا کوہ ہوایا

You raised a dust storm so that people
May think that I am misguiding them, and thereby reject me.

فَأَلَّهُمْ لی رَتِی قلوبًا لیرجعوا الْنَفْسِنَا مرجع الخلق فانظر
یوی جاہومنکر اور مَینَ لا، وہ لی جاہومنکر اور مَینَ لا

So my God inspired hearts to turn towards me;
And—behold!—I became a place of refuge for the people.
Just as people perform circuits around the Ka‘bah,
So do people come to see me; and the people of my Jamā‘at [Community] are persecuted and slaughtered on my account.

You desire to debase me, while God continues to exalt me;
You desire to humiliate me, while God continues to manifest my honour.

Do you wish to debase and destroy me through your machinations?
This is an endeavour in which you will certainly not succeed.

So—O insane man!—leave aside this vain effort;
A tall date-palm like me shall not be cut down.
Do you deny God and His might?

Do you—like Satan—think that you are more powerful?

You abuse me yet I know not why you do so;

Have I killed any of your forefathers whom you seek to avenge?

You can see that I am—by the grace of God Almighty—a refuge for the people;

Do you ever see a pigeon singing merrily in an abandoned wilderness?

The wretched and the accepted cannot be equal;

May God reproach you, for you see my acceptance and yet deny me.

And you are indeed the one who ascribed every evil to me,

As though I was the worst of creation and more evil than all others.
فمالك لا تخشي الحسيب وقهره ولين تفاغ تدعى يا مسؤًو

So what has happened to you that you do not fear the wrath of God, the Reckoner?

And where is your piety that you used to lay claim to?

وانيك ان عاديتني لا تضني وان صبرت ذئبًا أو بغيف تنعير

And if you engage in enmity you will not be able to cause me any harm, Even if you were to become a wolf or a cheetah.

واما الذهر الا تارتان فمنهما لك التاره الأولى باخزى نؤؤًو

There are only two destined epochs in time; The first is yours, and the second is mine wherein I will be helped.

وما النفس يا مسنين الا وديعة ولا بد يومًا ان ثرة وتحضر

Know—O poor creature!—that life is but a trust, And one day you will surely be returned and presented [before God].

أنتي الحياة ولا تريد ثمارها وما هي الا للعنة لو تفكر

Do you desire life and not its fruit? Life without its fruit is a curse, would you but only reflect!
Has your abject worldly life made you arrogant?

Be mindful of the death that will suddenly pounce upon you.

You desire to humiliate me every single day and night;

You want my luminous face to be covered in dust.

Neither I, nor you, are hidden from that Being,

Who sees all of our thoughts that are in our hearts.

Man’s existence is but like a bubble;

Slumber on if you want, for death will come to you as sure as the dawn.

Ignoring dates and pomegranates, you pluck the bitter colocynth;

Who then could be more unfortunate than you!
And if you are truthful, then where is the light of truth?
For every truthful one is recognised by his signs.

O slave of your desires! Do you seek to harm the servants of God?
You fear not the All-Knowing God, parading audacity.

These are a people whose affairs are in the hands of a Guardian,
Who is All Powerful and who holds them as friends, guides them, and helps them.

And—by God—for each age there is a cycle and an epoch;
So I have appeared in the age of guidance and remind of the path of guidance.

You witness the misguided innovations and the rising dust,
Whereas I am the Rain of the grace of God that is pouring down.
I am not foul of tongue nor harsh of nature,
But when the enemy hates me bitterly, then I hate as well.

I have witnessed severe tribulations and sorrows;
For in the eyes of those who call me a disbeliever I was deemed a wild beast.

I am not afraid of that which is to transpire
From our God, even if it be in the form of a sword.

God alone is cognizant of people's secrets;
Hence, do not follow a conjecture of which you lack true knowledge.

You left no stone unturned in trying to hurt me,
And you sought to trespass over my wall.
And—by God—had I been given authority over you,
My hand would yet remain unwilling to punish you.

By God, there is inherent within my heart
The quality of compassion, regardless of whether you deny me.

I have learnt certain things of yours that have laid heavy upon me—
Not just like swords—but even sharper.

And I am not one to become fearful and abandon the Truth;
I am a plain Warner—I only warn for the sake of God.

Although you seek to find faults in me, I desire guidance for you;
I show forbearance even though you incite the enemy against me or try to humiliate me.
فانا كنت منّی تـشتكی فی مقالۃٍ
فـما ـھو اِلَّ دون سیفٍ تُـشھّرُ
حچ رہا ہے
کھ قُو جو ہے کمتر سے بیدہ ہے۔ تو وہ اس تلوار
قُو مجھ سے کسی کلام کے بارے می ر
گر اور ا

Should you be unhappy with me about something I have said,
It is less harsh than the sword you are brandishing.

فلا تجز عَن من كلمة قلّ ضعفـھا
وانّك لـلإ یذاء بالسوء تجھرُ
ی وہ اس کھ کے لئ کم ترواں
پر ستاتا ہے

So do not bewail my words when you have uttered things twice as harsh;
You torment me openly in order to cause me pain.

اضيف الینا من عمایات قومنا فساد وکفر وافترا ئ ممجتر
بداری طرف قوم کی نظریں سے ضربہ کیا جا لی۔ فساد اور افتراء اور افادات کا جاگا تاق

Due to the blindness of the people,
Mischief, infidelity, and imposture were collectively attributed to me.

گلّا جعلنا عادۃً كل ليلة ترقص ثوب الإفتراء وتنشر
گیا جمّا نے یہ عادت کر رگبی ہے کہ بر یک رات۔ تم افترا کا چاہیے تو نہ کرے تم اور بر یک کا
پہچانادین دین اور شیرت دیے دیے ہیں

It was implied as though it was my habit each night
To fabricate some lie and then to spread it and publicise it.

صبرنا علی إیذاءهم وعواملهم وكل خفیف في العواقب يظهر
تم نے ان کی ایذاء اور کوچا پر صبر کیا اور ایک نہ شروع امر ایک کا نہ تاجیر تو جانا لیہ

I showed patience in the face of all such suffering and nonsensical chatter;
For everything concealed is ultimately revealed.
I wonder at my enemies who have all come together to attack me,

Even though there be among them the ignorant and those who embellish lies.

Can faith be polished or blindness be removed

With the words of people who are bereft of piety?

I have been hurt by the blind but, like them,

There was one who we know pretended to be blind but can see.
You will find that land and wealth and crops are their ultimate goal,

While God’s religion has become like stubble left after the cattle have grazed.

You know about the Jews and what became of them—

Similar is God’s decree with this nation, and it will not be altered.

I see evil deeds are on the rise every day;

Goodness is diminishing and transgression is growing.

I see that they have attached themselves to darkness and sin,

And they are moving away from chastity.
They desire that I be wiped out, destroyed, and cut down.
But this is only the barking of a dog that is killed in the end.

How can the light of one who is a Star be concealed?
The one who has become the Full Moon will triumph.

I have beckoned them with a powerful argument,
And I have come from God to settle the dispute.

I have come to them in the fourteenth century, which is the Badr (full moon) of the centuries,
That they might know my perfection and my light, yet they see not.
Would that they could understand that—despite their search—

They found no falsehood in my affairs, so how could they make such suppositions?

And people are coming to me from every path,

And everyone who can see is hastening towards me.

There are many who have preferred me over their lives,

Even though they were threatened and even killed!

And from among my Jamā’at was Maulawī ‘Abdul-Laṭīf

Who demonstrated such light of his truth that the people were amazed upon seeing such attachment to the truth.

‘Abdul-Laṭīf mentioned in this verse is Sāhibzādah Maulawī ‘Abdul-Laṭīf, who was also known in Kabul as Shāhzādah Maulawī ‘Abdul-Laṭīf. He was the chief of a large clan and a prominent scholar with about 50,000 followers and disciples. He played a key role in developing and spreading the knowledge of Hadith in that land. And despite his knowledge, scholarship, and excellence,
on account of which he was considered second to none in those lands, he was by nature so humble and meek that it seemed as though he did not have the capacity for pride and ostentation. Indeed, the existence of such a man in the land of Kabul (which is known for its hard-heartedness, callousness, arrogance, and vanity) is no less than a miracle.

Hence, it was his inner piety that drew him towards Qadian. And since he was an enlightened, selfless, and truly insightful person, and was blessed with a power through the knowledge of the Hadith and Holy Quran, and since he had experienced true dreams with regard to me, therefore, he accepted me as soon as he set his eyes upon me, believed in my claim of being the Promised Messiah with full conviction, and entered into bai'at [the pledge of allegiance] to me promising to sacrifice his very life if required. In a matter of a single meeting, he became so close to me as if he had lived in my company for years. Not only that, but he also started receiving revelations from Allah, and true insights began to be disclosed to him, and his heart was emptied of everything except God. Having thus been filled with knowledge and love, he returned to his country. But as soon as he arrived there, some people reported to the Amīr how Maulawi Ṣāḥib had gone to Qadian and pledged bai'at, and that he now believed that his spiritual guide was the Promised Messiah and the Promised Mahdi. As a result of this, and on account of some political expediency, Maulawi Ṣāḥib was arrested, and heavy chains were put on his feet. The ulema of Kabul gave their verdict that if he did not repent, he would deserve to be killed. A debate was then held between him and the maulawīs of Kabul, and he silenced them on each and every point. Finally, they objected that he was against Jihad, which was true because it was my teaching that this age is not for wielding the sword; rather it calls for Jihad through prayer, powerful lectures, luminous arguments, and dazzling proofs. And so on this final charge Maulawi Ṣāḥib was held guilty. The Amīr of Kabul pleaded with him again and again that if he would recant from the bai'at of this person who claims to be the Promised Messiah and is opposed to Jihad with the sword, he would not only be acquitted but would become accorded greater honour and reverence than before. Maulawi Ṣāḥib, however, did not accept this and said, ‘Today I put my faith above my life. And I know that the man whose bai'at I have pledged is true, and there is none like him on the face of the earth.’ Thus, when his ‘repentance’ was despaired of, he was stoned to death in the most heart-rending manner. Eyewitnesses report that to this day a sweet fragrance wafts up from his grave. رحمه اللّٰ و أَدخله فی جَنَانٍ [May God have mercy on him and admit him into His Abode]. When he was arrested, he was offered a final meeting with his wife and children, but he said he had no need for it. I have published a separate book regarding him. May Allah be pleased with him. (Author)
May Allah reward that youth, who from among us
Gave his life in God’s path; so ponder and reflect.

These are the people whose persons are like the monsoon winds;
When they come, they bring with them the Rain of Mercy.

Do you know any abdāl [saints] other than these people; for, these people
Are those who were stoned and yet they remained steadfast and
their inner composure remained intact?

Their God who is the Lord of all creation manifested Himself upon them;
Thus, they hastened towards the Eternal Light.

You see tears from their eyes due to their overpowering love of God;
And their hearts are aflame with all kinds of fire, while their heads
are covered with dust.
Their countenances are lit up by the light of piety;
Your eyes would surely recognize them if there was no haze in the way.

They draw people's hearts to themselves;
With eyes that pull the hearts in their direction.

It is as if the life of the nation is beholden to their life;
Through them the garden of faith sprouts and becomes verdant.

Thus, if you wish to see them, then look at them as a friend;
For their faces are such as are kept concealed from strangers.

Likewise did my Sun rise from behind a veil,
And I told it to stop until I become illuminated and prevail over all other lights.
And I am not hidden from the eye of the seeker;
He who will come to me will see me, provided that he adopts perseverance.

And if you deny, there is no compulsion upon you;
But if you come to believe, then what the Blessed Book of Allah says will suffice for you.

And—by God—I cannot forget the grief that I have endured
Because of the way my people tormented me, declaring me a disbeliever.

When the truthful one is suffering from the axe of cruelty and torment,
How then can the liar remain hidden from the hand of God?
Upon being told of the death of Jesus, my people became like a snake; Many poisons did they manifest and bring forth.

Jesus died, and after him
Death also came upon the reasoning of these people who fail to reflect.

If a mortal human could indeed fly to the heavens,
Our Messenger of Allah, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was the most worthy of it.

Do you abandon the Word of God,
While the Book of God is the foremost in guidance and light?

Therefore, shun the traditions that are contrary to the Word of God;
What hadith is there that is worthy of acceptance as against the Word of God?
Shun pride that destroys and save yourself from ruin;
For a certainty, it is only righteousness that bestows salvation and bears fruit.

Do you become blind like an owl in the morning light,
And begin to see in the darkest of nights?

Once you have found the truth after your misguidance,
Then righteousness lies in discarding everything that you had adopted before.

Do not desire the death and humiliation of the spiritually eminent ones;
What are you—after all—but a worm, O embellisher of falsehood!

Had my people been able to recognize me, they would have been saved
From humiliation in this world and they would have been accorded honour in the Hereafter.
But some hearts became like those of the Jews;
This being the very [prophesied] account that has come to pass, so remember it [well].

Thus, when they became 'Jews'; I became, for them 'Jesus'—
This explanation should suffice from me for those who reflect.

And surely, the promise of our Holy Prophet\textsuperscript{50}, mentioned in the \textit{ahādīth} has been fulfilled;
For there has appeared among the Muslims an Imām from among themselves who admonishes them and reminds them.

They destroy people with the venom of their tongues;
They slandered me, speaking lies.
They fail to practice what they preach, and from the perspective of spirituality,

Their condition in their home is very different from what they pronounce from their pulpit.

There are many who talk much and are such that their words will sound pleasing to you,

But when you look at their faces they will appear abhorrent to you.

The eye can only see what is apparent and not concealed;

Eyes cannot see that which is concealed.

Although they claim to have found guidance, there is in them error.

And arrogance abounds along with which that error grows and ripens and bears [evil] fruit.
They are the people who have wasted away their religion with arrogance,

Giving preference to worldly pleasures over faith.

Their ignorant onslaughts have wounded my heart;

There is an anguish in my bosom and a sword piercing my heart.

There were among their elders those who made mistakes in their discourses,

And these people have adopted their traditions.

I endeavoured to do good, but was met with aggression on their part;

I came with justice, but they began to treat me unjustly.
I have found deadly snakes to be less harmful than them; not even the most lethal scorpion stings as they do.

In their eyes I am like a mere shred of a dry date; indeed, even more insignificant and contemptible than that.

Hence, it is to Almighty God that I submit my complaint in all humility, for who can help like Him in times of adversity?

Every enemy shot arrows at me, so I was left alone and was declared a disbeliever.

There was a Husain who was killed by the enemies in the desert of Karbala.

But there is another Husain [of Batala] who wounded me out of mere cruelty.
O you who shoot arrows at me! There was a time when you used to praise my words—
You would praise me with love; you would honour me.

And what a wonderful review you wrote—with sincerity—for my book, Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya, becoming a guide for every one fallen astray!

And you are indeed that very one who had written in his review
That there is absolutely no lion among us like this author in the cause of the Faith.

You recognized my status and then denied me—
What ignorance is this that was deliberately manifested after knowledge!
It is astonishing indeed that a man like you who knew me so well,
Should have found guidance only to then let go of the right path.

You cut off the tree of friendship that we planted in our youth;
But my heart did not fall short—whatsoever—in this friendship.

Nothing you said was uttered but in baste;
For—by God!—I am truthful and have never lied.

1. ☆ Maulawī Muḥammad Ḥusain Batālawī has admitted with regard to me in his magazine Ḥisābat-us-Sunnah that I am unique in my defence of the Faith in this age, and am totally devoted to Islam, and am an unrivalled champion in the path of God. Moreover, he admits about himself saying that: ‘There is none who is more aware of this person’s inner condition than I.’ (Author)
LAYING TO REST SOME DOUBTS

expressed by

MAULAWĪ SAYYED MUḤAMMAD ‘ĀBDUL WĀHĪD

HIS STATEMENT—In the verse صَلَبُوْهُ مَا وَ قَتَلُوْهُ مَا there remains the question that if مَا صلَبُوْهُ—‘they did not crucify him’ is taken to mean that the Jews did not kill Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, on the cross, then the phrase مَا قتَلُوْهُ—‘they slew him not’ that precedes it is rendered superfluous. And if it is argued that the words مَا قتَلُوْهُ—‘they slew him not’ are added to mean that his legs were not broken with a view to killing him, even granting this implication, the words مَا صلَبُوْهُ—‘they did not crucify him’ should have followed the words مَا قتَلُوْهُ—‘they slew him not’; for, as a rule, legs are broken after the person is taken down from the cross. So, what is the reason for placing مَا قتَلُوْهُ—‘they slew him not’ before مَا صلَبُوْهُ—‘they did not crucify him’? Please explain.

MY ANSWER—Bear in mind that the following are the verses of the Holy Quran in which the above is mentioned:

1. ☉ The said Maulawī is a school teacher and Qāḍī at Brahmanbaria, District Tippera, Bengal. (Author)

2. They slew him not, nor crucified him i.e. killed him by crucifixion (Ṣūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158). [Publisher]
Translation: And their saying (i.e. of the Jews) that, ‘We have killed the Messiah, ‘Īsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary], Messenger of God’, while in fact they neither killed him nor crucified him; rather, this matter became dubious for them. And as for the people who differ with regard to ‘Īsā (namely, the Christians say that ‘Īsā was raised alive to heaven, and the Jews say that they killed him), both of these groups are in a state of absolute doubt. They know nothing at all about the reality of the situation, and they do not have definitive knowledge, but are merely following their conjectures. In other words, ‘Īsā neither ascended to heaven as is the thinking of the Christians, nor was he killed at the hands of the Jews as is the conjecture of the Jews, but the correct situation is a third one; namely, that he was saved [from the cross] and migrated to another country. And the Jews themselves are not certain that they killed him. In fact, God exalted him towards Himself, and God is Almighty and Wise.2

It is evident that these verses begin with this statement of the Jews who said:

 Meaning: ‘We killed the Messiah, ‘Īsā ibn Maryam.’ Hence, it was

1. Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158–159 [Publisher]
2. When the Jews said that ‘We have killed ‘Īsā’, what they meant by this statement was that ‘Īsā was not exalted towards God Almighty like the believers, since it is written in the Torah that a false Messenger is killed. Thus, God answered them by saying that ‘Īsā was not killed but was exalted towards God Almighty in the manner of the believers. (Author)
3. Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158 [Publisher]
necessary that the statement that God Almighty cited from the Jews should itself be refuted first. This is why God Almighty gave precedence to the words ‘they killed’ over ‘they crucified’, because, that is the claim of the Jews that has been stated here:

\[\text{اِنَّا قَتَلْنَا الْمَسِيْحَ عِيْسَى ابْنَ مَرْيَمَ} \]

Then, after this, it also needs to be made known that regarding the killing of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, as to the manner in which he was killed, there have been two schools of thought among the Jews since antiquity. One of them says that he was first killed with the sword and then his corpse was put on the cross or a tree to serve as a warning to the people. The second school of thought says that he was first placed on the cross, and then after he was put on the cross he was killed. Both of these groups were present at the time of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and are present even to this day.

Thus, since there was a difference of opinion among the Jews with regard to the manner of killing, and while one sect believed that he was killed first and then put on the cross, and the other hoisting upon the cross first, and the killing afterwards; therefore, God resolved to refute both of them. But since the sect on account of which these verses were revealed was the one that believed in the killing of ‘Īsā before he was placed on the cross, the conjecture about killing was refuted first, and the thinking regarding the crucifixion was refuted afterwards.

Sadly, these doubts are born in the hearts only because—generally speaking—most Muslims are neither fully aware of the beliefs of the Jewish sects, nor are they well versed in the Christian beliefs. It is, therefore, befitting at this point that I quote from an ancient Jewish book on the beliefs of one of its sects regarding the killing of ‘Īsā. This book was written about 1,900 years ago, and I have a copy here with me. The name of this Hebrew book is Toledot Yeshu and it was written

---

1. We did kill the Messiah, Jesus, son of Mary (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158). [Publisher]
in ancient times by some Jewish scholars. On page 31 of this book we find written:

Then, taking him out to the place of punishment they stoned him to death. Then the wise men commanded him to be hung on a tree...

so that the beasts should eat the body and the corpse would thus be desecrated.

This statement is supported by this statement of the Gospel also wherein it is written, ‘Jesus, whom ye slew and hanged on a tree.’ See Acts 5:30.¹

¹ Jewish scholars who are present even till today and can be found also in Bombay and Calcutta laugh and mock greatly at the Christian statement that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā ascended to heaven. They say how foolish can these people be who do not understand the real issue. The fact is that it has been an ancient Jewish belief that anyone who is killed on the cross becomes accursed and his spirit is not raised to heaven. It was to counter this objection and to remove the stain that death on the cross entails that the Christians concocted the belief that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā ascended to heaven in his physical frame.

This, however, was very naïve of them since the creed of the Jews was not that one who is not physically raised to heaven is an apostate and an unbeliever and cannot achieve salvation. For even Ḥaḍrat Mūsā [Moses], according to the belief of the Jews, did not ascend physically to heaven. Rather the argument of the Jews was that in keeping with the edict of the Torah anyone who is put on the cross, his spirit is not raised to heaven. Since the cross was a tool for killing criminals, it was far from the Holiness of God to allow a pure and righteous person to be killed by crucifixion.

And so this commandment was written in the Torah that anyone who is killed by the cross is not a believer and his spirit is not raised towards God; in other words, he does not experience rafa‘ ilallah [exaltation to Allah]. And so when the Messiah was killed on the cross it proved in the eyes of the Jews that he was—God forbid—not a man of faith and his spirit was not raised towards God.

Thus, to say in response to this argument that the Messiah ascended physically to heaven is sheer folly, and with such an absurd answer the Jewish objection still remains pertinent as it applies to spiritual exaltation and ascension towards God, and not to physical ascension to heaven. And this is what
the Holy Quran, which arbitrates between the Christians and the Jews, said in its verdict [Surah an-Nisa', 4:159] Meaning that, ‘God raised ‘Isa towards Himself.’ It is obvious that what is raised towards God is the spirit and not the body.

God did not say [‘On the contrary, God raised him to heaven’]. Instead, he said [‘On the contrary, Allah exalted him to Himself’ (Surah an-Nisa’, 4:159)]. In this context God only had to refute the objection of the Jews who deny his spiritual exaltation. And moreover God wanted to remove the misconception of the Christians.

Thus, God Almighty used such comprehensive words that exposed the error of both parties.

Because the statement [‘On the contrary, Allah exalted him to Himself’ (Surah an-Nisa’, 4:159)] of Allah the Exalted, does not only prove that the Messiah was spiritually exalted towards God Almighty and that he is a believer, but it also establishes that he was not raised to heaven. Since God is not bound by physical existence or dimensions or space, to be exalted towards Him clearly shows that the exaltation was not physical; rather, just as the souls of all the other believers are exalted towards God, so did the soul of Ḥaḍrat ‘Isa, may peace be upon him, ascend towards Him. Every intelligent person knows that it is evident from the Holy Quran and the Hadith that when a believer dies his soul returns to God, as Allah the Exalted, says:

\[
\text{جَنَّتِيْ ادْخُلِيْ وَ عِبٰدِيْ فِيْ فَادْخُلِيْ مَّرْضِيَّةً رَاضِيَةً رَبِّكِ اِلٰى ارْجِعِیۤ الْمُطْمَىِٕنَّةُ النَّفْسُ يٰۤاَيَّتُهَا}
\]

Meaning that: ‘O soul at peace! Return to your Lord Who is well pleased with you and you are well pleased with Him. So enter among My chosen servants and enter My Garden.’ [Surah al-Fajr, 89:28–31]

And this exactly was the belief of the Jews that the soul of a believer ascends towards God Almighty, while that of a faithless and disbeliefing person does not ascend to God Almighty. Since they considered Ḥaḍrat ‘Isa, may peace be upon him, to be an unbeliever and faithless—God forbid—that he had attributed falsehood to God and that he was not a true Prophet, and that if he had been true then the Prophet Elijah should have returned to the world before him. This is why these people believed in this exact thing, and do so to this day, that the soul of Ḥaḍrat ‘Isa did not go to God Almighty like the souls of believers; rather, it went to Satan—God forbid.

But in the Holy Quran God Almighty declares the Jews to be liars and together with them declares the Christians also to be speaking falsehood. The Jews have levelled serious accusations against Ḥaḍrat ‘Isa, may peace be upon him, and it is written in the Talmud—the Jewish book of traditions—that when Jesus’ body was buried, a gardener by the name of Judas Iscariot
From this sentence of the Gospel it appears that he was first killed and then hung on the wood¹.

But remember, as is the habit of the Christian clergy they have changed this sentence in some of their Urdu translations, but even up to this day, the words are the same in the English Gospels as I have removed the body and placed it in a canal to stop the water. When Jesus’ disciples found the grave empty they shouted that he had physically ascended to heaven. Then the body was shown to everybody in the presence of Queen Helena, and Jesus’ disciples were deeply embarrassed. [The curse of Allah be upon the liars]. See *Jewish Encyclopaedia*, page 172, volume 7. This encyclopaedia was compiled by the Jews. (Author)

* If in these verses of Allah the Exalted [*‘On the contrary, Allah exalted him to Himself’ (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:159)] it is merely stated that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him was physically raised to the second or fourth heaven, then let someone tell us in which verses of the Holy Quran is to be found the answer to this objection of the Jews when they say that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, unlike believers, did not experience spiritual exaltation towards Allah the Exalted? It would be an insult—God forbid—of the Holy Quran if the Jews objected about one thing and the answer given was quite another, as if God Almighty did not understand what the Jews’ contention was. The Jews did not demand that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā show some special miracle in this regard, their only objection was that he was not exalted like common believers. The befitting answer could only be that he was in fact exalted towards God Almighty.

Thus, if this is not what the above verse means, and instead it denotes physical ascension to heaven, this would not be a rebuttal to the Jews’ objection. To think concerning the Holy Quran that it gives irrelevant answers to questions can take one to the stage of disbelief. Since it was the duty of the Holy Quran to remove the false accusation levelled by the Jews against Jesus—one from among the many of these was their denial of his spiritual exaltation and thus they considered him to be a disbeliever, God forbid—so it was incumbent on the Holy Quran to acquit him of this charge. If these verses do not acquit him, then those other such verses of the Holy Quran must be furnished in which Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, is absolved of this objection. (Author)

¹. The God of your fathers raised up Jesus, whom Ye slew and hanged on tree. Acts 5:30. [Publisher]
quoted them here. In short, it is an established fact that the Jews have two [differing] beliefs regarding the killing of Hādrat 'Īsā.

One of these is that he was first killed and then [his corpse was] nailed to the cross, and it was essential to refute this belief. People of such thinking are also mentioned in the first verse, which is:

1. We did kill the Messiah, Jesus, son of Mary (Sūrah an-Nisā', 4:158). [Publisher]
2. Sūrah an-Nisā', 4:158 [Publisher]

Hence, when the claim was that ‘We killed Jesus,’ it was necessary to first refute this claim. But in order to make the refutation comprehensive, God also rejected the view of the other sect—which claimed that he was first placed on the cross—by saying [‘They crucified him not’].

Thereafter, Allah the Exalted, says:

Translation: ‘Īsā was neither killed nor crucified; rather, the situation was made dubious for the people. And the Jews and the Christians who differ with regard to ‘Īsā’s crucifixion or his spiritual ascent are merely in a state of doubt about it; they have no definite knowledge thereof, but only follow a conjecture; and they are languishing in doubt and conjecture and are not themselves convinced that they indeed killed Jesus.’

This is the reason why some sects of the Christians believe that the second coming of the Messiah will take place figuratively, like that of Prophet Ilyās. In other words, the belief that the Messiah is physically alive in heaven is wrong, and that in fact he had died and the promise of the return of the Messiah in the Latter Days means the coming of
someone who possesses the qualities and character of ʿĪsā the Messiah, and not that ʿĪsā himself shall return. Thus, in the book, *A New Life of Jesus*, by D.F. Strauss volume 1, page 410 is found this passage which I have already quoted on page 127 of my book *Tuḥfah Golarhviyyah*, and here I will confine myself with giving its translation:

Crucifixion, they maintain, even if the feet as well as the hands are supposed to have been nailed, occasions but very little loss of blood. It kills, therefore, only very slowly, by convulsions produced by the straining of the limbs, or by gradual starvation. So, if Jesus, supposed indeed to be dead, had been taken down from the cross, after about six hours, there is every probability of his supposed death having been only a death-like swoon, from which, after the descent from the cross, Jesus recovered again in the cool cavern, covered as he was with healing ointments and strongly scented spices. On this head it is usual to appeal to an account in Josephus, who says that on one occasion, when he was returning from a military recognizance on which he had been sent, he found several Jewish prisoners who had been crucified. He saw among them three acquaintances, whom he begged Titus to give to him. They were immediately taken down and carefully attended to, one was really saved, but the two others could not be recovered. (*A New Life of Jesus*, by D. F. Strauss, vol. 1, p. 410)

And on page 455, 457, and 347 in the book *Modern Doubt and Christian Belief*, there is a statement which I have reproduced on page 138 of *Tuḥfah Golarhviyyah*, and its translation is given below:

---

1. In *Barāḥīn-e-Aḥmadiyya* Part V the Promised Messiah had given an Urdu translation here. The paragraph in the translation given in the text above is from the original book. [Publisher]
The former of these hypotheses, that of apparent death, was employed by the old Rationalists, and more recently by Schleiermacher in his Life of Christ... Schleiermacher’s supposition, that Jesus afterwards lived for a time with the disciples, and then retired into entire solitude for his second death...

And in the Book of Prophet Isaiah, Chapter 53, there is also to be found an indication to the same thing. And the prayer of Jesus, may peace be on him, which is recorded in the Gospels also, shows this. It is written in it لَا يُضَرِّبُ وَدِومًا مَّأْوَى جَارِيَةٍ وَعَبْرَاتٍ مُتَحَدَّثَةٍ فَسُمِعَ لِتَقْوَاهُ. meaning that, ‘Jesus prayed with deep fervour and anguish and his tears flowed down his cheeks. And, on account of his piety, his prayer was heard.’¹

And Corriere della Sera, the most well-known newspaper of Southern Italy has published the following strange news:

On 13 July 1879, an old monk by the name of Kor, who was known as a saint in his life, passed away, leaving behind some possessions. The governor sought out his next of kin and handed to them 200,000 franc (118,750 rupees) in various currencies that were found in the cave where the monk had lived for a long time. There were also found some old scripts together with the currency which the relatives could not read. Some Hebrew scholars got an opportunity to scrutinize these papers and were amazed that the writing on them was ancient Hebrew. When these papers were read they were found to contain the following lines: ‘Peter, the Fisherman, servant of Jesus son of Mary, so addressed the people in the name of God and according to His will.’

And it ends with the words:

¹. See Hebrews 5:7 [Publisher]
I, Peter the Fisherman, in the name of Jesus, and in the 90th year of my life, have decided to write these loving words, three Passovers (i.e. three years) after the demise of my lord and master, Jesus, son of Mary, near God’s Holy Temple, at a place called Bulier.

The scholars have concluded that the manuscript dates back to Peter’s time. The London Bible Society holds the same view, and after thoroughly scrutinizing the manuscripts has offered to pay 400,000 lira (237,500 rupees) to the owners in exchange for it.

The prayer of Yāsūʿ ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary], may peace be upon both of them—He said: ‘O my God, I do not deem myself able to overcome that which I see as evil. Nor have I acquired the virtue that I had desired. But while others have their rewards in their hands, I do not, and my pride is in my work. None is worse than me. O God—who art the Most High—forgive my sins. O God, do not make me a target for my enemies’ criticism, nor make me such as is disgraced by my friends. And do not cause my righteousness to become a trial for me. Do not make this world the centre of my joy or my ultimate objective. And do not subjugate me under someone who does not have mercy on me. O God, who art Most Merciful, in the name of Your mercy, do as I ask. You do indeed have mercy on those who are in need of it.’

**His Statement**—In the verse 1 there remains the misgiving that the word [bal—i.e. ‘rather’] bestows a close affinity upon the two sets of words [‘Allah exalted him to Himself’] and the words [‘They certainly did not kill him’]—which indicates proximity in time between the two events—this entails that the time of the ascent should be close to the time of the killing, and

---

1. And they did not convert this conjecture into a certainty; On the contrary Allah exalted him to Himself (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158–159). [Publisher]
there should not be a lapse of time between the two. However, accord-
ing to your statement there is a long span between the time of the kill-
ing and the time of the ascent. If the Holy Quran had instead said ما قتلوہ یقینا بل خلّصہ اللّٰہ من ایدیہم حیًّا ثُمّ رفعہ إلیه [‘They certainly did not kill him but Allah rescued him from their hands alive and then raised him towards Himself’], then only would it bear this connotation.

**MY ANSWER**—This doubt arose in your mind because you only gave cursory thought to the matter. Otherwise, had you kept the entire sce-
nario in mind, such doubt would never have arisen. The fact is that the Jews believed that, according to the Torah, if a claimant of propheth-
ood is killed it proves that he is an impostor and not a true Prophet; and that if someone is crucified, he becomes accursed and is not exalted towards God. And since the Jews believed that حضرت یسٰیّ, may peace be upon him, was both killed and crucified—some believing that he was first killed and then hung upon the cross, while others claiming that he was first hung on the cross and then killed—therefore, to this day, they deny that he was spiritually exalted. They say that he was killed and crucified; hence, he was not exalted towards God Almighty as the believers are.

The Jews believe that disbelievers are not exalted towards God, but the believers are exalted towards Him once they die. And since in their eyes Jesus became accursed as a result of crucifixion—God forbid—therefore, he was not exalted towards God. This was the matter that the Holy Quran had to adjudicate upon, and it did so in the verse that I have quoted.

Hence, the verse:

\[1\text{. And they certainly did not kill him; on the contrary Allah exalted him to Himself (Sûrah an-Nisâ', 4:158–159). [Publisher]}

---
makes manifest this very verdict, because the words ‘ exaltation to God’ signify—according to both, Jewish and Muslim beliefs—the death that comes upon a person while in state of belief so that his soul is exalted towards God. Through their belief in the killing and crucifixion of Jesus, the Jews implied that when Jesus died, his soul was not exalted towards God. So, the rebuttal to their claim of killing and crucifying Jesus could only be the one that God has given. What this verse says, in other words, is that the Jews cite the crucifixion and killing to prove that the soul of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, was not exalted towards God when he died, and God in rebuttal to this says that his spirit was exalted towards God when he died.

To expand this verse, it would read ‘ Rather, God raised him to Himself when he died’ [Exaltation to Allah] occurs only at the time of death, and—in fact—death which occurs in a state of faith is referred to as exaltation to Allah. So, the Jews say ‘ Jesus died as a disbeliever and was not exalted towards God’, while Almighty God replied: [‘Nay, he died as a believer and was exalted towards God’]. The word ‘ rather’ here is not used out of place but is in keeping with the idiom of the Arabic tongue.

The Jews were mistaken in thinking that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, had actually been crucified, and this error led them into another error whereby they denied that he was exalted towards God when he died. But God Almighty said that he was never killed or crucified, and that when he died he was exalted towards God. Hence, there is no ambiguity in this choice of words, and the word ‘ rather’ is not— I repeat, is not— used out of place. Since both Jews and Muslims believe that [exaltation to Allah] means rising of the spirit towards God at the time of death, there is no room for any other meaning in this context.

And this should also be remembered that the period, or age, about which there is this statement of the Holy Quran that ʿĪsā, was neither killed nor crucified, it is about the same period, the same epoch, that
it is stated that after his death he was spiritually exalted towards God Almighty. The word بل ['rather'] here serves as a temporal conjunction rather than an immediate conjunction—a connection between the two periods of time, and not the sameness of the moment of occurrence. Therefore, the meaning of the verse is that Ḥaḍrat Īsā, may peace be upon him, was not killed or crucified at that time, but that he died a natural death and was thereafter exalted towards Almighty God, and this was in keeping with the promise recorded in the Holy Quran:

And توفّی [tawaffi] means to cause someone to die a natural death. The author of Kashshāf has written in his commentary on this verse that إنّی ممیتك حتف انفك ['I will cause you to die a natural death']. Thus settles the matter once and for all, because while our opponents claim that Ḥaḍrat Īsā, may peace be upon him, was raised [to heaven] while he was alive, God in this verse says that his exaltation occurred after his demise.

Alas for the people who claim what is contrary to the clear edict of the Book of Allah. The Holy Quran and all past Scriptures and the Hadith confirm that the ‘exaltation’ that takes place after one’s death is referred to as spiritual exaltation, and this is the same exaltation that every believer necessarily experiences after he dies.

Some prejudiced people, having been silenced on this point, say that this verse should read like this یٰعِیْسٰی اِنِّیْ رَافِعُكَ اِلَیَّ وَمُتَوَفِّیْكَ۔ ['O Jesus, 1. O Jesus, I will cause you to die a natural death and will exalt you to Myself (Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
I will exalt you to Myself and cause you to die’. They seem to imply that God made a mistake in giving precedence to رافعك و متوفّيك [I will cause you to die] over رافعك و متوفّيك [I will exalt you to Myself] and saying ‘O Jesus, I will cause you to die and exalt you towards Myself’ whereas He should have said ‘O Jesus, I will exalt you towards Myself and cause you to die’.

Alas, what a terrible thing bigotry is that in order to support it they distort the Book of Allah! This act of distortion is the same vile act that led the Jews to be called accursed and their features to be defaced. And now these people are ready to distort the Holy Quran! And had there not been the promise:

أَيُّهَا الْيَسُّ إِنِّي رَافِعُكَ إِلَيّ وَ مَتَوفِئٍ إِلَيّ

it would not be beyond them to change the verse of the Holy Quran إِنِّي رَافِعُكَ إِلَيّ وَ مَتَوفِئٍ إِلَيّ [‘I will cause you to die and will exalt you to Myself’] and instead write ‘O Jesus, I will exalt you towards Myself and cause you to die’]. However, such distortion also was not possible since Almighty God has made four promises in this verse, as He says:

1. Verily, We Ourself have sent down this Exhortation, and most surely We will be its Guardian (Sūrah al-Hijr, 15:10). [Publisher]
2. O Jesus, I will cause you to die a natural death (Sūrah Al-e-Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
3. And will exalt you to Myself (Sūrah Al-e-Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
4. And will clear thee from the charges of those who disbelieve (Sūrah Al-e-Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
5. And will place those who follow thee above those who disbelieve, until the Day of Resurrection (Sūrah Al-e-Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
These are the four promises that I have placed numbers on.

And as is evident from authentic abādīth [pl. hadith] and from the Holy Quran itself, the promise of مطھّرك من الّذین كفروا ['I will clear you from the charges of those who disbelieve'], which follows the promise of exaltation, was fulfilled with the coming of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, for it was he who defended Jesus against the baseless calumnies levelled against him by the Jews and the Christians. Similarly, the fourth promise, namely:

was fulfilled through the victory and ascendancy of Islam.

Thus, if the word متوفیك ['I shall cause you to die'] was to follow the word رافعك إلیّ ['I shall raise you towards Myself']—as our opponents would have it—then the clause رافعك إلیّ ['I shall raise you towards Myself'] could not precede the clause مطھّرك ['I shall clear you'], as the promise of مطھّرك ['I shall clear you'] has already been fulfilled, whereas—according to our opponents—the promise of متوفیك ['I shall cause you to die'] has yet to be fulfilled. Likewise, the promise of متوفیك ['I shall cause you to die'] cannot precede the promise of:

because that promise, too, has been fulfilled and it endures to the Last Day. This being the case, if the word توفّی ['cause you to die'] is removed from the beginning of the verse, there is nowhere else to place it prior to the Last Day. This would entail that Jesus would die after the Last

1. And will place those who follow thee above those who disbelieve, until the Day of Resurrection (Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
2. And will place those who follow thee above those who disbelieve, until the Day of Resurrection (Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
Day since such the sequential order of the verse negates his death prior to the Last Day.

Now, it should be noticed that it is a miracle of the Holy Quran that even though our opponents were ready to alter the Holy Quran in the manner of the Jews, they could not find anywhere to place the phrase رافعك [‘I shall raise you’] after removing it from its original location. Each word has been placed so appropriately in its place that there is no room left for interpolation.

In truth, the verse:

1. اللَّهُ يُبْعْثُ إِلَيْ رَافِعُكَ وَ مُتَوَفِّيْكَ إِنِّيْ يَعْيَسٰۤى

should by itself suffice for a seeker after truth, for it shows that the ‘exaltation’ that our opponents are so vocal about, is to take place after death and not before, for this is proven by God’s own testimony, and it does not behove a believer to reject Divine Testimony. And since it is clear, on the explicit authority of the Holy Quran, that the ‘exaltation’ is experienced after one’s death, it proves that this is the same exaltation which God has promised to every believer upon his death.

It is indeed strange that while God has placed رافعك إلیّ [‘I shall raise you to Myself’] after متوفّیک [‘I shall cause you to die’], these people would like to reverse the order so that they might somehow portray حضرت یسّا as sitting [somewhere] alive in the heavens. In this case how can they be different from the Jews in terms of interpolation? And if these people, like the Jews, have the right to change the Holy Quran arbitrarily, then the Holy Quran is not secure! Can they produce even one single hadith that permits them to put رافعك الیّ [‘I shall raise you to Myself’] before متوفّیک [‘I shall cause you to die’]? And when it is not permitted by either the Quran or the Hadith, why do they not fear the curse that has already befallen the Jews?

1. O Jesus, I will cause you to die a natural death and will exalt you to Myself (سُورَةَ الْإِمْرَانِ, 3:56). [Publisher]
HIS STATEMENT—According to your statement, Ḥaḍrat `Īsā, may peace be upon him, after being saved from the cross, had gone to Kashmir. First of all, it was not easy at that time to reach Kashmir, especially travelling incognito. Then there is the objection why his disciples did not flock around him, and why Ḥaḍrat `Īsā remained obscure like one buried alive?

MY ANSWER—The same God who directed Ḥaḍrat `Īsā, may peace be upon him, to move to Kashmir, had also become his Guide, so what is so strange about a Prophet reaching Kashmir? And if this is so strange, then a faithless person can also wonder how our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, remained hidden from the eyes of the disbelievers when they had reached the very mouth of the Cave of Thaur during his migration to Madīnah. Therefore, the answer to such objections is that God’s special grace that attends the Prophets extraordinarily saves them and guides them. As to the question, ‘If Ḥaḍrat `Īsā, may peace be upon him, had gone to Kashmir, why did the Disciples not reach him?’; the reply is that the lack of knowledge regarding something does not necessitate its non-existence. How do you know that they did not reach him?

However, since it was a secretive journey1—just as the journey of our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, at

1. ☆ It is also the practice of God about the Prophets, peace be upon them, that they migrate from their homeland, as is mentioned in ❧Ṣahih Bukhārī ❦ as well. Thus, Ḥaḍrat Mūsā [Moses], may peace be upon him, migrated from Egypt to Canaan, and our Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, migrated from Makkah to Madinah. Hence it was essential that Ḥaḍrat `Īsā too should comply with this practice. So, he migrated to Kashmir after the incident of the cross. The Gospels, too, allude to this migration where it is written that a Prophet is not without honour but in his own country. By the word 'Prophet', Jesus meant himself. Therefore, the Christians should be ashamed at this point that they consider him to be God and not a Prophet although a Prophet is one who receives revelation from God. Therefore, it is necessary that God and Prophet be distinct from each other. (Author)
the time of migration was secretive—it was considered unwise to travel with a large caravan, just as it is evident that when our Prophet may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, had migrated to Madīnah he was accompanied only by Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him; and undertaking the 200 kose journey to Madīnah was not easy even at that time. Had the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, wished, he could have taken 60 or 70 people with him, but he only made Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him, his companion. To meddle into the mysteries of Prophets is an improper meddling.

And how do you know that the Disciples did not come to India to join Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, even afterwards? On the contrary, the Christians themselves believe that some of the Disciples did—indeed—visit India in those days. The arrival of the disciple Thomas in Madras and the gathering of Christians in a festival every year in Madras to this day in its commemoration is something which is no secret to any knowledgeable person. In fact, the tomb in Srinagar, Kashmir, which we call the tomb of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, is believed by some eminent Christian clergymen to be the tomb of some disciple. This is despite the fact that the person buried in that tomb wrote in his book that, ‘I am a Prophet and a prince, and the Injīl [Gospel] was revealed to me.’ It is also written in the historical books pertaining to Kashmir, which I have had access to, that this Prophet was from among the Israelites, that he was called the Prince Prophet, and that he had migrated to Kashmir from his own land. Also, we learn from the time of his arrival as is recorded in these books, that nineteen hundred (1,900) years have elapsed since the time this Prophet came to Kashmir.

And we also indict the Christians that whereas you admit that the person in that grave who is buried in Mohalla Khanyar, Srinagar is a disciple of Jesus, but how could he be a disciple when it is written in his

1. A *kose* is a measure of distance, the length of which is approximately two English miles. [Publisher]
own book that he was a Prophet and was a prince and the *Injil* [Gospel] was revealed to him? Can a disciple say that he is a Prophet and a prince and the *Injil* had been revealed to him? Thus, there can be no doubt that this tomb, which is in Kashmir, is that of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him. And let it be clear to those who believe him to be sitting in heaven that he, in fact, rests in Kashmir; that is, in Mohalla Khanyar, Srinagar. Just as God Almighty had kept the People of the Cave hidden for so long, so did He keep Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, hidden and finally disclosed the truth to me. There are thousands of such instances in the works of God Almighty, and it is not His way to seat anyone in heaven with a mortal body.

**HIS STATEMENT**—In *ahādīth*, ‘Īsā [Jesus], who is to descend, has been called *Nabiyyullāh* [‘the Prophet of God’]. Can it be proven from the Quran and Hadith that a *Muḥaddath* [recipient of discourse with God] has also been called a *Nabi* [‘Prophet’]?

**MY ANSWER**—In Arabic and Hebrew, the word *Nabi* [Prophet] merely means one who makes prophecies—one who makes a prophecy on the basis of revelation received from God. Thus, when—on the authority of the Holy Quran—the door of such Prophethood is not closed whereby a person, through grace of and submission to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, may be granted the honour of converse and discourse with God and may be informed of hidden matters through divine revelation, then why would such Prophets not appear among the Muslims? What is the argument for it? I do not hold the belief that a seal has been placed on this kind of Prophethood. Only the door to that kind of Prophethood is closed that is accompanied by the ordinances of a new Shariah or that is a claim that moves away from submission to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. But a claim to Prophethood by one whom divine revelation describes as an *ummatī* [follower of the Holy Prophet[as]]
on one hand and also calls him a Nabi [‘Prophet’] on the other, is not in contradiction to the injunctions of the Holy Quran, inasmuch as such Prophethood—being that of an ummati—is a reflection of the Prophethood of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and is not an independent Prophethood.

Had you properly reflected on the ahādīth, this objection would not have arisen in your mind at all. You say that Ḥisā [Jesus] who is to descend has been called Ṣabiyyullāh [‘a Prophet of God’] in ahādīth; I say that the same Jesus who is to descend has also been called an ummati in ahādīth. 1

Can you tell me from the Holy Quran or Hadith that Ḥisā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary], the past Prophet, has been called an ummati at any place? It is thus quite clear that this Ḥisā who is called both a Prophet and an ummati is a different Ḥisā. He is not the Ḥisā [Jesus] who lived among the Israelites, who was an independent Prophet, and to whom the Injil was revealed. How can you make him an ummati [follower of Holy Prophet357]?

In Ṣaḥīḥ Bukhārī, where the future Ḥisā is described as an ummati, his physical appearance is also described as distinct from the first Ḥisā. Of course, had the ahādīth only used the word Nabī and not ummati, one might have been mistaken, but now that Ṣaḥīḥ Bukhārī has clearly written إِمَامُكُمْ مِنْكُم [‘your Imam from among you’] with regard to the coming Ḥisā: ‘O my followers, the coming Ḥisā is also only an ummati and no more.’ Likewise, Ṣaḥīḥ Muslim records these words أنَّكَ مَنْ كَمْ: meaning that, Ḥisā will be your leader and will be from among you.’ That is to say, he will be an individual from within this Ummah.

Thus, when it is proven from these ahādīth that the Ḥisā to come

1. ✫ An ummati is the person who cannot reach his perfection without following the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. So can it be imagined with regard to Ḥaḍrāt Ḥisā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, that he will remain imperfect until he returns to the world and enters the Ummah of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and follows him? (Author)
is an ummatī, it follows that him being called Nabi [Prophet] in the 
Word of God is not with the sense that is applicable to an independent 
Prophet. Rather, the only intent here is that God Almighty shall have 
discourse and converse with him and He shall reveal to him the news 
of the unseen. This is why, despite being an ummatī, he will also be 
called a Nabi. And if it is asked, ‘How could any ummatī be called a 
Nabi—it being essential for a Prophet that God speak to him—when 
the door of divine discourse and revelation is closed upon this Ummah 
till the Day of Resurrection?’, the reply is that this door is not closed 
upon this Ummah at all. Had this door been closed upon this Ummah, 
this Ummah would have been a dead ummah and would have become 
distant and estranged from God. Moreover, had this door been closed 
upon this Ummah, why would this prayer be taught in the Holy Quran:

The fact that the Holy Prophet as has been called Khātimul-Anbiyā’ 
[the Seal of the Prophets] does not mean that, after him, the door to 
divine converse and discourse is closed. Had this been the import, this 
would then be an accursed ummah which, like Satan, would be forever 
removed and alienated from God. Instead, what it means is that direct 
bestowal of the gift of revelation from Almighty God is barred and it is 
impossible and prohibited for anyone to receive this blessing without 
rendering obedience to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of 
Allah be upon him. It is a point of honour for the Holy Prophet, may 
peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, that obedience to him is so 
blessed that when a person renders the fullest obedience to him, he is 
granted the honour of converse and discourse of God.

What honour, stature, spiritual prowess, and holy power would a 
Prophet have in his person if the people who claim to render obedience

1. Guide us in the right path—the path of those on whom You have bestowed 
Your blessings (Sūrah al-Fātiḥah, 1:6–7). [Publisher]
to him are blind and devoid of sight, and God does not open their eyes through His converse and discourse. How absurd and futile is the doctrine that one should maintain that after the Holy Prophet ﷺ the door to divine revelation has forever been closed, and that there is no hope for it in the future till the Day of Resurrection, and that one needs only worship the tales from the past. Can such a religion be worth its name in which no direct evidence of God can be found—all it has are tales? And even if one were to give up one’s life in His path, and totally lose oneself in seeking His pleasure, and give Him preference over all else, God would still not open the door to His recognition for him, and would not bless Him with His converse and discourse.

I swear by Almighty God that no one in this age would be as disgusted with such a religion as I would. I call such a religion a satanic religion—not Godly—and I am certain that such a religion leads to Hell. It keeps one blind and lets him die blind and takes him to the grave blind. But, at the same time, I swear by the Gracious and Merciful God that Islam is not such a religion. In fact, **Islam is the only religion in the world that has the quality of investing one with divine discourse on the condition that one renders true and full measure of obedience to our lord and master, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him.** This is the very reason why the hadith says:

ٍعلماء أُمّتی كأنبیاء بنی إسرائیل

Meaning: ‘The saintly ulema of my Ummah are like the Prophets of the Israelites.’ In this hadith, too, the saintly ulema are called ummati on the one hand, and are likened to the Prophets on the other.

It is self-evident that whereas Almighty God has continued to speak to His servants from ancient times—so much so that even women among the Israelites were honoured with divine converse and discourse, such as the mother of Mūsā and Mary the Truthful—then how unfortunate and wretched is this Ummah that its men are not
equal even to Israelite women? Can it be expected that now is such an age that in this age God still hears but no longer speaks? If there is no dishonour for Him to hear the supplications of poor mortals, why is it a dishonour to speak to them?

Let it be remembered that attributes of God Almighty are never suspended. So, just as He shall always continue to hear, so shall He continue to speak. And what can be a clearer argument than this that the continuation of God’s speaking, like His hearing will never come to an end? And it proves that there will always remain a group of people with whom God will continue to have converse and discourse. And I cannot comprehend why people get so agitated by the word Nabī [Prophet]. Once it has been established that the coming Messiah will be from within this Ummah, what is the harm if God called him a Nabī? Such people do not see that he has also been called an ummatī [follower of the Holy Prophet] and invested with all the attributes of an ummatī. This compound name is quite distinct and Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, the Israelite, was never known by this name. Further, Almighty God has repeatedly called me an ummatī as well as a Nabī in His revelations. Hearing these names creates extreme ecstasy in my heart and I express my gratitude that I have been honoured with this compound name. The wisdom behind the granting of this compound name seems to be to strike the whip of castigation upon the Christians that whereas they portray Jesus, son of Mary, as God, our Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is a Prophet of such calibre that an individual from his Ummah can be a Nabī and can be called ‘Īsā despite being an ummatī.

**HIS STATEMENT**—With regard to the Promised Mahdi, there are found in some ahādīth words such as من وُلد فاطمۃ [‘from among the progeny of Fāṭimah’], and من عرنتی [‘from my progeny’], and من اهළ بیتی [‘from among the people of my household’], and it is also written بیاطیُٔ إسمہ إسمی و إسم إبیہ إسم إبی۔ [‘his name will be my name, and the name of his
father will be that of my father’]. Please explain what is meant by each of them.

**MY ANSWER**—My claim is not that I am the Mahdi who conforms to [the progeny of Fāṭimah], [from my progeny], etc. Rather, my claim is that of being the Promised Messiah, and regarding the Promised Messiah, there is no statement of any muḥaddith [scholar of hadith] that he would be from among the progeny of Fāṭimah etc. Nevertheless, at the same time—as every muḥaddith says—I also say that all the *ahādith* regarding the Promised Mahdi are moot and suspect and not one of them is authentic. The degree to which fabrication has taken place in these *ahādith* has not taken place in any other hadith.

During the time of the Abbasid Khulafā’ etc. the Khulafā’ were very fond of pronouncing themselves the Promised Mahdi. So for this reason, some *ahādith* describe the Mahdi as being from the progeny of ‘Abbās and some from the progeny of Fāṭimah. There are some *ahādith* which also say that ‘He will be a man from my Ummah.’ But essentially all of these *ahādith* are not worthy of any trust. This is not just my word; all eminent scholars of the Ahl-e-Sunnah have been saying the very same. As opposed to these *ahādith*, this hadith recorded by Ibn-e-Majah is very authentic: ل مھدی الّ عیسٰی meaning, there is no other Mahdi; ‘Īsā is the very same Mahdi who is to come.

**HIS STATEMENT**—The prophecies of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, that even the divines have tried to interpret [rather than taking them literally], are mostly those that have been disclosed in the form of dreams....

**My Answer**: I could not understand this question; hence, I am unable to answer it.
**HIS STATEMENT**—Literal-minded people do not possess inner insight; hence, there is no wonder that they do not recognize the Promised Messiah. But the men of God and men of insight ought to recognize His Holiness through revelations etc. as the late Qādī Thanāullāh of Panipat writes in regard to the Promised Mahdi, in his book *Tadhkīratul-Maʿād*: ‘The saints from Levant and the elite from Iraq will come to pledge allegiance to him’.

**MY ANSWER**—All these statements are made on the basis that the Promised Mahdi will appear from amongst the progeny of Fāṭimah or the progeny of ‘Abbās, and the *Abdāl* [saints] and *Qūth* [spiritual guiding stars] will take the oath of allegiance to him. But I have just written that eminent *muḥaddithīn* [scholars of Hadith] have held that all such *ahādīth* regarding the Mahdi are impaired and suspect; rather, most of them are fabricated, and not to be trusted even one bit. Some of the Imams (divines) have written special books to falsify such *ahādīth* and have vehemently rejected them. Thus, when the coming of the Mahdi itself is doubtful and uncertain, how can there be any credibility to the notion that the *Abdāl* will take the oath of allegiance to him?

When the basis is false, how can the offshoots be considered true? Moreover, *Abdāl* do not have any inborn physical features to be distinguished from others. *Abdāl*, in the eyes of God, are people who bring about a holy transformation in themselves. You too—if you were to bring about a holy transformation in yourself and were to devote yourself to the Truth with no regard for people’s curse and abuse—would be counted among the *Abdāl*.

Most in my Jamāʿat [Community] are people who have suffered much hardships for the sake of this Jamāʿat, and have suffered much indignities, and have not hesitated to even give up their lives. Are they not the *Abdāl*? Shaikh ‘Abdur-Raḥmān, who was strangled in front of Amīr ‘Abdur-Raḥmān on account of [his allegiance to] this Jamāʿat and chose to be slaughtered like a goat—was he not among the *Abdāl*?
Likewise, Maulawi Šāhibzādah ‘Abdul-Laṭīf—who was a muhaddith, a jurist, and most eminent among the scholars of Kabul—was stoned to death for [embracing] this Jamāʿat. He was counselled repeatedly that if he would break off his allegiance to this person [me] he would be honoured even more than before, but he chose to die, and did not even care about what would become of his wife and young children. For forty days his corpse lay buried in the stones.

Was he not among the Ābdāl? I am—by the grace of God—still alive, and God has made great promises to me. Who knows how many and from which countries, pure-hearted people will enter my Jamāʿat? Besides, what is written in the chronicles with reference to the Promised Messiah is that the ulema would not accept him. There is no mention at all of any ābdāl pledging allegiance to him.

**His Statement**—So far there has appeared no clear Sign in your favour. Only two or three hundred thousand people have entered your Jamāʿat, and that amounts to no more than a drop out of an ocean. Therefore, if someone were to delay and defer entering the Jamāʿat, without rejecting, until the appearance of manifest impact—would it be permissible or not?

**My Answer**—Waiting and delaying is also a form of denial. As for the point that many have not yet believed, this cannot be a proof that the claim remains unsubstantiated. If one who has been ordained by God possesses arguments and Signs, his claim cannot become weak by someone not believing in him. Besides, one needs to consider that the people who accepted the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, with a sincere heart by the time of his demise numbered no more than 150,000. Would their small number render doubtful the Prophethood of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him?

The fact of the matter is that the prerequisite for the truth of a true
Prophet is not that the majority should accept him. The prerequisite, indeed, is the incontrovertible evidence by irrefutable arguments. In this case, the requirements have been fulfilled incontrovertibly in consonance with the pattern of Prophethood. Thus, in keeping with the prophecy of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, the lunar and solar eclipses, that was to be a Sign for the advent of the Promised Messiah, did occur twice in the world.

Likewise, a new form of transport that was alluded to in the Holy Quran and Hadith has also come into existence; i.e. the railways which have taken the place of camels for transportation, as [foretold] in the Holy Quran:

1. Sūrah at-Takwīr, 81:5 [Publisher]
2. The present day edition of Musnad Ahmad bin Ḥanbal has the same wording, whereas in Sahih Muslim, instead of وَلِتَرَكَنَّ the word وَلَا تَرَكَنَّ is recorded. [Publisher]
may peace be upon him, the Promised Messiah would also appear in the 14th century,\(^1\) and so my advent took place in the fourteenth century.

That is to say, just as Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, was born in the fourteenth century after Ḥaḍrat Mūsā, may peace be upon him, so have I appeared in the fourteenth century from the time of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. Regarding these Latter Days, God had also given the news in the Holy Quran that books and magazines would be published extensively throughout the world at that time, ways of interaction between nations would open up, many canals would be dug out of rivers, new mines would be discovered, many disputes in religious matters would arise between people, and one nation would attack another.

And while all this is happening, a trumpet will be blown from Heaven; i.e. God—through sending the Promised Messiah—will manifest Himself for the propagation of Islam. Then an inclination towards Islam will develop in the pure-hearted people of every country throughout the world, and God will gather the blessed people of the entire earth into Islam to the extent He wills. Then will be the end. So, all the above have come to pass. Similarly, it was written in *ahādīth* that

---

1. \(^\star\) Although the Christians have erroneously written that Yasū’ Masīḥ [Jesus, the Messiah], appeared in the fifteenth century after Mūsā [Moses], this is a mistake they have made. From Jewish histories it is unanimously established that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā [Jesus], appeared fourteen centuries after Mūsā, and this statement is correct. Even though perfect similarity is not necessary to prove resemblance, for instance if we called someone a lion it does not necessitate that he must have the claws and hide and a tail too like a lion and should have the voice of a lion too. Rather a degree of similarity is enough to liken one person to another. Thus, it wouldn’t matter even if we were to accept the Christian view that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā appeared fifteen centuries after Ḥaḍrat Mūsā, because the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries are adjacent and this much difference in time would not take anything away from the mutual resemblance. But I give preference to the Jewish statement in this regard who say that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā had claimed Prophethood exactly in the fourteenth century after Ḥaḍrat Mūsā because the Hebrew Torah they go by is more authentic than the Christians’ translations. (Author)
the Promised Messiah would appear at the head of the century and that he would be the *Mujaddid* [Reformer] of the fourteenth [Hijri] century. So these Signs, too, have been fulfilled in this age.

It was also written that, by virtue of his birth, he would have a share of two centuries. And that he would be bestowed two names. And his birth would have a share of two lineages. And the fourth dual quality is that in his birth, too, he would be born as a twin. So all these Signs have become manifest. My sharing the two centuries—i.e. my being *Dhul-Qarnain*—is so established that there is no calendar of any nation of which my life has not spanned its two centuries.

Similarly, I received two titles from God Almighty: One I was named *ummati* [follower of the Holy Prophet], as is indicated by my name *Ghulam Ahmad* [i.e. the Servant of Ahmad]; second, I was named, by way of reflection, *Nabi* ['Prophet'], as God Almighty named me ‘Ahmad’ in the earlier parts of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya* and addressed me repeatedly by this very name.

This, indeed, was an allusion to the fact that I am a *Nabi* by way of reflection.1

Thus, I am an *ummati* too and also—by way of reflection—a *Nabi*. This is what is alluded to by the divine revelation set out in the earlier parts of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*:

\[
کُلُّ بِرَكَةٍ مِّنْ مُحَمَّدٍ صَلَّی اللهُ عَلَیْهِ وَسَلَّمَ۔ فَتَبَارَكَ مَنْ عَلَّمَ وَتَعَلَّمَ
\]

That is, every blessing is from the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. Thus, greatly blessed is the person who

---

1. ☆ Let no one be misled by the word *Nabi* here. I have written time and again that the Prophethood referred to here is not what is called an independent Prophethood. No independent Prophet can be called an *ummati*, whereas I am an *ummati*. Hence, it is an honorary name from Almighty God that was obtained as a result of obedience to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, so that the similarity with Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā be complete. (Author)
taught—the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—and, thereafter, greatly blessed is the one who was taught—this humble one. Therefore, due to perfect obedience, I was named an ummati and having acquired the full reflection of Prophethood, my title became Nabi. Thus, I acquired two titles.

Those who object again and again that in Sahih Muslim the ‘Īsā to come has been called Nabi, it is incumbent upon them that they should read this exposition of mine with care, because the same Muslim in which the ‘Īsā to come has been called a Nabi, the ‘Īsā to come has also been called an ummati therein. And it is not just the aḥādīth, but it is also inferred from the Holy Quran because it is explicitly stated in Sūrah at-Tahrīm that some individuals of this Ummah have been named ‘Maryam’ [Mary], and—on account of their perfect obedience to the Shariah—a Spirit was breathed into this ‘Maryam’ by God, and after the Spirit was breathed, ‘Īsā was born from this ‘Maryam’.

It was on this basis that God named me ‘Īsā ibn-e-Maryam, because for a time I lived only in a Mary-like state. And then when God was pleased with that Mary-like state, a Spirit was breathed into me by Him. After this Spirit was breathed into me I progressed from the Mary-like state to become ‘Īsā. A detailed account of this is present in the earlier parts of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya; for, in the earlier parts of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya I was initially named ‘Maryam’, as God says:

يا مریم اسكن انت و زوجک الجنّۃ

Meaning: ‘O Mary! You and the one who is your companion, enter both into Paradise.’

And then in the same Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya, giving me the title of Maryam, He has said:

نَفَخْتُ فِيکم مِن روح الصدق

Meaning: ‘O Mary, I breathed into you the Spirit of truth.’ This
breathing of the Spirit was a kind of metaphor similar to Mary, the Truthful’s conception. And then after this ‘conception,’ at the end of the book I was named ʿĪsā, as He said:

Meaning: ‘O ʿĪsā, I will cause you to die and will raise you to Myself like believers.’ Thus, I was named ‘Īsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary] in the Book of God. Since Maryam is an ummatī individual and ‘Īsā is a Nabī, therefore, by giving me the names Maryam and ʿĪsā it was shown that I am both an ummatī and a Nabī—but a Nabī who is a Nabī only by way of reflection in the estimation of God due to the blessing of obedience [to the Holy Prophetsw].

My being ʿĪsā ibn Maryam is a matter that the ignorant people object to; namely: ‘According to ahādīth the ʿĪsā who was to come has been named ʿĪsā ibn Maryam, whereas this man is not Ibn Maryam as his mother’s name was not Maryam.’ Little do they realize that, as was the promise contained in Sūrah at-Tahrīm, I was first named Maryam, and then God’s grace breathed the Spirit into me; i.e. by His special manifestation created a new state from that Maryam-like state and named it ʿĪsā.

And since that state emanated from a Maryam-like state, God called me by the name of ʿĪsā ibn Maryam, and this is how I became ʿĪsā ibn Maryam. Hence, the Maryam referred to here is not Maryam, the mother of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him; rather, God named me Maryam in the previous Parts of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya on account of a spiritual resemblance that I had with Maryam, mother of ʿĪsā. And then He brought upon me another manifestation and compared it to the breathing of the Spirit. And then when that Spirit became manifest and reflected. He named me ʿĪsā by virtue of that Spirit. So, it is on this very account that I was named ʿĪsā ibn Maryam.

Here, this point also needs to be understood that whereas the Quranic verse:
referred to ‘Īṣā, may peace be upon him, the verse as it appears in the previous parts of Barahīn-e-Ahmadiyya was revealed in my favour. The reason is that just as the Jews believed, on the basis of their edicts of disbelief against Ḥaḍrat ʿĪṣā, that his soul was not raised towards God, the same belief is held by the opponents of (my) people with regard to me; i.e., they say this man is a disbeliever and his soul will not be raised towards God.

It is to refute them that Almighty God says to me, ‘I will raise your spirit toward Me after your death.’ And in the words إِنِّی متوفّیک [‘I will cause you to die’] is concealed another prophecy, and it is that توفّی [tawaffi] in the Arabic language means causing someone to die a death which is a natural death, and not through murder or crucifixion. This is just as ‘Allāmah Zamakhshāri in his Tafsīr Kashshāf with regard the same verse—[‘O Jesus, I will cause you to die’]—has given the following explanation: إِنّی ممیتك حتف انفك Meaning that, I will give you a natural death. Since God knew that the same attempt will be made to kill and crucify me as was made with regard to Ḥaḍrat ʿĪṣā, may peace be upon him, He—therefore—told me by way of prophecy the very same:

Meaning: ‘O Jesus, I will cause you to die.’ It had the hint that He would save me from being killed or crucified. It is obvious that many efforts were made to get me killed or crucified and the ulema of the [Muslim] nation issued edicts for my murder. A false case was also made against me to get me hanged, in which Dr. Martyn Clark was the plaintiff, and Maulawī Abū Ṣa‘īd Muḥammad Ḥusain Batālawī was among the witnesses.

1. O Jesus, I will cause you to die a natural death and will exalt you to Myself (Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
And the charge was that I had sent a man named ‘Abdul Majid\(^1\) to kill Dr. Martyn Clark. Accordingly, witnesses against me were duly processed, but God had already told me even before the case that such a case will be brought, and that He would save me. That revelation from God Almighty was conveyed to about sixty, seventy, or eighty people prior to the case. Hence, in keeping with His holy revelation, God caused me to be honourably acquitted from this false charge. Thus, all that endeavour was to get me hanged as was made by the Jews with regard to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him.

And what is strange is that Pilate, the Roman, (Governor of the territory where the Messiah was), had said to the Jews that he found no fault with that man—that is, ‘Īsā—for which he should put him on the cross. In the same way, the official who had my case in his court, whose name was Douglas and who was the Deputy Commissioner of our District, addressed me saying, ‘I make no charge of murder against you.’ Stranger still, just as a thief was crucified alongside Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, similarly, the day the case of murder against me was decided, a Christian thief from the Salvation Army, who had stolen some money, was also brought before the same court the same day.

In short, when Almighty God said:

\[
\text{بِيَتِي} \text{أَلِيْلَيْكَ وَمُتَوَفِّيْكَ اِنِّيْ يٰعِيْسٰۤى}
\]

with regard to me, this was a prophecy in which a hint was given that, as it happened in the case of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā [Jesus], some schemes would also be hatched to have me killed, and that the enemy will remain frustrated in these schemes.

The third matter which makes me dual is the issue of my nationality. As is apparently reported, I am a Mughal by ethnicity on the basis

---

1. This is a misprint. The actual name is ‘Abdul Hamīd. [Publisher]
2. O Jesus, I will cause you to die a natural death and will exalt you to Myself (Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:56). [Publisher]
of my paternity but some of my grandmothers were from among the Ṣādāt [progeny of the Holy Prophet 

But Almighty God declares me to be of Persian ethnicity on my paternal side, and a Fatimite on the maternal side, and only what He says is the truth. The fourth matter that makes me dual is that I was born a twin—with me there was a girl who was born before me.

Again, reverting to my earlier point, I say that it is totally false and amounts to deceiving oneself to suppose, from the word Nabī used with regard to the Promised Messiah in ḥādīth, that he indeed is Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him. For, while it is true that the ʿĪsā to come has been named Nabī [Prophet], it is accompanied by such a prerequisite that by virtue of that prerequisite it is impossible that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā [Jesus] the Israelite could be that Nabī, inasmuch as—notwithstanding that he is called Nabī—the same ḥādīth refer to this ʿĪsā as an ummatī too.

Anyone who reflects upon the significance of ummatī will clearly understand that it is heresy to declare Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā to be an ummatī, because an ummatī is one who is imperfect, misguided, and faithless, prior to following the Holy Prophet, peace and blessing of Allah be upon him, and prior to following the Holy Quran, and then, he acquires faith and perfection by following the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, and by following the Holy Quran. Clearly, it is kufr [disbelief] to entertain such a thought concerning Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā because, regardless of how much lesser he might be in status as compared to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, it cannot be said that he—God forbid—is misguided and faithless, or that he is imperfect, and that his divine cognition is incomplete unless he returns to this world and enters the Ummah of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him.

Thus, I say to my opponents with conviction that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā is not an ummatī at all. Although he—and indeed all the Prophets—believed in the truth of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, they were still followers of the teachings that were revealed to them. God had manifested Himself to them directly, and it was not
that, by following the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, or through his spiritual teaching, that they had become Prophets or that they were called *ummati*. God had bestowed upon them distinct Books, and they were instructed to follow those Books and teach others to do the same, and this is testified to by the Holy Quran. In view of this categorical testimony, how can Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā be regarded the Promised Messiah? Since he is not an *ummati*, he can also not be the kind of *Nabi* who has to be an *ummati*. Similarly, Almighty God manifested hundreds of Signs for me, a portion of which has also been recorded in this part of *Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya*.

**His Question**—What is the blessed age of your eminence at the moment? As for your tidings that your eminence gives that Islam will make great progress through your eminence, whether all that progress will happen within the lifetime of your eminence or what? I seek its elucidation.

**My Answer**—True estimation of the age is known, of course, to God, but as far as I know at this time, which is 1323 of the Hijrah, my age is close to seventy (70) years. وللّهم أعلم [And Allah knows best]. I cannot say whether the full progress of Islam will take place within my lifetime or after me. However, I reckon that the full measure of progress of faith never occurred within the lifetime of any Prophet. Rather, the task of the Prophets was that they were able to show somewhat of a sample of the progress, and then, after them, further progress came to fruition.

For instance, our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was sent to the entire world—for everyone—dark or fair-skinned—but within his lifetime, the fair-skinned; i.e. European nations, did not get any share of Islam—not a single person became a Muslim. And as for those who were dark-skinned, out of them Islam spread only within the Arabian Peninsula, and the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, died after the fall of Makkah.
Therefore, I reckon the same will happen in my case as well. I have been vouchsafed by God this Quranic revelation repeatedly:

1. And if We make you witness a part of what We promised them or cause you to die (Sūrah Yūnus, 10:47). [Publisher]

I expect, from this, that some part of the success will come about during my lifetime.

**His Question:** In the *abādīth* there is stern warning concerning the drawing of a picture of any living thing, but the photographs of your eminence that have been published suggest that you deem it lawful.

**My Answer**—I am vehemently opposed to anyone taking a photograph of me and keeping it with him like idolaters do, or publishing it. I have absolutely not given any such instruction that someone should do this. No one could be more opposed to idol-worship and image-worship than me. However, I have noticed that when the people of Europe want to read someone’s book, they desire to see a picture of its author first. This is because knowledge of physiognomy is quite developed in Europe, and most of them can tell just from looking at a picture whether the claimant is truthful or a liar.

Those people, on account of the distance of thousands of miles, cannot come to me nor can they look at my face. Therefore the sagacious of that land reflect upon my inner condition by looking at my picture. There are many who have written letters to me from Europe and America and in their letters they have written that they had looked at my picture carefully and on the basis of the art of face reading they were forced to admit that it was not the picture of a liar. One American woman, upon seeing my picture, said that it was the picture of Yasū’ [Jesus]; that is, ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him. It is for this purpose, and
to this extent, that I have purposely remained silent about the initia-

[And actions are judged by their intentions].

Also, I do not believe that prohibition of drawing of a portrait is

absolute. It is evident from the Holy Quran that the sect of Jinn used
to draw portraits for Haḍrat Sulaiman [Solomon]. The Israelites, for
a long time, possessed portraits of Prophets, including that of the
Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. Also,
Gabriel, may peace be upon him, showed the Holy Prophet, may peace
and blessings of Allah be upon him, a portrait of Haḍrat ʿĀʾishah on a
silk cloth. And the images of animals become naturally imprinted on
some stones under water. Moreover, the instrument that is now used
for taking photographs had not been invented in the time of the Holy
Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. It is a very
useful instrument by which some diseases can be diagnosed. Another
instrument has been introduced by which the image of all the bones of a
person is taken to help diagnose diseases such as rheumatism and gout,
and determine the nature of the illness. Similarly, many scientific bene-
fits have been realized by means of photographs. Some Europeans have
published the images of all the known living things, including many
kinds of insects, and all variety of birds and animals, etc. in their books
which has fostered knowledge. Is it then conceivable that God—who
encourages the acquisition of knowledge—would prohibit the use of
an instrument that helps to diagnose difficult diseases and which helps
sagacious people to attain guidance?

All these are senseless notions that have become widespread. Why
don't the maulawīs [religious clerics] of our country throw away from
their pockets and homes all the coins, rupees, two annas, four annas,
and eight annas that bear the image of the royal visage? Do not these
coins bear pictures on them? It is a pity that, by uttering unreasonable
things wantonly, they give the opponents an opportunity to laugh at
Islam. Islam has forbidden frivolous pursuits and such pursuits as fos-
ter idolatry; and not the pursuits that foster human knowledge, help
in diagnosing diseases, and draw sagacious people closer to guidance. Despite all this, however, I do not like it at all that people of my Jamā’at should, without an unavoidable desperate need, make it an occupation of publishing my photo routinely because this is how innovations slowly take root and culminate into idolatry.

I, therefore, admonish my Jamā’at here, too, to refrain from such deeds as far as is possible for them. I have seen cards of some people on the back of which I have noticed my picture in a corner. I am vehemently against such publication. I do not want anyone in my Jamā’at to be guilty of such an act. It is one thing to do something for a legitimate and useful cause, and quite another to be like the Hindus who hang the pictures of their elders on the walls everywhere. It has always been observed that such frivolous deeds end up in idolatry and grave errors, like those which found their way among the Hindus and the Christians.

And I expect that anyone who views my admonitions with honour and deference and is my true follower will henceforth abstain from such acts; otherwise, he will be deemed to conduct himself against my instructions and interfere in the Shariah with insolence.

Some people who neither have any knowledge of faith nor of my circumstances have also published, merely out of narrow-mindedness and lack of appreciation, such allegations against me that only go to prove, if anything, that, in contrast to the efforts they put forth to acquire for this world and to achieve worldly offices and ranks, they do not have even a thousandth of that focus on faith. Hearing their objections, one is wonderstruck as to how ignorant these people are of Islam despite being called Muslims!

Well! Let us consider the nature of their objections. For example, they say that this is a ruse for collecting money and his helpers are on the payroll. Now, let anyone who has some fear of God in his heart consider whether this is not the same evil suspicion that people who are blind at heart have always entertained against the past Prophets, peace be upon them. Pharaoh also thought ill of Mūsā and, addressing his own people, said that ‘The real objective of this man is to dispossess
you of your land and occupy it for himself.’ Similarly, the Jews formed the same opinion concerning Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā that he was a conniving person and, under the pretext of Prophethood, wanted to rule over them.

The disbelievers of Quraish had the same misgiving with regard to our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, as the Holy Quran records their saying:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{۱۱۱} & \quad \text{اَتُّرَادُ لَشَيْءٌ هٰذَا اِنَّ} \\
\text{۱۱۲} & \quad \text{يُّرَادُ لَشَيْءٌ هٰذَا اِنَّ} \\
\text{۱۱۳} & \quad \text{اَتُّرَادُ لَشَيْءٌ هٰذَا اِنَّ} \\
\text{۱۱۴} & \quad \text{اَتُّرَادُ لَشَيْءٌ هٰذَا اِنَّ} \\
\end{align*}
\]

Meaning: ‘There has to be some ulterior motive in this claim.’ So why should I feel disappointed by these objectors! They are displaying the trait of the deniers of the past. A seeker after truth should be in the habit of examining the claim critically and reflecting on the arguments impartially, and speaking only that which is sanctioned by reason, fear of God, and justice; rather, than proclaiming—before any scrutiny—that it is all a ruse to accumulate wealth.

Another objection they have is that prophecies were not fulfilled. In answer to this objection, it is sufficient to say [‘May the curse of God be upon the liars’]. Had they read my books carefully or queried the learned and knowledgeable of my Jamā’at, they would have known that thousands of prophecies have been fulfilled to date, and the witnesses to their fulfilment are not one or two, but in their thousands. What is the benefit of uncalled for denial? Will it make the return of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā any more plausible?

One ought to—once and for all—give up the notion of the second coming of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. Let every opponent know for sure that he will reach the time of the agony of death at his appointed time and will die, but he will not see Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā descending from the heavens. This is also my prophecy which every opponent will testify to at the time of his death. Every maulawi and mullah and everyone who bears enmity towards me and writes against me, should know that they will

1. Ṣūrah Ṣadd, 38:7 [Publisher]
die disappointed so far as they hope to see Ḥaḍrat ʿİsā coming down from the heavens.

They will not see him descend at all while they will get sick and reach the stage of death rattles and will leave the world in great bitterness. Is this not a prophecy? Can they say that it will not be fulfilled? It will surely be fulfilled! And then if they have children, they too should remember that they will also die similarly frustrated and no one will descend from heaven! And then if their children have children, they too will share in their frustration and none of them will see Ḥaḍrat ʿİsā [Jesus] descending from heaven!

And some ignorant people say that the prophecy with regard to Ahmad Baig’s son-in-law was not fulfilled. They do not understand that this prophecy—like the one regarding ʿAbdullāh Ātham—was conditional. In this prophecy, Almighty God’s revelation, addressing the maternal grandmother of his betrothed was:

توبی توبی فانّ البلء علـٰی عقبك

Meaning: ‘O woman, repent! Repent, for a calamity is to befall the daughter of your daughter!’ So when Ahmad Baig died within the appointed time frame—in keeping with the prophecy of which this prophecy is one limb—fear developed in the hearts of all concerned as is the wont of human nature, and being fearful they humbled themselves. Therefore, God delayed the fulfilment of this prophecy.

And this, indeed, was a conditional prophecy, just as the prophecy regarding the death of ʿAbdullāh Ātham—who died nearly 11 years ago—was also a conditional prophecy. But the prophecy that Prophet Yūnūs [Jonah] had made with regard to the destruction of his people, had no conditions attached to it, and yet that nation was saved on account of their repentance and their asking for forgiveness. I have said it again and again that prophecies of warning can be delayed or even averted by repentance and asking for forgiveness, just as the promise of destruction concerning Yūnūs’s people was averted simply due to
their repentance. Alas! How blind the people of this age are that the reply is given to them in accordance with the Book of God—again and again—yet they fail to understand!

Was Prophet Yūnus not a true Prophet in their estimation—whose prophecy was without any condition and was a categorical prophecy that his people would be destroyed by a calamity within forty days, and yet that nation was not destroyed? In the case of the prophecies under discussion, however, the objection does not even arise as it would with regard to Yūnus’s prophecy. Here the prophecies about the death of ‘Abdullāh Ātham, Ahmad Baig, and his son-in-law were conditional. It is surprising that, of the four prophecies, three have already been fulfilled. And ‘Abdullāh Ātham, Ahmad Baig, and Lekh Rām are long dead in keeping with the prophecies, but these people still do not desist from raising objections.

And they also object as to why an effort was made for the hand of Ahmad Baig’s daughter in marriage by offering inducements of different kinds. They do not understand that the effort was only with the intent that the divine decree be thereby put off and the calamity be averted. The same effort was made with regard to ‘Abdullāh Ātham and Lekh Rām. How do they know that it is forbidden to make any legitimate effort for the fulfilment of any prophecy?

Just ponder over it carefully and honestly whether it was not promised to the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, in the Holy Quran that idolatry of Arabia would be wiped out and Islam would be established in place of idolatry, and a day would come when the keys of the Ka‘bah would be in the hands of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. He would give them to whoever he chose. And that God would do all this Himself. And yet efforts were made for the spread of Islam that need not be detailed here. In fact, there is an authentic hadith that if someone sees a dream and that dream can be fulfilled by his effort, he should fulfil that dream by his own effort.
Reply to the Doubts

raised by

ʿAl-Khiṭābul-Maliḥ fī Taḥqīqil-Mahdī wal-Masīḥ’—
A Collection of Maulawī Rashīd Ahmad Gangohi’s Absurdities

In this book, the author has tried desperately to disprove my claim. And, to lend weight to his viewpoint, he has used much that is contrary to the facts. This book is utterly untenable, baseless, and full of absurd notions and fabrications. I know that there is no need to refute it at all, and anyone who has basic knowledge of the Holy Quran and Hadith does not require a refutation to be written; however, since I have heard that Maulawī Rashīd’s followers in the vicinity of Saharanpur hold this book in great esteem and read it with much reverence—considering it to be a memorable relic of his lifetime—I thought it appropriate that, in order to save such people from being misled, answers be given to some of the more significant objections that have caused the ignorant and unlearned people of that area to fall into a pit of misguidance and take pride in this book, which is a compilation of falsehoods.

In order to open up a straight path for seekers after truth, I deem it appropriate to describe briefly the real issue that is the basis of dispute. It is that my opponents, Maulawī Rashīd Aḥmad included among them, hold the belief that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā [Jesus], may peace be upon him, has not
died and that he has gone to heaven with his earthly body for some purpose, and that he will return to the world at some time before the Day of Resurrection. They do not, however, explain the purpose for which he was raised to heaven. Was it merely to save him from the hands of the Jews, or was there something else? And they cannot explain why, now that nearly 2,000 years have passed, he is still in heaven. Is there still some fear in his heart of retribution by the Jews? They also cannot explain why he was given the distinction, withheld from all other Prophets, of being in heaven for such a long period of time—now approaching 2,000 years—and descending to earth at some point in time in accordance with the prophecy of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. Moreover, they cannot explain the wisdom that God had in a physical ascension and subsequent descent. Was it the fear of the Jews apprehending him or something else? And they cannot explain why the distinction of this ascension and descent was granted to a person who God knew would be deified, and that 400 million people would believe him to be the son of God—rather, God—merely because this miracle is ascribed to him.

Although these people assert forcefully that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā has not died—rather, he is alive—they still cannot explain on the basis of which explicit and decisive pronouncement of the Holy Quran his continued existence, in contravention to the practice of God, stands proven. On the other hand, the belief on which God has established me, on the basis of enlightened conviction, is that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, has died like other human beings after living a natural lifetime for a human. As for his ascension to heaven with his earthly body and then

1. It has been written by interpreters of dreams that if someone sees in a dream that he has gone to heaven with his physical body, it will be interpreted that he will die a natural death, i.e. will remain safe from the designs of his enemies to kill him. It would not be surprising that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā might have seen such a dream too, and ignorant people, not considering the interpretation of the dream, should have taken it for his actual ascent to heaven in his earthly body. (Author)
returning to the earth with his earthly body at some later age, these are all calumnies against him. **Allah the Lord of Honour and Glory says:**

Thus, the real issue that needs to be settled and decided is whether it is true that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, did indeed ascend to heaven with his earthly body, in contravention of divine practice. If it can be proven from the clear and explicit statements of the Holy Quran that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, was in fact raised with his earthly body to heaven, then there would be no need to dispute his physical return, because, in keeping with Quranic authority, if one were to go to heaven with an earthly body, he would necessarily have to return.

So if Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā has gone to heaven bodily, there is no doubt as to his return. The reason is that, even if he was not required to return to earth for any other purpose, he would still need to come back to die, as there is no place in heaven for graves. And it is established from the clear and explicit statement of Holy Quran that every human being shall die only on earth, be buried only in the earth, and be resurrected from the earth, as God says:

Granted, it is possible that he is ill when he descends from heaven, or becomes ill on the way, and then dies upon reaching the earth. I say this because it is established from *abādīth* [pl. hadith] that the ‘Īsā to come

---

1. Say, ‘Holy is my Lord! I am not but a man sent as a Messenger.’ (*Sūrah Banī Isrāʾīl*, 17:94) [Publisher]

2. From it have We created you, and into it shall We cause you to return, and from it shall We bring you forth once more (*Sūrah Tā Ḥā*, 20:56). [Publisher]
will descend clad in two saffron-coloured sheets, and all interpreters of dreams agree that a saffron-coloured sheet denotes illness.

I have declared many times that I have been ordained by God as the Promised Messiah. These two characteristics are also mentioned among my physical characteristics as recorded in *ahādith*. Just as a saffron-coloured sheet denotes an illness, and as two saffron-coloured sheets have been mentioned in *ahādith* with regard to the Promised Messiah, so do I suffer from two illnesses. One illness is in the upper part of my body—and this is the ‘upper sheet’—which is the vertigo from which I suffer; sometimes, I fall to the ground due to its severity and the flow of blood to my heart is reduced, creating a frightening situation. The second illness is in the lower part of the body, and that is polyuria, which is also known as diabetes. I have to pass urine frequently on a daily basis; at times it reaches up to 15 or 20 times, but on occasion it can be a hundred times during the span of a full day and night, and this, too, causes much weakness. So these are the two saffron-coloured sheets that have become my lot. Even those who do not accept me must admit that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā will bring with him this ‘gift’ from heaven at the time of his descent; i.e. he will suffer from two illnesses, one shall be in the upper part of his body, and the other in the lower part of his body.

Now, if someone were to say that these ‘sheets’ signify real sheets, then it would mean that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, at the time of his advent, will be clad in two saffron-coloured sheets in the manner of Hindu yogis. But these meanings go against the interpretation that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, has made concerning his visions. For example, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, had seen [in a dream] two bangles on his hands, and he interpreted them to mean two false prophets; and he had seen cows being slaughtered, and interpreted it to mean the martyrdom of his Companions, may Allah be pleased with them. He had seen a large cloak for Ḥaḍrat ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, and interpreted it to signify his *taqwā* [righteousness]. So
why, in the case of this hadith, should we not interpret the two saffron sheets in the way it has been done—in accordance with the tradition of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—unanimously by all the eminent interpreters of dreams in Islam? There is not a single one opposed to this interpretation. And the interpretation is that the two saffron sheets symbolize two illnesses. I can swear by God that this is also my own experience. Countless times I have seen a saffron sheet on the body of a person in a dream—either with reference to myself or someone else—and it has always materialized as an illness. Thus, it is outrageous that just as the word 

mutawaffika—‘will cause you to die’] is interpreted differently when it pertains to Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā—in contravention of its universal meaning—so should the two saffron sheets be interpreted in contravention of the meaning given by the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, his Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, the Tabi‘in [the generation after the Companions], the Taba‘ Tabi‘in [the generation of the Tabi‘in], and the Imams of Ahl-e-Bait [those who belong to the household of the Holy Prophet sas].

In short, the critically important discussion at this juncture is whether or not Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, actually died, because, if it is established that he has gone to heaven with his earthly body, then, as I have just mentioned, it is necessary for him to return to the earth in any event—whether to join the Mahdi or merely to die. This is the essential contention which, once settled, will resolve the entire dispute, and the party that possesses strong arguments in favour of the life or death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, is truthful. Once this disagreement is resolved, all peripheral discussions become unnecessary; rather, all the miscellaneous objections of the vanquished party become automatically rejected. Hence, this is the vital issue that a seeker of truth needs to ponder with full attention.

The unfortunate matter here is that despite the fact that the Holy Quran has spoken of the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, in clear words; the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be
upon him, has clearly stated that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, is included among the souls that have departed from this world; and the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, have agreed to this verdict with open and manifest consensus that all Prophets have died,\footnote{1 \textit{The Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, were very grief-stricken due to the demise of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. Because of this state of grief, when Ḥaḍrat ʿUmar ra heard the words of some of the hypocrites, he said that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, would return to the world and cut off the ears and noses of the hypocrites. Since this was an incorrect notion, Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr Ṣiddiqah ra first went to the house of Ḥaḍrat ʿAʼishah ra, lifted the sheet from the face of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, kissed his blessed forehead, and said: \textit{أَنْتَ طَیِّبٌ حَیًّا ومَیِّتًا لَنْ یَّجْمَعَ اللُّٰ عَلَیْكَ الْمَوْتَیْنِ اِلَّ مَوْتَتَكَ الُْوْلـٰی}. Meaning that: 'You are holy, in your life and in your death. God will never subject you to two deaths. For you is only the first death.' This was meant only to convey that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, would not return to this world. He then gathered all the Companions ra in the Prophet’s Mosque—incidentally, on that day all the living Companions ra were present in Madīnah—and after gathering them, Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him, climbed the pulpit and read the verse: 

\begin{align*} 
\text{اَعْقَابِكُمْ عَلٰۤى انْقَلَبْتُمْ قُتِلَ اَوْ مَّاتَ اَفَاۡىِٕنْ ١ؕالرُّسُلُ قَبْلِهِ مِنْ خَلَتْ قَدْ ١ۚرَسُوْلٌ اِلَّا مُحَمَّدٌ مَا وَ} 
\end{align*} 

Meaning that: ‘The Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is but a Prophet, and all Prophets before him have passed away. So if the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, too were to pass away or were killed, would you abandon the faith?’ [Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:145] This was the first ever \textit{ijmā’} [consensus] that took place among the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, and it proves that all Prophets, including Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, had passed away. To hold that the meaning of the word خَلَت [khalat] includes being raised to heaven alive is sheer obduracy, because looking at all the Arabic lexicons nowhere do we find that the word خَلَت [khalat] can also be used for going to heaven while still living. Moreover, God Himself set forth the meaning of خَلَت [khalat] in the second sentence because He says [if he passes away or is killed], thus confining the meaning of خَلَت [khalat] to two possibilities, that of dying a natural death or that of being killed. Otherwise, the explanation should have been: 

\begin{align*} 
\text{اَفَأَنَّ مَاتَ اوُقْتَ اوُرَفْ اَلِی الْشَّمَاءَ مَعِ جَسَّمِهِ الْمَنْصِرِی.} 
\end{align*} 
[If he were to die, or be killed, or raised bodily to heaven.]}
our opponents still persist in contending repeatedly that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, is alive.

Despite this, our opponents set aside the Holy Quran, they set aside the Hadith, they set aside the *ijmāʿ* [consensus] of the Companions, and hold fast to the errors of their forefathers. They do not possess an iota of evidence that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is alive and will return to the world in the Latter Days. Their opposition is being fuelled by the jealousy that is ever born in the hearts of arrogant people under the prevailing contemporary influence. And even if, contrary to my arguments, they did possess some arguments from the Holy Quran or Hadith pertaining to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā still being alive, even then righteousness should have demanded that they should exercise some shame and modesty in the face of a person who has appeared at the time of need, right at the head of the century, and is accompanied by powerful signs in favour of his claim. After all, Almighty God has not named them Ḥakam [Arbiter], so as enable them to give credence to their own thoughts over the words of the Promised Messiah. Rather, He has named the Promised Messiah as Ḥakam. Thus it was a demand of righteousness that even if they did possess some presumptive arguments, they should have given them up in the face of a person who has presented definitive arguments based on the Shariah and shows Heavenly Signs. Unfortunately, these people walk in the footsteps of the Jews and support only falsehood.

It would have been contrary to eloquence to mention just two of the meanings that apply to *خَلَّت* [khalat] and omit the third meaning, which is the one opponents allege it signifies. Moreover, the true purport of Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr, may Allah be pleased with him, in reciting this verse was that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, would not return to this world a second time, as he had also made clear when kissing the forehead of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. Thus, our opponent must admit that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā cannot return to this world in any case even if it were supposed that he is still alive. Or else the purpose of the argument would be defeated. This *ijmāʿ* among the Companions is something that cannot be denied. (Author)
I have been sent by Almighty God as Ḥakām yet they desire to be arbiters over me.

Now I will turn my attention to the fact that Ḥaḍrat ʿIsā, may peace be upon him, has indeed died and that the belief that he is still alive is contrary to the Holy Quran and authentic aḥādīth.

Keep in mind that the Holy Quran proclaims loud and clear that Ḥaḍrat ʿIsā has indeed died a natural death. At one place Allah the Almighty, by way of promise, says:

1

In another verse, He speaks of the fulfilment of this promise, as He says:

The first verse means, ‘O ʿIsā! I will cause you to die a natural death, meaning you will not die by being killed or crucified, and I shall raise you towards Myself.’ Thus, this verse was by way of a promise.

And the second verse quoted above points to the fulfilment of this promise; its translation and commentary is as follows. The Jews

1. Sūrah al-ʾImrān, 3:56. [Publisher]
2. Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158–159. [Publisher]
3. Keep in mind, the word توْفّی [tawaffī] in the Arabic language does not just mean causing someone to die, but means causing someone to die a natural death, which is not through murder or crucifixion or other external causes. This is why the author of Kashshāf, who was the pre-eminent scholar of the Arabic language, has explained the words اِنْ مُتَوَفِّیْكَ [innī mutawaffīka] in his commentary as اِنْ مُمِیْتُكَ حَتْفَ اَنْفِك meaning that, ‘I will grant you a natural death.’ And it is on this basis that it is written in Lisānul-Arab and Ẓājal-ʿArūs: تَوْفَّی الْمَتّ اِسْتِفْتَاسَ اَنْتُهُ الَّتِي وَمِتَ حَتْفَ اَنْفِك meaning that, [tawaffī] of a deceased person means that all the days, months, and years of his natural life are completed.’ And this can only happen if the death is natural and not through murder. (Author)
themselves do not believe with certainty that they have killed ‘Īsā; and where killing is not confirmed, natural death is established, which is inevitable for every human being. In this case, the matter that the Jews considered as barrier to Jesus’s [exaltation to Allah]—his murder and crucifixion—stands refuted, and God, in keeping with His promise, exalted him towards Himself.

Here it is futile to insist that the meaning of تَوَفَّى [tawaffi] is not ‘to cause to die’, since all the scholars of the Arabic lexicon are agreed that when the word تَوَفَّى [tawaffi] is used for a proper noun—i.e. it is used with reference to someone after identifying him—for instance if it is said that تَوَفَّى الله رَزِيدًا, it can mean only that ‘God caused Zaid to die.’

This is why in such instances linguists provide no meaning other than ‘to cause to die’. And so, in keeping with my argument, it is written in Lisānul-'Arab: تَوَفَّى فلن تَوَفَّاہُ اللُّٰإذا قبض نفسہ وفی الصّحاھ إذا قبض روحہ۔ Meaning that when it is said that تَوَفَّى، or تَوَفَّى اللُّٰ, it will mean only that so and so died and that God caused him to die.

In this context, it is written in Tājal-‘Arūs: تَوَفَّی فُلنٌ اِذَا مَات meaning: تَوَفَّی فُلنٌ اِذَا مَاتُ تَوَفَّی فُلنٌ اِذَا مَاتُ, i.e. The expression تَوَفَّی فُلنٌ اِذَا مَاتُ is said in regard to a person when he dies.

Another statement written in Tājal-‘Arūs is تَوَفَّی عَزَّ وَجَلَّ: اِذَا قَبَضَ نَفْسَہ تَوَفَّی فُلنٌ اِذَا مَاتُ, i.e. The expression تَوَفَّی عَزَّ وَجَلَّ is spoken at the time when God takes  

1. ✡ In Sahih Bukhārī, which is known as the most authentic book after the Book of God, the meaning of تَوَفَّی [tawaffi] is given as ‘causing to die’ too, because a tradition has been attributed to Ḥaḍrat Ibne-‘Abbās regarding the verse مُتَوَفِّیْكَ اِنِّیْ يٰعِیْسٰۤى [Surah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:56] wherein he says [that this verse means]: اِنّی مُمِیْتُك۔ [‘I will cause you to die’]. Imām Bukhārī has expressed this same belief, for he has brought forth another hadith in its support, the gist of which is that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, said, ‘Just as ‘Īsā will say on the Day of Judgment that the people of his ummah who went astray did so after he had died, so shall I say that the people of my Ummah who went astray did so after my death.’ Hence, when God is the fā’il [doer of the action] of tawaffi and a person is its maf’ūl bihi [object of the verb], it necessarily means ‘causing to die’, and there is no denying this. (Author)
possession of someone’s soul. It is written in the [lexicon] Șibāḥ: تَوَفَّاہُ اللُّٰ قَبَضَ رُوْحَہ, i.e. The term [tawaffāhullāhu] means that God has taken possession of someone’s soul.

Furthermore, I have scrutinized Șibāḥ Sittah [the Six Authentic Books of Hadith] and other abādith as far as possible, and I have not found any instance among the words of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, of the Companions ra, the Tābi‘īn, or the Taba‘ Tābi‘īn, which shows that the verb تَوَفِّي [tawaffi]—when used with reference to a specific individual, where God is the fā‘il [subject] and that person is the maf‘ūl bihi [object]—has any meaning other than death. Rather, on every occasion when a specific person has been named and the word تَوَفِّي [tawaffi] has been used with regard to him, and while God is the fā‘il and that person is the maf‘ūl bihi, it means only that the person has died. I found over 300 such instances in abādith which show that wherever God is the fā‘il [doer] of the verb تَوَفِّي [tawaffi] and is used for the person whose name has been specified as the maf‘ūl bihi, it meant ‘to cause to die’, and nothing else. But despite all my research, I did not come across even one hadith where the word تَوَفِّي [tawaffi], where God is the fā‘il and a proper noun is the maf‘ūl bihi—that is, an individual has been specified by name as the maf‘ūl bihi—meant anything other than ‘being caused to die’.

Similarly, when I reviewed the Holy Quran from beginning to end, it also proved the same, as is evident from these and other verses:

1 بِالصّٰلِحِيْنَ اَلْحِقْنِيْ وَّ مُسْلِمًا تَوَفَّنِيْ

and the verse:

1. Let death come to me in a state of submission to Your will and join me to the righteous (Sūrah Yūsuf, 12:102). [Publisher]
And then, for this sole purpose, I also read collections of Arabic poetry and reviewed the verses written prior to and after the advent of Islam with great attention, and spent a great deal of time reading them, but I did not find even one instance among them wherein God is the *fāʿil* of the verb *توفَّى* [	extit{tawaffi}], which is used for a proper noun as the *mafʿūl* bihi—that is, some individual has been made the object by specifying him—and it has any other meaning besides ‘causing to die’.

I then queried many Arab scholars and experts as well, and verbally learned from them, too, that the idiom prevalent in the Arab world to this very day is that when a person says with regard to another person, *توفَّى الله فلنا* it is taken to mean categorically and definitively that God caused that person to die. And when an Arab receives a letter from another Arab wherein it is written, for instance, *توفَّى الله زيدًا* it is understood from this that ‘God has caused Zaid to die.’

After all this research, which has reached the level of true certainty, it is confirmed—and attained the level of an established and incontrovertible fact—that when the word *توفَّى* [	extit{tawaffi}] is used in this way with regard to an individual, it means that he has died and nothing else. And since the word *توفَّى* [	extit{tawaffi}] has been used in this fashion twice in the Holy Quran with reference to Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, it is therefore established categorically and to the degree of certainty that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, has indeed died, and his *rafʿa* is no more than a spiritual exaltation, and that his death did not occur through murder or crucifixion, as God Himself has said, but rather he died of his own natural death.

It is also established on the basis of 	extit{Lisānul-ʿArab} and other lexicons that the true meaning of the word *توفَّى* [	extit{tawaffi}] is ‘to cause someone to die.

1. And if We make you witness a part of what We promised them or cause you to die (Sūrah Yūnus, 10:47). [Publisher]
die a natural death. I have already said that a peerless Imam of the Arabic language, against whom no one has room for argument, namely ‘Allamah Zamakhshari, similarly interprets the verse \( \text{mutawaffika} \) as ‘I will cause you to die a natural death’.

The word ‘death’ in the Arabic lexicon while the word ‘nose’, and it has been a long-standing belief among the Arabs that a person’s soul leaves through the nose. This is why they termed natural death as ‘will cause you to die a natural death’. In the Arabic language, the proper use of the word [\( \text{tawaffi} \)] is to connote natural death, whereas when someone dies by being killed, the word [\( \text{qatl} \)] is employed. This usage is not hidden from anyone who knows Arabic.

Of course, it is a common rule among Arabs that a word that is meant for a specific occasion in its original form, is applied in a different sense after establishing the context—that is, its application is widened. But when such a different context does not exist, then it is necessary that the word should be used in its original sense. Hence when ‘Allamah Zamakhshari, with reference to the verse [\( \text{mutawaffika} \)], writes i.e. ‘O ‘Isa, I will cause you to die a natural death,’ the ‘Allamah has not merely considered the original use of the word [\( \text{tawaffi} \)]; rather, by considering the verse [\( \text{qatl} \)], he determined that the context required that the word [\( \text{mutawaffika} \)—‘will cause you to die a natural death’] must necessarily be used in its original meaning. That is, in this context it

1. Let it be clear that I have named Zamakhshari as ‘Allamah and Imam only on account of his command over the linguistic art. There is no doubt that this person had great mastery over Arabic dialects, including their usage, content, literary and non-literary usage, eloquent and colloquial expressions, and the differences between synonyms. Also, he was well-versed in their characteristics, structures, old and new words, rule of syntax, and eloquence. He was the Imam and ‘Allamah of the time in all the above, and not in anything else. (Author)

2. Scribe’s error. The word [\( \text{mutawaffika} \) should be [\( \text{mutawaffika} \)]. [Publisher]

3. \text{Sūrah an-Nisā‘}, 4:158. [Publisher]
means, ‘O ‘Īsā, I will cause you to die your natural death.’ And this is why he interpreted the verse [인니 무타워फيكا] to mean [‘I will cause you to die of your natural death’].

Thus, ‘Allāmah Zamakhsharī’s deep insight is truly laudable in that he did not confine himself to the use of the word [توфик] in its original context, but also kept in view those verses of the Holy Quran which say that ‘Īsā was neither killed nor crucified, and then interpreted [متوافيفكا—will cause you to die a natural death] in keeping with the original meaning of the word. None but a true master of the art of language could have interpreted it in such a way. Keep in mind that ‘Allāmah Zamakhsharī is the recognized master of the Arabic language, and that all those who came after him bow their heads before him. Lexicologists present his opinion as authority. For instance, the author of Tāj al-‘Arūs frequently presents the authority of his quotes.

Readers can now understand that the verse [ياقين قتلووه ما] and the verse [صلبووه ما و قتلووه ما و] have been set out only to explain the word [توفك], and have no new purpose. This verse was meant only to elucidate that, just as it was promised in the word [متوافيفكا] that ‘Īsā would die his natural death, so did he die naturally, and that he was neither killed nor crucified. Thus the notion that had arisen in the minds of the Jews that ‘Īsā is—God forbid—accursed and, therefore, did not have a spiritual exaltation is falsified simultaneously. This is because the very basis of this notion was his murder and crucifixion, and from that

1. ★ According to the Jewish belief, the spiritual exaltation of any Prophet depends on him dying a natural death, and being killed or crucified precludes spiritual exaltation. That is why God first said, to refute the Jews, that ‘Īsā would have a natural death. Then, since spiritual exaltation is a result of natural death, He used the words [رافعك إلى رافعك] [will exalt you to Myself] after the term [متوافيفكا—will cause you to die a natural death], so that the notions of the Jews were refuted comprehensively. (Author)

2. Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158 [Publisher]
3. Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:158 [Publisher]
it was concluded that—God forbid—‘Īsā was accursed and estranged from the divine court and was not raised towards God Almighty.

Through the word موت‌یکَ [mutawaffika], God testified that ‘Īsā died a natural death, but He did not stop there. He then explained the true meaning of the word موت‌یکَ [mutawaffika]—i.e. to die a natural death—through the verse [they neither killed nor crucified him] and the verse ['and they were not certain that they had killed him']. For, when someone has died without any external causes such as murder etc., it will be understood concerning him that he has died a natural death. Thus, there is no doubt that the statement وَمَا قَتَلُوْہُ وَمَا صَلَبُوْہُ ['and they neither killed nor crucified him'] has come as explanation for the word موت‌یکَ ['will cause you to die a natural death']. And once absence of killing and crucifixion has been proven, then, in accordance with the maxim, ‘When the premise is falsified, the conclusion is also falsified’, it stands proven that the exaltation of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was spiritual; and that is what we had set out to prove.

I will now return to the earlier discussion. It is an established fact that wherever the word توفّی [tawaffi] is used in a statement, wherein God is the فِیل [subject] and some person specified by name is the ماف’ل بی [object], such a sentence always means that God has caused that person to die or will cause him to die. It can have no other meaning at all. A long time has elapsed since I published an announcement regarding this established fact and challenged that if anyone produced, contrary to the above, any statement from احادیث or from authentic collections of Arabic poetry where the word توفّی [tawaffi] is used, and where God is the subject and a proper noun is the object—i.e. someone who has been identified by name is the object—and yet it does not mean ‘causing to die’, I shall give a reward of this much amount to such a person. No one has answered this challenge to this day.

Now, in order to bring home this argument, I once again publicly offer 200 rupees that if any of my opponents does not consider this statement of mine to be convincing and conclusive, he should produce
just one sentence from authentic *ahadith* of the Prophet, or from the works of ancient Arab poets—who are considered an authority and who are Arabic-speaking and who are established masters in their art—in which the wordِ [*tawaffi*] is used where the subject is God and the object is a proper noun like Zaid or Bakr or Khalid, and yet the sentence clearly means something else and does not mean ‘causing to die.

**In that case, I will award such a one with 200 rupees in cash.** Such a person will only have to prove that the hadith he presents is indeed an authentic hadith of the Holy Prophet ﷺ, or that it is the statement of a poet from the ancient Arab poets whose mastery over the science of Arabic idioms is established.

It will be necessary to provide evidence that the hadith or the couplet does in fact conclusively bear meaning that is in conflict with my assertion; and that the meaning becomes perverted if the definition that I deduce is applied. In other words, that hadith or that couplet should irrefutably signify the other meaning. For, if that hadith or couplet allows the possibility of the meaning that I render, then such a hadith or couplet is not worth presenting at all, since for it to be presented as precedence, it is essential that the contrary meaning should be irrefutable. The reason being that when it has been proven from hundreds of irrefutable examples that the wordِ [*tawaffi*]—in the setting wherein God is its subject, and a proper noun, i.e. a human being specified by name, is its object—cannot have any meaning other than ‘causing that person to die a natural death’, the onus is upon the one who makes a claim contrary to such numerous and consistent examples to produce a clear example that is irrefutable.

---

1. But if you do *it* not—and never shall you do *it*—then guard against the Fire, whose fuel is men and stones (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:25). [Publisher]
The second firm and conclusive argument for the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, is God’s word [‘but Allah exalted him to Himself’] for it is evident from reviewing the Holy Quran and aḥādīth that [exaltation to God]—which is obviously indicated in the verse [‘He exalted him to Himself’]—is not used with respect to any context other than the context of death, as God says in the Holy Quran:

بَلْ رَّفَعَهُ الله اِلَیْہِ۔

['but Allah exalted him to Himself']

Meaning, ‘O soul at peace that is comforted by God, come back to your God while God is pleased with you and you are pleased with God. And enter among My servants, and enter into My Paradise.’

Obviously, no one from among the Muslims takes these words of Allah, the Lord of Glory, to mean that one should go and sit in Heaven alive with their earthly body. Rather, the verse [‘return to your Lord’] is taken only to mean death. Thus, when ‘returning to God’, on the basis of decisive Quranic dictum, means death, then why does not ‘raising to God’, which is evident from the verse [‘but Allah exalted him to Himself’], also mean death?

1. Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:28–31 [Publisher]

2. Likewise, there are many other verses of the Holy Quran that clearly show that the words [raf ‘un ilallah—exaltation to God] and [rūjū‘un ilallah—return to Allah] are always used to connote death. As Allah the Almighty says in the Holy Quran:

قُلْ الَّذِيِّ الْمَوْتِ مَّلَكُ يَتَوَفّٰىكُمْ تُرْجَعُوْنَ رَبِّكُمْ اِلٰى ثُمَّ بِكُمْ وُكِّلَ الَّذِيْ الْمَوْتِ مَّلَكُ يَتَوَفّٰىكُمْ قُلْ

Meaning that: ‘The angel that guards over you will cause you to die, and then you will be returned to your Lord.’

And as He says at another occasion in the Holy Quran:

تُرْجَعُوْنَ اِلَيْنَا ثُمَّ ١۫الْمَوْتِ ذَآىِٕقَةُ نَفْسٍ كُلُّ

Meaning that: ‘Every soul shall taste death, and then you shall be returned to
It is simply contrary to justice, reason, and righteousness that the meaning which is established and validated by decisive pronouncements of the Quran is discarded, while a meaning and usage is adopted for which one has no argument at all. Can anyone explain if the words رفع إلى الله [raf‘un ilallah] have any meaning in the Arabic language and Arabic diction other than ‘to be caused to die’? Of course, the reference is to such a death after which the soul is raised towards God Almighty, as is the death of the believers. The same is the usage found in the earlier divine scriptures.

And when God says in the above verse 1—when read with the first sentence, means, ‘return to God and then enter among the servants of God’—it proves that no one can enter among the past souls unless he first dies. So when, on the basis of decisive dictum of the Holy Quran, it is prohibited and impossible for one to enter among past souls without first dying, then how did Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā as go and sit beside Ḥaḍrat Yaḥyā as in the Second Heaven without first dying?

Here, keep in mind another point as well: In the above verse God Almighty has also said, 2 which, when this sentence is read with the entire verse, means, ‘O soul at rest, come back to your God, Us.’

And as God says, ﴿وَادْخُلِيْ جَنَّتِي﴾ [Sūrah Maryam, 19:58] i.e. ‘We raised him—meaning this Prophet—to a lofty place.’

The explanation of this verse is that there are various high stations for people who are raised towards God after death, and so, God says that after raising this Prophet, i.e. causing him to die, God gave him a high station there. Nawwab Siddique Hasan Khan in his Tafsīr Fathul-Bayān says that رفع [raised] here means the spiritual exaltation that takes place after death. Otherwise, it creates the requirement that the Prophet should return to earth to die. Alas, they forget these meanings when it comes to the verse ﴿اِنِّیْ مُتَوَفِّیْكَ وَرَافِعُكَ اِلَی﴾ even though the word مُتَوَفِّیْكَ precedes the word رافعك. If just the word رافعك can be taken to mean death, then why do مُتَوَفِّیْكَ not mean death? (Author)

1. Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:30 [Publisher]
2. Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:31. [Publisher]
you being pleased with Him and He being pleased with you, and enter among My servants and enter My Paradise.' It is proven from what the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, witnessed on the night of the Mi’rāj [Spiritual Ascension] that, in keeping with this verse of the Holy Quran, the souls of the Prophets and Messengers who have passed away from this world are like a jamā’at [community] in the next world, who immediately join those who have passed away before them and enter among them, as is the import of the verse:

فَادْخُلِيْ فِيْ عِبٰدِي

And then the last sentence of these verses—also demands that all those servants of God enter into Paradise without any delay. The connotation of the  is not of an event to wait for, which is to transpire a after long period of time; rather, it transpires immediately upon the death of a righteous one. In other words, the party that dies later goes and joins those who passed before, without any delay. Thus, it inevitable that the second part of the verse,  [enter you My Garden], should also transpire without any delay. That is to say, when anyone from among the righteous and sinless believers dies, he should enter into Paradise without any delay. And this, indeed, is the reality.

This is expounded in other parts of the Holy Quran, too. Among others, there is one instance where God says:

1. So enter you among My chosen servants (Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:30). [Publisher]
2. And enter you My Garden (Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:31). [Publisher]
3. ...My chosen servants (Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:30). [Publisher]
4. This may appear to invite the objection that if every pious and sinless believer, who bears no burden of sin and disobedience, enters Paradise without any delay, this necessitates the denial of the resurrection of bodies and all its related essentials. Because, once a person has entered Paradise, then, in
Meaning: ‘It was said, “Enter into Paradise.”’

Similarly, there are many other instances—the mention of which would cause this to become too lengthy—that prove that the souls of the pious and sinless enter Paradise immediately upon their death. Likewise, there are many ahadith that confirm the same meaning, and ‘the souls of martyrs keeping with the verse,’

[Nor shall they ever be ejected therefrom (Sūrah al-Ḥijr, 15:49)]
their exit from Paradise is precluded. And, therefore, the whole procedure of resurrection of bodies and the events of the Hereafter is rendered false. The answer to this is that the belief that the sinless believers enter Paradise without any delay is not of my own making but it is indeed the belief that the Holy Quran has taught. As for the Holy Quran’s other teaching that relates to the resurrection of bodies and the raising of the dead, that is true as well, and we believe in it. The only difference is that this entering into Paradise is in a general sense, and the bodies the believers are given immediately [upon entering Paradise] are still imperfect. But the Day of Resurrection of bodies will be the day of the grand manifestation and on that day, perfect bodies will be granted. The link of the dwellers of Paradise will not be severed from Paradise in any way. They will be in Paradise in a way, and in the presence of God in a way. Are we to think that the martyrs who eat the fruit of Paradise like green sparrows are not to come out of Paradise and present themselves before God?

1. Sūrah Yā-Sin, 36:21 [Publisher]

2. * A body is necessary for entering Paradise, but it is not necessary that the body be elemental; in fact, a body that is not elemental is required, because the fruits etc. of Paradise are also not elemental, but rather, are a new creation, so the body will also be a new creation that will be different from the earlier body. It is, however, essential that the believers are given bodies after death. It is not only the phrase ‘of Paradise’ that points to this, but also the fact that on the night of the Mi’raj, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, did not merely see the souls of the Prophets; rather, he saw the bodies of all of them, and body of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā was not of a different kind from them. (Author)
eating the fruits of Paradise’ [narrations] are such well-known *abādīth* that it is no secret to anyone. Almighty Allah says too:

\[
\text{1. } \text{يُرْزَقُوْنَ رَبِّهِمْ عِنْدَ اَحْيَآءٌ بَلْ ١ؕاَمْوَاتًا اللّٰهِ سَبِيْلِ فِيْ قُتِلُوْا الَّذِيْنَ تَحْسَبَنَّ لَا وَ}
\]

Meaning: ‘Do not imagine, with regard to those who are slain in the cause of Allah the Almighty, that they are dead. Rather, they are living, they are provided with food from God Almighty.’

The same is proven by the earlier Scriptures. Thus, when the entrance of the souls of the pious and sinless into Paradise is proven—and it is obvious that Paradise is the place which will also have material delicacies of diverse types and fruits of many kinds, and entry into Paradise indeed means that one would partake of those delicacies—in such case the entry of only the soul into Paradise is meaningless and useless. Will it, after entering into Paradise, keep sitting destitute and not benefit from the bounties of Paradise?

Thus, the verse,

\[
\text{2. جَنَّتِيْ ادْخُلِيْ وَ}
\]

shows clearly that a believer is bestowed a body after death.\(^3\) For this

---

1. *Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān*, 3:170 [Publisher]

2. And enter you My Garden (*Sūrah al-Fajr*, 89:31). [Publisher]

3. \(^\star\) Let it be clear that the Christians also believe the same, that ‘Yasū’ Masīh ‘Īsā [Jesus, the Messiah] was not raised to heaven with his elemental body, but he was bestowed a glorious body after death. Hence it is a pity—rather, a grievous pity—that Muslims of the Dark Ages who were born three centuries after [the Holy Prophet ﷺ] do not uphold the belief of the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, regarding this issue—for all the Companions\(^\star\) had come to consensus that all the Prophets of the past, which includes Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, had died. Nor do they agree with the Jews on this issue because the Jews, by declaring ‘Īsā to be accursed—God forbid—deny only his spiritual exaltation, which is essential for a believer, because the only consequence of being crucified is to be deprived of spiritual exaltation and to become accursed and
reason, all Imams and Sufis are agreed that the believers who are pious and sinless are invested with a holy and glorious body upon death, through which they enjoy the bounties of Paradise. To reserve Paradise for martyrs alone is an injustice, indeed it is a heresy. Can a true believer utter such an impertinence as to say that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, under whose grave Paradise lies, is still outside Paradise, but those who acquired faith and righteousness nothing else. Nor do they agree with the Christians on this issue, because while the Christians do believe in ‘Isa’s physical ascension they do not believe, like they [Muslims] do, in ascension with the elemental body. Rather, they believe in the ascension of the glorious body which, in their view, was bestowed upon ‘Isa after his death. And we cannot deny that Haḍrat ‘Isa could have been granted a glorious body after death, which is not the earthly body, because it is granted to every believer after his death as is testified by the verse [enter My garden]. This has to be so because the soul on its own is not suited to enter Paradise. Thus, Haḍrat ‘Isa has no distinction in this regard. Where the Christians err, however, is in believing that the glorious body was bestowed upon ‘Isa after his death on the cross, because ‘Isa never died on the cross; otherwise, he would be considered to have lied in equating himself with the Prophet Yūnus [Jonah], God forbid, and would also have come under the purview of the purport of la’nat [curse]. An accursed person is he whose heart, like that of Satan, has become estranged from God and becomes God’s enemy and God becomes his enemy, and who, like Satan, is barred from the divine threshold and becomes rebellious of God. Can we attribute such a connotation to ‘Isa? Absolutely not! And can any Christian commit the affront that after his crucifixion ‘Isa became estranged from God and developed a bond with Satan? This is the meaning of la’nat that has been put forward from time immemorial and is agreed upon by all peoples. Alas, the Christians have never reflected on this connotation, or else they would have discarded such a belief with utmost disgust. Moreover, it is evident from the events presented by the Gospels that after deliverance from the cross, only the earthly body of ‘Isa was witnessed. For instance, when the apostle Thomas doubted as to how ‘Isa could have been delivered from the cross, ‘Isa showed him his wounds to prove it, and Thomas put his finger in them. Could wounds have remained in the glorious body, too? Can we say that he was granted a glorious body and yet could not remove his wounds? The fact is that the body that was glorious was the one bestowed after his death in Kashmir. (Author)
through him and became martyrs are dwelling in Paradise due to their martyrdom and are eating the fruit of Paradise? The truth is that those who devoted their life to the cause of Almighty God have already become martyrs. So by this token, our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is the foremost of martyrs. Inasmuch as this is established, we, too, say that the Messiah was raised to heaven with his body (but with a body that differs from his elemental body), and then he entered among Almighty God’s servants and entered Paradise.

From this perspective, the point of contention between our opponents and us turns out to be only in terminology. And when, with this perspective, bodily exaltation is proven, why then must Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā be considered to have risen to heaven with his earthly body while it contradicts the established divine practice with regard to all Prophets, of being bestowed glorious bodies? And if the contention is that he too was bestowed a glorious body—as was bestowed upon Ḥaḍrat Ibrāhīm as, Ḥaḍrat Mūsā as, Ḥaḍrat Yaḥyā as, and other Prophets—and with it he was raised to God Almighty, this is not something we ever deny. We agree to Ḥaḍrat Masīḥ’s exaltation to heaven with such a body with all our heart and soul. [As is said:] [We are content and happy.]

While the aforementioned verses are clear, explicit, and conclusive regarding the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, if the Holy Quran is perused carefully, we would find that there are many more verses which prove the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him. Among them is the verse:

 Meaning that: ‘Ḥaḍrat Muḥammad, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is only a Messenger. And all Messengers have passed away

1. *Sūrah al-e-'Imrān, 3:145* [Publisher]
before him. If then he dies or is slain, would you give up the religion of Islam?’

As I have just explained, it is not right that the word خَلَت [khalat], when applied to all other Prophets, means ‘to cause to die’, but when it comes to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, it means that God Almighty raised him to heaven with his elemental body. Such claim is utterly baseless, and no evidence has been presented to support it.

In fact, everywhere in the Holy Quran that the word خَلَت [khalat] has been used, it has only been used to connote death. No one can produce a single example from the Holy Quran where this word has been used to mean that someone was raised to heaven with his elemental body. Moreover, as I have just explained, in these very verses Almighty God has Himself explained the word خَلَت [khalat] and has confined it only to death or murder. And this is the noble verse on whose authority the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them, reached the ijmā‘ [consensus] that all the Prophets and Messengers had died and none of them was going to return to this world. In fact the real purpose of this ijmā‘ was to assert that it is not possible for anyone to return to this world. The objective of this ijmā‘ was to dispel the notion that had developed in the mind of Ḥaḍrat ‘Umar, may Allah be pleased with him, that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, would return to this world and cut off the noses and ears of the hypocrites. This being the context, it is obvious that had Islam admitted the possibility of any Prophet to return to this world, it would not have been possible to dispel the thought of Ḥaḍrat ‘Umar ra by reciting this verse, not to mention that it would entail a denigration of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. Indeed in such a case it would have been out of place for Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr ra to even recite this verse. In short, this verse is also one such wonderful verse that proclaims aloud the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him. فَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ عَلَى ذَلِكَ [God be praised for this].

Then there is another verse that proves the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him. Allah the Exalted says:
Meaning: ‘Īsā, Masih [Jesus the Messiah] is but a Messenger; all Messengers before him have died. And his mother was a pious woman, and both of them used to eat food when they were alive.

In this verse, Allah the Exalted refutes the divinity of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, and says that all Messengers before him have died. To think, despite this fact, that the Messiah is sitting alive in heaven, is a fallacy. How can this argument be used to prove his divinity when the argument itself is false, for the truth is that death did not spare anyone and they all died. The second argument for him being a human is that he had a mother of whom he was born, while God has no mother. The third argument for him being a human is that when he and his mother were alive they both used to eat food, whereas God is in no need of food. That is, food restores the body as it wastes away, while God is free from the attribute of wasting away. But the Messiah continued to consume food. Thus, if he is God, then does the body of God, too, continue to waste away? This refers to the fact that, according to physiological research, the human body is replaced completely in three years, as earlier cells are broken down and new cells develop as their replacement. But this imperfection is by no means to be found in God. This is the argument invoked by Almighty God to prove that Haḍrat ‘Īsā was a human being.

But alas for the people who, having raised Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to heaven, believe that his body does not possess this trait that, like all human beings, the process of dissolution should continue in him, and believe that his body would have remained safe from annihilation even without obtaining the replacement for the dissolution through food. They wish to break thereby the argument given by God and the reasoning put forth in the above-mentioned verse. God, on the other hand, gives

1. Sūrah al-Mā‘idah, 5:76 [Publisher]
the argument to prove that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, was human. Namely that, like other human beings, he too was dependent on food, without which his body could not have sustained itself, and that it required replacement for what was being consumed. The people who raise Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to heaven with his elemental body, hold the belief that his body can continue to exist without food, and in this manner they present an argument for the divinity of ‘Īsā in contradiction to Almighty Allah’s purport.

It is shameful that these people disrespect the argument that God has presented with the purpose of proving that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was human. While Almighty God refutes that the Messiah had the attribute on the basis of which he could be deified, these people assert that he does possess that attribute. This is disrespect of the consummate argument that God puts forth with regard to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā being human. If it is true that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, despite possessing his elemental body, does not require food, and that his body is able to continue to exist on its own, like the person of God, then this would be an argument for his divinity, which that the Christians have put forth since ancient times. It is not enough to say, in response to this, that he used to eat food while he was on earth though he does not eat in Heaven, as the opponents can say that his eating while on earth was by his own volition and that he was not dependent on food as human being are, otherwise if he was dependent on food on earth he would also be dependent on it in heaven. I deplore these people who, time and again, while God cites the eating of food as evidence that Ḥaḍrat Masīḥ was human, believe that though Ḥaḍrat Masīḥ did eat food for thirty years while on earth, he is subsisting without food in heaven for 1,900 years.

Yet another argument for the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is the following verse of the Holy Quran, where God says:
(Translation) ‘You [children of Adam] shall live out your lives in the earth, and shall die in the earth, and shall be raised from earth too.’ In the presence of such a clear statement, how is it possible that for about 2,000 years, or an even longer and undetermined period, Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, should stay in heaven—for this necessitates rejection of the Holy Quran.

Again, another argument for the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, is this verse of the Holy Quran:

(Translation) ‘Your abode shall be on earth, and until the day of your death, from within the earth shall you find things for your comfort.’

This verse has the same import as the previous one. How is it possible that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā should live on earth—the abode for human beings—for just thirty-three years, and yet he should maintain his residence in

1. ★ As I have already said, there exists an acknowledgement by Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā himself that bears testimony to his death. In answer to Almighty God’s question, ‘O ‘Īsā, did you teach people to take you and your mother as gods?’; the reply Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā gives is recorded in the Holy Quran and that is the verse:

Meaning: ‘I was a witness over them only as long I was among them, but when You caused me to die, You were then the Guardian over them’ [Ṣūrah al-Mā‘idah, 5:118]. In this verse Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā links the Christians remaining on the side of truth with his own lifetime. Hence, if Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is still living, it follows necessarily that the Christians are still upon the truth. And this verse also proves that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā will not return to this world before the Day of Resurrection, otherwise it follows necessarily that—God forbid—he would lie in the presence of God that he had no knowledge of his people going astray. (Author)

2. Ṣūrah al-Aʿrāf, 7:26 [Publisher]

3. Ṣūrah al-Baqarah, 2:37 [Publisher]
heaven—which is not an abode for human beings—for 2,000 years or for an even longer, unknown period. This will lead to the impression that he is perhaps not a human being, particularly when there is no other human being who is his equal in displaying such superhuman qualities.

Then, another argument for the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is this verse of the Holy Quran:

\[
\text{اللّٰهُ إِنَّكَ لَ﻿مَعۡلُومٌ عِنۡدَهُ حَكَمٌ مُّبَالِغٌ لَّمۡنَ أَنتَ إِلَّا مَلَکُومُ كُلِّ جَنَّةٍ مِّنۡ مَّلَکَۢتِكُمۡ الَّذِی اَللّٰهُ}
\]

(Translation) meaning: ‘Allah is the God who created you in a state of weakness, and after weakness gave you strength; then, after strength, gave you weakness and old age.’ Obviously, this verse applies to all human beings, to the extent that even the Prophets are included in it. Even our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, who is the Chief of the Prophets, is not outside its scope. The signs of old age became manifest even in him, and some grey hair had appeared in his blessed beard and he felt the effects of the weakness related to the old age in his final years. But, according to our opponents, Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā is excluded from this, too. They say that this is one distinction of his which is extraordinary. Indeed, this is the argument for his divinity.

Thus, there are five arguments, and not just one, for the divinity of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, which—according to the contention of the Christians and the doctrine of my opponents from our own people [i.e. the Muslims]—exist today and which cannot be refuted without first falsifying that special attribute of his. It is believed that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā holds the sole distinction of going to Heaven with his elemental body, something that no other human being shares with him; and possesses a second distinction, that he alone is acknowledged to have lived in Heaven for hundreds of years without food or water, which also no other human being shares with him; and hold a the third distinction, that he is the only one who is acknowledged to have stayed

1. Sūrah ar-Rūm, 30:55 [Publisher]
in Heaven free from old age and its accompanying debility for such a long period of time, which is also something no other human shares with him; and possesses a fourth distinction, that he is the only one acknowledged to descend from Heaven in the company of angels after a protracted period, and not a single human shares this quality with him either. Given this, one should ponder these four distinctions—which are assigned solely to his person, and he is considered to be unique and without any co-sharer in them—just how much of a trial this doctrine can prove to be for the masses. Moreover, consider how many rea-

1. ★ In addition to this, my opponents from among the Muslims unfortunately and ignorantly assign a fifth distinction to Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā and it is that, out of all the Prophets, he is the only one who is free from the touch of Satan—to the exclusion of all other Prophets. A sixth distinction is that the Holy Spirit accompanied him at all times and the Holy Spirit did not accord such constant company to any other Prophet. But all these are their fallacies. Little do they realize that all Prophets are free from the touch of Satan. Moreover, when God, through the saying of His Messenger, speaks of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā and his mother being free from the touch of Satan, the wisdom in it is that the inauspicious Jews accused Ḥaḍrat Maryam Ṣiddiqah [Mary the Truthful] of adultery and considered Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā to be an illegitimate child—God forbid—and God desired to exonerate them of these charges. Accordingly, He exonerated them in this way, that the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, said that both of them were free from the touch of Satan. In other words, fornication is a satanic act, and both Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā and Maryam are free from this satanic act. It does not, however, mean that only they are free from it, and other Prophets are afflicted. Likewise, the Jews believed that, being an unlawful child, Satan was the companion of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, and this was their belief on the basis of the Torah. And it was to refute them that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā’s companionship of the Holy Spirit was mentioned. It is also not correct that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā possesses the distinction that he was conceived through the influence of the Holy Spirit, because it has been established from the Holy Quran and the Torah that some people are born in the shadow of Satan and have satanic qualities, while some are born in the shadow of the Holy Spirit and have virtuous qualities. As for those who are unlawfully begotten, they are conceived in the maternal womb in the shadow of Satan. It was, therefore, essential to refute that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā’s birth was unlawful, and so the Gospel also speaks of the shadow of the Holy Spirit to make it known that he was not born in the shadow of Satan and that he was not unlawfully begotten. (Author)
sons it provides to those who deify Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā—reasons that stand as ‘proven’ by the admission of the Muslims themselves.

Had Almighty God had not refuted all these distinctions by declaring Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to be dead, another way to refute them was that Almighty God should have provided some precedents that would show that certain other human beings also shared these extraordinary qualities with him, just as God had provided the precedent of Adam in being fatherless. But if God neither declared Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to be dead nor refuted all these distinctions, then in this context God became, as it were, dumbfounded in the face of the Christians’ argument. And if you say that you also believe that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā will return in the Latter Days and then die after a while, then Christians do not accept this assertion. They convict you by your own admissions. And they are not obligated to accept your unsubstantiated claim. For, if Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā were to remain alive till the Day of Judgment, and were to have all the features of godhood in him—such as raising the dead—then it is possible that he should remain immune to death. And this is, in fact, what the Christians believe—that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā will not die after descending from Heaven; rather, in his capacity as ‘God’, he will reward and punish people. So in the scenario, where these four distinctions of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā are proven according to your own admission, the Christians will get the better of you, because, according to them, these four distinctions are sufficient to make Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā God.

It is far from the wisdom of God Almighty that He should bestow these four distinctions on someone who is being deified by 400 million people. At the time of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, the Christians had presented just one feature as the distinction of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā—that he was born without a father—and Allah the Exalted at once countered it and said,

1. Sūrah Al-e-‘Imrān, 3:60 [Publisher]
meaning: ‘The case of ‘Īsā with Allah is like the case of Adam. God created him out of dust, then He said to him, ‘Be!’ and he became alive and vibrant.’ This meant that being born without a father was not something peculiar to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, as that would necessarily imply that he was God, for Adam has neither father nor mother.

Hence while divine honour demanded that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā should not remain peculiar in the distinction of being fatherless so that it may not be claimed as evidence for his godhood, how then is it possible that God should have accepted four supernatural distinctions in Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā? Of course, if God has cited some precedents to refute these distinctions, then those precedents should be presented, otherwise it will have to be admitted that God could not answer the claim of the Christians, for these are indeed the distinctions that the Christians cite and declare these distinctions to be the proof of the godhead of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him. So, while God has not refuted these four distinctions by citing some precedents, as He did in the case of Adam’s birth, then it would have to be confessed that God has accepted the Christian claim. But if He has refuted it and has cited some precedent of these four distinctions, then present those verses from the Holy Quran.

Among the verses that categorically prove the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, is this verse of the Holy Quran:

Meaning: ‘Those who are worshipped in place of God cannot create anything; rather, they have themselves been created, and they are all dead, not living, and they know not when they will be raised.’ One ought to ponder carefully as to how vividly these verses demonstrate the death of Ḥaḍrat Masûlî and all other people whom the Christians,

1. Sūrah an-Nahl, 16:21–22 [Publisher]
Jews, and some Arab sects held as deities and worshipped. Keep in mind that this is the declaration of God, and God Almighty is above and free from saying things that are contrary to facts. So when He says in clear and explicit words that all human beings who are worshipped and taken as ‘God’ by different faiths are dead—and not one of them is alive—then what level of defiance, disobedience, and contradiction of the commandment of God is it to consider Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, to still be alive. Is Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, not among those who have been deified or those who are beseeched to help resolve difficulties? Indeed he is the foremost among those people, because the insistence and exaggeration with which 400 million people are striving claim divinity for Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, is not to be found in any other faith.

All the verses that I have quoted here are sufficient to prove the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him. And the same is also substantiated when we look at the blessed aḥādīth of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—the only difference being that, while God testifies to the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā with His Word, the Holy Prophet, may peace be upon him, does so through his eyewitness testimony. Thus, God with His Word, and the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, with his action—i.e. by his eyewitness account—have put a seal on the fact that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā has died. For the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, testifies by his eyewitness account that on the night of the Miʿrāj [Spiritual Ascension] he saw Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā in Heaven among the previous Prophets who had passed away from this world and had reached the next world. Not only that, but he saw the same kind of body for Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā as those for other Prophets, may peace be upon them. Moreover, I have already explained that it is an error to think that it is only the souls of the earlier Prophets, may peace be upon them, who have passed away from this world that are present in Heaven; rather, they have with them luminous and glorious bodies with which they were raised from
this world after their death—and the verse \(^1\) represents a clear statement with regard to it. This is because a body is required to enter Paradise, and the Holy Quran time and again says clearly that people who will enter Paradise shall have their bodies with them; no soul shall enter Paradise just by itself.

Thus, the verse \(^2\) shows clearly that every righteous person who enters Paradise after death is necessarily granted a body after death. The second testimony to the bestowal of a body is the observation of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. For, on the night of the Mi’raj, he did not see merely the souls of the Prophets, but rather, he saw their bodies as well; and he did not see any novel body for Ḥaḍrat ‘Īṣā. He saw the same kind of body for Ḥaḍrat ‘Īṣā as he saw for other Prophets. Therefore, if one does not insist unfairly on following falsehood, it is very easy for him to understand that the body with which Ḥaḍrat ‘Īṣā was raised was not the physical one, but was the body that is bestowed upon every believer after death, because God Himself bars the physical body from going to Heaven, as He says:

\[
\text{Translation: Have We not created the earth in a manner whereby it is}
\]
\[
\text{drawing people’s bodies, whether dead or alive, towards itself, and does}
\]
\[
\text{not let any of them climb to Heaven?}
\]
\[
\text{On another occasion He says:}
\]

1. And enter you My Garden (Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:31). [Publisher]
2. And enter you My Garden (Sūrah al-Fajr, 89:31). [Publisher]
4. Sūrah Bani Isrā’īl, 17:94 [Publisher]
Meaning that: When the disbelievers asked the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, to climb to Heaven—in that he need show only the miracle of climbing to Heaven with his physical body—they were told: 

قُلْ سُبْحَانَ رَبِّيْ

Meaning: Say to them, it is unworthy of my Lord to go against His word and promise, and He has already said that no earthly body will go to Heaven, as He said:

1. Have We not made the earth so as to hold, the living and the dead? (Sūrah al-Mursalāt, 77:26–27) [Publisher]
2. Therein shall you live, and therein shall you die (Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:26). [Publisher]
3. And for you there is an abode on the earth and a provision for a time (Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:25). [Publisher]
go to Heaven after death, and it is specifically with regard to them that Allah the Almighty says:

\[
\text{مَفَاتِحَ الْقُرْآنِ الأَلْبَابِ}
\]

Meaning that the gates of Heaven shall be opened for the believers.

Take note that if there had been only souls, the pronoun لَهُمُ [lahum] would not have been used for them. This usage strongly supports that when a believer is raised after their death, it is along with a body, but the body is not an earthly one. Rather, the soul of the believer is granted a different body that is pure and glorious and is immune from the suffering and defects that form a necessary part of the physical body. In other words, it is neither dependent on earthly food nor is it in need of earthly water. All those who are granted a station close to Almighty God receive similar bodies. It is our belief that Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā received a similar body after his death and he was raised towards God with that body.

Some ignorant people present the following verses of the Holy Quran:

\[
\text{فِيهُمْ دُمْتُ مَّا شَهِيْدًا عَلَيْهِمْ كُنْتُ وَ}
\]

and

\[
\text{فَلَمَّا تَوَفَّيْتَنِيْ فَلَمَّا}
\]

Then they raise the objection: ‘These verses of the Holy Quran clearly

1. ʿSūrah ʿṢād, 38:51 [Publisher]
2. And I was a witness over them as long as I remained among them (Ṣūrah al-Māʾidah, 5:118). [Publisher]
3. But since You did cause me to die, You have been the Watcher over them (Ṣūrah al-Māʾidah, 5:118). [Publisher]
specify that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, will plead before God that people went astray after his death and not in his lifetime. Therefore, if this belief is correct, that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā escaped the cross and went to Kashmir and lived there for 87 years, it would be incorrect to say that his people went astray after his death; and he should instead have said that people had gone astray after his journey to Kashmir, for his death occurred 87 years after incident of the cross.’

So, keep in mind that such a doubt is born only out of lack of reflection. Otherwise, the journey to Kashmir is not in contradiction with this statement, because the meaning of فِيْهِمْ دُمْتُ مَا is, ‘As long as I was among my people who had believed in me,’ and does not mean, ‘As long as I was in their land,’ for we do accept that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā had migrated from the Levant to Kashmir, but we do not accept that the mother of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā and his Disciples remained behind. Instead, it is evident from historical records, that the Disciples came and joined him, some accompanying Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā and some arriving later. For instance, Thomas went with Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, while the other Disciples came afterwards. Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, chose just one person, Thomas, to accompany him, just as our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, chose only Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr at the time of the migration to Madinah.

The Roman Empire had declared Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā to be a rebel, and even Pilate had been assassinated on the order of Caesar due to the same accusation, because he was a secret supporter of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā and his wife was also the follower of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. Hence, it was necessary that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā should depart the country secretly and not take a group with him. Therefore, he took only Thomas with him on this journey, just as our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, took only Ḥaḍrat Abū Bakr with him in his journey to Madinah. And just as the rest of the Companions of our Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, joined him in Madinah having taken different routes, so did the Disciples of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, join him through different routes at different times. And as long
as Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā remained among them—in keeping with the purport of the verse ¹—he all remained firm on Tābihd [the Oneness of God]. Their progeny went astray after the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā. It is not known in which generation they fell into this error. Historians maintain that the Christian faith was still on its original principles till its third century. In any case, it appears that all those people returned to their homeland after the death of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā; perhaps because the Emperor of Rome became Christian, so it was no longer necessary for them to remain in exile.

Here, bear in mind that the journey of Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, to Kashmir is not without proof. Rather, this matter has been established with strong arguments, so much so that the word ‘Kashmir’ itself is evidence of this, inasmuch as the word ‘Kashmir’ is a word that is pronounced ‘Kashīr’ in the Kashmiri language, and every Kashmiri calls it ‘Kashīr’. As such, it appears that this word is evidently of Hebrew origin and is the composite of the words kāf and ashīr. The land of Syria is called ashīr in Hebrew, and [the preposition] ك—kāf is used to connote similarity. Hence the word was كَأَشِیْر [Ka-Ashīr], where the letter kāf was distinct from ashīr, and the term meant, ‘like the country of Syria’. And since this country was the place to which Ḥaḍrat ʿĪsā, may peace be upon him, had migrated, and he was the dweller of a cold country, therefore, God, in order to comfort him, named this country Ka-Ashīr, meaning, ‘like the country of Ashīr’. Then, with frequent usage, the أ—alif [i.e. the ‘a’ sound in ashīr] became obsolete and only Kashīr was left. Then, other nations, who were neither the dwellers of Kashīr nor possessed its language, added a م—mīm [i.e. an ‘m’ sound] and made it ‘Kashmir’. But, it is by the grace and mercy of God Almighty that to this day it is spoken and written as Kashīr in the Kashmiri language.

Besides this, to this day, there are many things in the land of Kashmir that bear Hebrew names; even some mountains have been named after

¹. Sūrah al-Mā’īdah, 5:118 [Publisher]
Prophets, from which it is deduced that Hebrew people must have lived in this land at some point in time. For example, there is a mountain in Kashmir by the name of Solomon, the Prophet. To prove this point, I have already published in some of my books a list of Hebrew words and names of Israelite Prophets that are in use in Kashmir to this day. It is also learnt, in great detail, from books on Kashmiri history, which I have collected with much labour and which I have in my possession, that at one time—roughly 2,000 years ago according to our reckoning—an Israelite Prophet came to Kashmir. He was from the Israelites and was known as 'Shâhzâdah Nabî' ['Prince Prophet'].

His tomb is present in Mohalla Khanyar, and is known widely as the Tomb of Yuz Asaf. Now, it is obvious that these books were published in Kashmir long before my birth, so how can anyone imagine that the Kashmiris wrote these books by way of fabrication. Why did those people need this fabrication and what was their objective for which they perpetrated such a fabrication? What is even more peculiar is that these people, in their utter simplicity, believe, like other Muslims, that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā had ascended to Heaven with his physical body.

In spite of this belief, they know with full conviction that an Israelite Prophet did come to Kashmir and that he introduced himself as the 'Prince Prophet'. Their books relate that, on the basis of calculation, a little more than 1,900 years have elapsed since that time. The simplicity of the Kashmiris has here benefited us, for had they known who that 'Prince Prophet' from among the Israelites was, and who the Prophet was who lived some 1,900 years ago, they would never have shown these books to us. This is why I say that we have benefited greatly from their simplicity. Besides, they say that the name of the Prince Prophet was 'Yuz Asaf'. This word clearly appears to be the distortion of 'Yasu Asaf'. In Hebrew, 'Asaf' refers to a person who is in search of his people. Since Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā had arrived in Kashmir in search of his people who were the missing tribes of Jews, he called himself 'Yasu Asaf'. Further, it is written clearly in the scripture of Yuz Asaf that the Injil [Gospel] had been revealed to him by God. Thus, in the presence of
so many clear proofs, how is it possible to refute that Yuz Asaf is none other than Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him? Otherwise, the onus of proof is on our opponents, to show us who this person is, who called himself the Prince Prophet and whose time corresponds perfectly with the time of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. We have also learnt that when Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā came to Kashmir, he was mentioned by the Buddhists of that time in their scriptures.

Another potent argument for this is that God says:

\[
\text{ۚمَعِيْنٍ وَّ قَرَارٍ ذَاتِ رَبْوَةٍ اِلٰى اٰوَيْنٰهُمَاۤ}
\]

Meaning: ‘We gave ‘Īsā and his mother refuge on a hill which was a place of comfort and was far from the reach of every enemy, and its water was pleasant.’

Be mindful that the word اٰوَى [āwā] is used in Arabic when a person is given refuge from a tribulation in a place that is a peaceful abode. That abode of peace cannot possibly be the land of Shām, because the land of Shām was in the jurisdiction of the Caesar of Rome and Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā had been declared a rebel against Caesar. Therefore, it was indeed Kashmir, which was similar to the land of Shām, and was a place of shelter—i.e. it was an abode of peace—meaning that the Caesar of Rome had nothing to do with it.

Some people here raise another objection that it is said that the dispensation of Muhammad has been established along the lines of the dispensation of Mūsā, and this dispensation bears similarity to every good and bad aspect of the dispensation of Mūsā; therefore, it was essential that just as the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, has been called ‘the like of Mūsā’ in the Holy Quran, so should the last Khalīfah [Successor] of this dispensation be called ‘the like of ‘Īsā’; however, the person who would come in the Latter Days of this Khilāfāt [Institution of Successorship] has been called ‘Īsā ibn

---

1. Sūrah al-Mu‘minūn, 23:51 [Publisher]
Maryam [Jesus son of Mary]—and not ‘the like of Ḥusayn’—in both the Gospel and the abādīth of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him.

The answer to this misconception is that it was essential that Almighty God should have described the Khalifah of the first part of Islam and the Khalifah of the last part of Islam in the same style in which it was described in the earlier scriptures. Thus, it is not hidden from anyone that the prophecy in the Torah regarding the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, is in similar phraseology, and that is: ‘God Almighty shall raise up a Prophet like unto Mūsā from among your brethren.’ It was not written there that God Almighty would send Mūsā. Therefore, it was essential that, with regard to the coming of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, God should have used the phraseology corresponding to that of the Torah, so that no discord would develop between the Torah and the Holy Quran. This is why Allah the Almighty said—concerning the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him:


erāsūlān fī ruʿūn ʿalāyikum shāhīdān 1

Meaning: ‘We have sent a Messenger to you like the Messenger who was sent to Pharaoh.’

But as for the last Khalifah, who has been named ‘Īsā, the Gospel did not say that someone like ‘Īsā would come in the Latter Days; rather, it says that ‘Īsā will come. So it was essential that, in keeping with the prophecy of the Gospel, the last Khalifah of Islam should have been named ‘Īsā so that no discord would develop between the Gospel and the abādīth of the Holy Prophet tas.

At this point, a seeker after truth does of course have the right to ask the reason and wisdom that, in the Torah, the Holy Prophet, may

1. Sūrah al-Muzzammil, 73:16 [Publisher]
peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, was referred to simply as ‘the like of Mūsā’, while in the Gospel it was stated that ‘Īsā himself would come; moreover, why is it not possible that ‘Īsā here refers to ‘Īsā himself and that he was the one who would return?

The answer to this is that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, cannot come back in any case, because he has died, and his death has been declared by Allah the Almighty in the Holy Quran in categorical terms. Moreover, the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, saw Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, in Heaven seated among those who have passed away from this world. The third testimony in this regard is that the death of all Prophets is established by the ijmā’ [consensus] of the Companions, may Allah be pleased with them. Then there is the testimony of sane reason that supports the above three testimonies; because ever since the world was created, it has never seen an instance like this, and no Prophet has ever gone to Heaven or returned from it with a physical body. These four testimonies together give the definitive verdict that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, has died; and it is slanderous to claim that he ever went to Heaven with his physical body, that he is still alive, and that he will at some point in time return to the earth with his physical body. It is unfortunate that although Islam was far removed from idolatry, in the end this doctrine found its way into Islam as a form of idolatry, in that such distinctions were accorded to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā as are not to be found in any other Prophet. May God Almighty rescue Muslims from this kind of idolatry! If ‘Īsā dies, Islam lives; and if ‘Īsā lives, Islam dies. May God usher in the day when the heedless Muslims cast a glance toward the right path. Āmin.

Now the summary of this discourse is that, when the death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, is indubitably proven, then it is demonstrably false to presume that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, will return to this world. Then there is the answer to the part of the aforementioned question, as to the wisdom behind naming an ummatī as ‘Īsā, and as to why he was named ‘Īsā in the Gospel and aḥādīth of
the Holy Prophet ﷺ, and why he was not referred to here by ‘the like of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā— and he could share this incident if he was given the name ‘Īsā. Since God desired to demonstrate the congruity of the two dispensations, He named the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, ‘the like of Mūsā’. For, the similarity between the incident [i.e. the exodus] that Ḥaḍrat Mūsā experienced with Pharaoh and [the Hijrah of] the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, could become conspicuous only if he was proclaimed ‘the like of Mūsā’. But the incident that was experienced by Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā could stand true for the last Khalifah of this Ummah only if he was named ‘Īsā. The reason being, Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, was not accepted by the Jews only because it had been recorded in the book of the Prophet Malachi that ‘Īsā would not appear until Prophet Ilyās [Elijah] returned to this world. But Prophet Ilyās did not return, and Ḥaḍrat Yahyā [John] was declared to be Ilyās. For this reason, the Jews did not accept Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. Hence it was decided in the decree of God that in order to complete the likeness, in the Latter Days some people of this Ummah would become like the Jews who had rejected the Prophethood and veracity of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā by failing to understand the real import of the ‘return of Ilyās’. For such ‘Jews’ it was essential that there should have been some prophecy mentioning the return of a previous Prophet—as was the case in the prophecy regarding Ilyās—and it had been decided in the decree of God that such ‘Jews’ would definitely be born in this Ummah as well.

This is why I was named ‘Īsā, just as Ḥaḍrat Yahyā was named ‘Ilyās’. This is what is indicated by the verse:

1. Those who have not incurred displeasure (Sūrah al-Fātihah, 1:7). [Publisher]
Thus, the prophecy concerning the coming of ‘Īsā was for this ummah like the prophecy concerning the coming of Prophet Ilyās was for the Jews. Therefore, it was to establish this similarity that I was named ‘Īsā. And not just that the deniers of this ‘Īsā who were to appear in this Ummah were called ‘Jews’, to which the verse 1 refers, i.e. the ‘Jews’ who deny the ‘Īsā of this Ummah are akin to the Jews who did not accept Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. Thus, in this way a perfect similarity was established, in that—just as the Jews who were waiting the return of Prophet Ilyās did not believe in Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā on the pretext that Ilyās had not returned—these people did not believe in the ‘Īsā of this Ummah only for the excuse that the Israelite Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā had not returned. A similarity was thus established between the Jews who had not believed in Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā because Ilyās had not returned, and these Jews who await the second coming of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. And this was what God had desired.

Just as a similarity between the Israelite Jews and these ‘Jews’ stands proven, so is the similarity between the Israelite ‘Īsā and this ‘Īsā, who I am, of the perfect order. That ‘Īsā was rejected from the perspective of the Jews because a Prophet did not return to the world, and similarly this ‘Īsā—who I am—was rejected from the perspective of these ‘Jews’ because a Prophet did not return to the world.

And it is quite obvious that the people who are labelled as ‘Jews of this Ummah’—and to whom the verse 2 refers—are not the actual Jews, but are indeed people of this Ummah who have been named Jews. Likewise, this ‘Īsā is also not the actual ‘Īsā who was a Prophet from among the Israelites; rather, he is from within this Ummah as well. It is far removed from Almighty God’s grace and mercy that He has for this Ummah that He should give it the title of ‘Jews’—rather, give them the title of those Jews who had called Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā a disbeliever and liar on the basis of the argument that Prophet Ilyās was to return—but He should not give an individual from this Ummah the

1. Those who have not incurred displeasure (Sūrah al- сент, 1:7). [Publisher]
2. Those who have not incurred displeasure (Sūrah al- сент, 1:7). [Publisher]
title of ‘Īsā. Would it not mean that this Ummah is so wretched and unfortunate in the estimation of God that while it can earn the title of the mischievous and disobedient Jews in His eyes, there is not even one individual in this Ummah who can receive the title of ‘Īsā? This was the reason why Almighty God, on the one hand, termed some people of this Ummah ‘the Jews’, while on the other, named one individual ‘Īsā.

Some people, out of sheer ignorance or extreme prejudice and in order to deceive, put forward this verse as evidence that Ḥaṭrat ‘Īsā, may peace be upon him, is alive:

\[\text{1. And there is none among the People of the Book but will believe in it before his death (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:160). [Publisher]}\]

\[\text{2. So We made mutual enmity and hatred their lot till the Day of Resurrection (Sūrah al-Mā’idah, 5:15). [Publisher]}\]

\[\text{3. And We have cast among them enmity and hatred till the Day of Resurrection (Sūrah al-Mā’idah, 5:65). [Publisher]}\]

The meaning they wish to infer from this verse is that Ḥaṭrat ‘Īsā will not die until all the People of the Book have believed in him. However, only one who does not possess a thorough understanding of the Holy Quran, or who lacks honesty, will infer such meaning from it. For, this meaning negates a prophecy of the Holy Quran where Allah the Almighty says:

\[\text{2. And We have caused enmity and hostility (Sūrah al-Mā’idah, 5:65). [Publisher]}\]

\[\text{3. And We have cast among them enmity and hatred till the Day of Resurrection (Sūrah al-Mā’idah, 5:65). [Publisher]}\]

The meaning of these verses is, ‘We have caused enmity and hostility
between the Jews and the Christians till the Day of Judgment.’ Thus, if the aforementioned verse does indeed mean that all Jews will have believed in Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā before the Day of Judgment, then this necessitates that mutual enmity between the Jews and Christians will also come to an end at some point, and the seed of the Jewish faith will not be left on the earth. But it is evident from these verses and many other verses of the Holy Qur’an that the Jewish faith will persist to the Day of Judgment, albeit disgrace and misery will accompany them, and they will live under the protection of other powers.

Hence, the correct translation of the above-mentioned verse I quoted is, ‘Every person from among the People of the Book will, before his death, believe in the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, or in Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā.’ The word مَوْتِهٖ [his death] refers to the People of the Book, and not Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā. This is why in another reading of this verse the words are مَوْتِهِمْ [‘their death’]. Why would مَوْتِهِمْ [‘their death’] be present in the other reading if it referred to Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā? See Ƭafsīr Thanā‘ī, for it strongly confirms my statement. It also says that Abū Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, gives the same interpretation, though the author qualifies that Abū Hurairah was deficient in his comprehension of the Holy Qur’an and many muḥaddithīn [scholars of hadith] have criticized the soundness of his understanding. Abū Hurairah had the aptitude to quote, but he was quite deficient in understanding and discernment. I contend that even if Abū Hurairah, may Allah be pleased with him, has interpreted it in this way, it has been a mistake on his part, as it has been proven by muḥaddithīn that in many instances Abū Hurairahra is mistaken and stumbles in matters that pertain to understanding and discernment. It is an established norm that the opinion of just one Companion cannot be regarded as a valid argument per the law of the Shariah. The valid argument per the law of the Shariah is only the ُijmā’ of the Companionsra, and I have already explained, that consensus of the Companionsra occurred concerning the point that all Prophets had died.

Keep in mind that in view of the alternative reading of the verse
Reply to the doubts raised by Rashīd aHmad gangohī

[‘before his death’], i.e. قَبْلَ مَوْتِهِمْ [‘before their death’]—which, according to the norms held by the scholars of Hadith, is tantamount to an authentic hadith, i.e. it is such a hadith that stands proven to be from the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—the mere opinion of Abū Hurairah is worth rejecting as it is inconsequential and worthless when compared to the words of the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. To insist on it can lead one to disbelief. Not only that, the statement of Abū Hurairah necessitates repudiation of the Holy Quran because time and again the Holy Quran says that the Jews and the Christians will continue to exist till the Day of Judgment and they will not be wiped out completely, whereas Abū Hurairah says that the Jews will be wiped out completely, and this is in clear contradiction to the Holy Quran. Anyone who believes in the Holy Quran ought to discard the statement of Abū Hurairah as a thing of little value. In contrast, the alternative reading of the verse, according to the norms held by the scholars of Hadith, holds the status of an authentic hadith—and here the alternative reading of the verse قَبْلَ مَوْتِهِمْ does exist, as قَبْلَ مَوْتِهِ, which has to be taken as an authentic hadith—so in this case the statement of Abū Hurairah is, in fact, in contravention of both the Holy Quran and Hadith. فلا شك أنه باطل ومن يتبعه فإنه مفسد بطال. [No doubt he is in the wrong, and anyone who follows him is a mischief-maker and a great liar].

THE END
A very significant objective before me in writing this epilogue is to record all those matters and revelations that were mentioned briefly in the first four parts [of Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya], or the prophecies that were recorded in those parts, but at that time had not been fulfilled; however, in due course afterwards they came to fruition—to document the incidence and occurrence of all those events in this epilogue, and to discuss the true connotation of those matters whose true purport has since become evident.

Thus, this fifth part is really an exposition of the first four parts, and it was not in my power to give this exposition until God Almighty had provided all the means with His own hand. The promise has been vouchsafed in the revealed prophecies that are recorded in the previous parts that many Signs shall be shown, and there is also the promise that God Almighty shall teach this humble one the truths and verities of the Holy Quran. In those very parts I have been named Maryam [Mary], ‘Īsā [Jesus], Mūsā [Moses], and Adam—indeed, I was given the names of all the Prophets. This mystery, as to why I was so named, was not understood. It was impossible for me to understand all these matters without the ability bestowed by Allah Almighty.

The manifestation of heavenly Signs, in particular, is a matter indubitably above and beyond the range of human power. And the will of God Almighty had decreed a time frame for all these things to transpire, and Part V of this book was meant to be the commentary on these matters. How was it possible, then, for Part V to be penned prior to the
unfolding of all the events that were like a commentary for the first four parts. And those events were to be the subject matter of the fifth part. And when the twenty-fourth year of the deferment dawned, the breeze of divine favour shed light from every perspective on all matters that were hidden and veiled in the previous parts of *Barãhin-e-Ahmadiyya*.

On the one hand, the prophecies whose fulfilment was awaited were fulfilled to a large extent. On the other, the insights and verities of the Holy Quran that were to bring knowledge to perfection became abundantly clear. Moreover, the mystery concerning the names of the Prophets—the names of the Prophets that were assigned to me in the previous parts—that laid hidden in the first four parts, became fully elucidated, i.e. as to why God had named me after all the Prophets, may peace be upon them, in the previous parts of *Barãhin-e-Ahmadiyya*, as well as the hidden wisdom of why I was given the names of both ‘Īsã, who is the *Khátamul-Anbiyá* [Seal of the Prophets] with respect to the Israelite Prophets, and the name of Islam’s *Khátamul-Anbiyá* [Seal of the Prophets], which is Ahmad and Muhammad (may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him). All these hidden truths were elucidated. And my being named ‘Īsã etc. in heaven was the mystery that God had kept hidden, just as He had kept *Ašhãb-e-Kahf* [the People of the Cave] hidden for hundreds of years.

It was necessary that all those mysteries should remain sealed up till the Hour comes which had been ordained from the very beginning. And when that hour came and all these things came to pass, then the time arrived to write of the fifth part. It was this very constraint that kept the completion of *Barãhin-e-Ahmadiyya* in abeyance for twenty-three years. These are the mysteries of God which man cannot fathom unless he is informed by Him. Anyone who reads this fifth part will be forced to admit that if this part had been written before these prophecies and other mysteries unfolded, it could not have served as the mirror to reflect the truth of the previous parts; rather, it would have been disjointed and disconnected. Thus, God, who is Wise and the Knower of the unseen, and all of whose actions have a determined
time, indeed desired that first all those prophecies and all those truths that had not yet manifested at the time the previous parts were written, should be fulfilled and then the fifth part should be written, so that He should announce the manifestation and completion of all the matters that had hitherto remained secret and hidden. In fact, the point at which the writing of the earlier parts ended left a state of expectancy that could not have been addressed without this kind of Part V.

This was so because a large portion of those four parts comprises prophecies in which news is given that God shall cause such and such things to happen. And until those prophecies were fulfilled, how could anyone appreciate that all those revelations, in which these prophecies are vouchsafed, were from God? It was for this very reason that all my opponents rejected these prophecies. But God did not will that those prophecies be considered false. It was also against the norms of research that, instead of providing the proof of the truth of the previous parts, an unrelated fifth part be penned. It was, therefore, warranted that decree and destiny of God Almighty should have prevented this humble one from writing the fifth part for such a prolonged period till all those prophecies and other matters that lay hidden and concealed in the first four parts should become manifest. So, praise and gratitude is due to God, that in this period, which was twenty-three full years, all those things came to pass and God Himself made all these provisions.

Apart from manifesting these Signs, glorious visions from God revealed to me the truth of Islam and made me comprehend many difficult portions of the Holy Quran. Otherwise, it was beyond my ability to uncover those sublime mysteries on my own. But after the provision of this resource, I became able to write, in the fifth part, the exegesis concerning those precepts from the first four parts, which I could not have written in those earlier times. Once these provisions were granted, I decided that I should first write, in this epilogue, about the truth of Islam, and what Islam means. Then I should write briefly about the sublime and perfect teachings of the Holy Quran, referencing its verses, and demonstrate that the spirit of Islam serves as the focal point for all
the verses of the Holy Quran, and all the Quranic verses are revolving around it.

And then after this, I should give an account of the Signs that were to be displayed at my hands—as vouchsafed in the previous parts of *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*—which are a consequence of obedience to the Holy Quran. And following all these, I should write an exegesis on the revelations in which God has named me ‘Isa or has identified me by the names of other Prophets, as well as other revealed pronouncements that He has vouchsafed which require explanation. Thus, in keeping with the above-mentioned requirements, this epilogue has been divided into four parts:

**PART ONE**—in elucidation of the truth of Islam.

**PART TWO**—in elucidation of the sublime and perfect teaching of the Holy Quran.

**PART THREE**—in elucidation of the Signs the appearance of which was promised in *Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya*; and which God manifested at my hand.

**PART FOUR**—in explanation of the revelations in which I was named ‘Isa or I was given the names of other Prophets or other revealed pronouncements which He has vouchsafed that merit explanation. God willing, I will now discuss these four parts below in accordance with this delineation.

وَمَا تَوْفِیْقِیْ اِلَّ بِاللِّٰ۔ رَبِّ اَنْطِقْنَا بِالْحَقِّ وَاكْشِفْ عَلَیْنَا الْحَقَّ وَاھْدِنَا اِلـٰی حَقٍّ مُّبِیْنٍ۔

[The Lord, make us speak with the truth and reveal the truth to us, and guide us to the manifest truth. *Amin, again amin*.]

[I have no power except through God. Lord, make us speak with the truth and reveal the truth to us, and guide us to the manifest truth. *Amin, again amin*.]
Given below are the Miscellaneous Notes written by His Holiness about this Article that were found among his Manuscripts.

Verses of the Holy Quran that will, God-willing, be written in this treatise.

Page 56

If you give alms openly, it is well and good; and if you— conceal alms-giving, it’s far better. Such alms will remove your sins—Page 60

1. There should be no compulsion in religion. Surely, right has become distinct from wrong (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:257). [Publisher]

2. Note: These references are from the copy of the Holy Quran that the Promise Messiah had with him at the time. [Publisher]

3. Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:272 [Publisher]
So that they may be benefit therefrom. *Page 37*

Sūrah al-Baqarah, Part 2. They should follow My commandments and believe in Me so that they may benefit therefrom.

*Page 41. Part 2, Sūrah al-Baqarah*

Remember God with the heart brimming with love as you remember your fathers.

*Page 42. Part 2, al-Baqarah*

There are some who sell themselves in the path of God so that somehow He may be pleased.

*Page 43*

O ye who believe! Come into submission in the path of God and follow not the Satanic ways, for Satan is your enemy. Here, Satan means those people who enjoin evil.

---

1. Those who spend their wealth by night and day, secretly and openly, have their reward with the Lord; on them shall come no fear, nor shall they grieve (*Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:275*). [Publisher]

2. And when My servants ask you about Me, say: I am near. I answer the prayers of the supplicant when he prays to Me (*Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:187*). [Publisher]

3. *Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:201* [Publisher]

4. *Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:208* [Publisher]

5. *Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:209* [Publisher]
The Holy Quran has this special quality that its moral teaching is meant for the whole world, while the moral teaching of the Gospel is only for the Jews.

Regarding the discussion that the Holy Quran also compliments the good people from other nations.

1. Make not Allah a target for your oaths (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:225) [Publisher]
2. O ye who believe! render not vain your alms by taunt and injury (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:265). [Publisher]
3. Like him who spends his wealth to be seen of men, and he believes not in Allah and the Last Day. His case is like the case of a smooth rock covered with earth, on which heavy rain falls, leaving it bare, smooth and hard (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:265). [Publisher]
4. They are not all alike. Among the People of the Book there is a party who stand firm by their covenant; they recite the word of Allah in the hours of night and prostrate themselves before Him. They believe in Allah and the Last Day, and enjoin what is good and forbid evil, and hasten, vying with one another, in good works. And these are among the righteous. (Sūrah Āl-e-'Imrân, 3:114–115). [Publisher]
1. O ye who believe! take not others than your own people as intimate friends; they will not fail to corrupt you. They love to see you in trouble. Hatred has already shown itself through the utterances of their mouths, and what their breasts conceal is greater still. We have made clear to you Our commandments, if you will understand. Behold, you are those who love them, but they love you not. And you believe in all the Book. When they meet you, they say, ‘We believe;’ but when they are alone, they bite their finger-tips at you for rage. Say, ‘Perish in your rage. Surely, Allah knows well what is hidden in your breasts.’ (Sūrah Āl-e-‘Imrān, 3:119–120). [Publisher]

2. Dost thou not know of those who hold themselves to be pure? Nay, it is Allah Who purifies whomsoever He pleases, and they will not be wronged a whit (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:50). [Publisher]

3. Verily, Allah commands you to make over the trusts to those entitled to them, and that, when you judge between men, you judge with justice. And surely excellent is that with which Allah admonishes you! Allah is All-Hearing, All-Seeing (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:59). [Publisher]

4. Whoso makes a righteous intercession shall have a share thereof, and whoso makes an evil intercession, shall have a like portion of evil consequences thereof; and Allah is Powerful over everything (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:86). [Publisher]
Allah is the Guardian over everything.

1. And whoso kills a believer intentionally, his reward shall be Hell wherein he shall abide. And Allah will be wroth with him and will curse him and will prepare for him a great punishment (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:94) [Publisher]

2. Say not to anyone who greets you with the greeting of peace, ‘You are not a believer.’ (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:95) [Publisher]

3. And who is better in faith than he who submits himself to Allah, and he is a doer of good, and follows the religion of Abraham (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:126). [Publisher]

4. And reconciliation is best (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:129). [Publisher]

5. O ye who believe! Be strict in observing justice, being witnesses for the sake of Allah, even though it be against your selves or against parents and kindred (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:136). [Publisher]

6. O ye who believe! Believe in Allah and His Messenger, and in the Book which He has revealed to His Messenger, and the Book which He revealed before it. And whoso disbelieves in Allah and His angels, and His Books, and His Messengers, and the Last Day, has surely strayed far away (Sūrah an-Nisā’, 4:137). [Publisher]
If they believe as you have believed, then are they surely guided; but if they do not believe in such a way, then they are a people who does not want to stop opposing or does not want to seek peace.
1. Why should Allah punish you, if you are thankful and if you believe? And Allah is Appreciating, All-Knowing. (Surah an-Nisā’, 4:148). [Publisher]

2. Verily the Messiah, Jesus, son of Mary, was only a Messenger of Allah and a fulfilment of His word which He sent down to Mary, and a mercy from Him. So believe in Allah and His Messengers, and say not ‘they are three’. Desist, it will be better for you (Surah an-Nisā’, 4:172). [Publisher]

3. This day have I perfected your religion for you and completed My favours upon you and have chosen for you Islam as religion. (Surah al-Mā’idah, 5:4). [Publisher]

4. O ye who believe! Be steadfast in the cause of Allah, bearing witness in equity; and let not a people’s enmity incite you to act otherwise than with justice. Be always just, that is nearer to righteousness. And fear Allah. Surely Allah is aware of what you do. (Surah al-Mā’idah, 5:9). [Publisher]

5. Verily, Allah enjoins justice, and he doing of good to others; and giving like kindred (Surah an-Nahl, 16:91). [Publisher]

6. O ye who believe! intoxicants and games of chance and idols and divining arrows are only an abomination of Satan’s handiwork. So shun each one of them that you may prosper (Surah al-Mā’idah, 5:91). [Publisher]
...its vegetation does not come forth but little...

Suurah al-'Arâf, Page 215

And never did We send a Messenger to any township but that,

1. Say, 'If you love Allah, follow me: then will Allah love you... (Surah Al-e-'Imrân, 3:32) [Publisher]

2. Say, 'My Prayer and my sacrifice and my life and my death are all for Allah, the Lord of the worlds (Surah al-An'am, 6:163). [Publisher]

3. Surely, he prospers who augments it; And he who corrupts it is ruined (Surah ash-Shams, 91:10–11). [Publisher]

4. But whoso is blind in this world will be blind in the Hereafter (Surah Banî Isrâ'il, 17:73). [Publisher]

5. And He it is Who sends the winds as glad tidings before His mercy, till, when they bear a heavy cloud, We drive it to a dead land, then We send down water therefrom, and We bring forth therewith fruits of every kind. In like manner do We bring forth the dead that you may remember. And as for the good land, its vegetation comes forth plentifully by the command of its Lord; and that which is bad, its vegetation does not come forth but scantily. In like manner do We vary the Signs for a people who are grateful (Surah al-'Arâf, 7:58–59). [Publisher]

6. Surah al-'Arâf, 7:95 [Publisher]
when they rejected, We seized them with famine and epidemic so that they may show humility as a result of it.

This Prophet enjoins that which is not contrary to reason, and forbids that which reason also forbids. And makes lawful the good things and declares the bad things to be unlawful, and removes the burden from the heads of nations under which they were buried and he delivers them from the shackles around their necks due to which the necks

1. Then We changed their evil condition into good until they grew in affluence and number and said, ‘Suffering and happiness betided our fathers also.’ Then We seized them suddenly, while they perceived not (Sūrah al-ʿArāf, 7:96). [Publisher]

2. And if the people of those towns had believed and been righteous, We would have surely opened for them blessings from heaven and earth; but they disbelieved, so We seized them because of that which they used to earn. (Sūrah al-ʿArāf, 7:97). [Publisher]

3. Are the people of these towns secure from the coming of Our punishment upon them by night while they are asleep? Are the people of these towns secure from the coming of Our punishment upon them in the early part of the forenoon while they are engaged in play? (Sūrah al-ʿArāf, 7:98–99) [Publisher]

4. Sūrah al-ʿArāf, 7:158 [Publisher]
could not be straightened. So those who shall believe in him, and shall
strengthen him by joining him, and shall help him, and shall follow the
light that has been sent down with him—they shall be delivered from
the adversities of this world and the Hereafter.

Page 225, al-A’rāf, Part 9—1

And those who hold fast the Book, and establish Prayer, We suffer not
their reward to perish.

Page 229—3

The faculties of souls, which have the love of God ingrained in them,
testify in their very being that they have been created by God.

Hence if the question was to arise as to how we can believe in the
Holy Quran when there is contradiction between the two teachings,
the answer is that there is no contradiction, because the shurtis of the
Vedas have been interpreted in thousands of ways, and among them is
one interpretation that also concurs with the Holy Quran.

He who does not fear God treats a truth with such resistance as
though he were being dragged towards his death and was trying to save
his life.

Page 239, al-Anfāl, number 19—4

1. Say, ‘O mankind! Truly I am a Messenger to you all from Allah (Sūrah al-
A’rāf, 7:159). [Publisher]
2. Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:171 [Publisher]
3. Sūrah al-A’rāf, 7:173 [Publisher]
4. Sūrah al-Anfāl, 8:30 [Publisher]
(Translation) O ye who believe! If you adopt taqwâ [righteousness], God will create a distinction between you and others, and will purify you, and will forgive you sins; and your God is Lord of great bounty.

**NOTE:** Faith and religion is not a merely a verbal phenomenon. Rather, just as gold is recognized by its qualities, so is the follower of a true religion recognized by the light he exhibits.

God destroys him who has been destroyed by evidence and keeps alive him who is sustained by evidence.

And if the opponents incline towards peace, you too should so incline, and put your trust in God...

And if they carry deceit in their heart at the time of reconciliation, then God is sufficient for you to counter that deceit.

---

1. Its *true* guardians are only those who are righteous (*Sūrah al-Anfāl*, 8:35). [Publisher]
2. *Sūrah al-Anfāl*, 8:62 [Publisher]
3. *Sūrah al-Anfāl*, 8:63 [Publisher]
4. Will you not fight a people who have broken their oaths, and who plotted
(Translation:) Fortunate are those who leave all else and turn to God, and are engrossed in His worship and keep busy in glorifying God, and go around the world in the path of God to proclaim His message, and bow before God, and prostrate—they are the believers who are given the glad tidings of salvation.

God has divided calamities, in His law of nature, into five categories: the Signs of calamity that cause fear; next is stepping into the
to turn out the Messenger, and they were the first to commence hostilities against you? Do you fear them? Nay, Allah is most worthy that you should fear Him, if you are believers (Sūrah at-Taubah, 9:13). [Publisher]

1. Say, if your fathers, and your sons, and your brethren, and your wives, and your kinsfolk, and the wealth you have acquired, and the trade whose dullness you fear, and the dwellings which you love are dearer to you than Allah and His Messenger and striving in His cause, then wait until Allah comes with His judgment; and Allah guides not the disobedient people (Sūrah at-Taubah, 9:24). [Publisher]

2. And pray for them; your prayer is indeed a source of tranquillity for them (Sūrah at-Taubah, 9:103) [Publisher]

3. They are the ones who turn to God in repentance, who worship Him, who praise Him, who go about in the land serving Him, who bow down to God, who prostrate themselves in Prayer, who enjoin good and forbid evil, and who watch the limits set by Allah. And give glad tidings to those who believe (Sūrah at-Taubah, 9:112) [Publisher]
calamity; then is the state of despair; and then the dark time of calamity; and then the dawn of the mercy of Allah. These are the five times that are symbolized in the five [daily] prayers.

[Publisher’s Note: The following are some objections and some facts that have been found in the Promised Messiah’s notes that he had written with regard to this article. He had intended to refute these objections and to shed light on these facts on the basis of the teachings of the Holy Quran. Similarly, some issues seem to have been taken from a Buddhist book that was under his review at that time and regarding which he wanted to write something.]

1. What is so novel in the revealed books that was not known before?

2. What scientific enigma have the Prophets solved that until then was unsolved?

3. The Prophets told nothing about the nature and substance of the soul, nor gave much of a description of the afterlife, nor could they


2. And who is more unjust than he who forges a lie against Allah or gives the lie to His Signs? Surely, the unjust shall not prosper (Sūrah al-An‘ām, 6:22). [Publisher]
give a detailed description of God. In biology, sleep is described as a natural phenomenon, but the Prophets have stated that there are other causes of sleep. أمنة النعاس [slumber of peace—Surah Al-e-'Imran, 3:155]

4. They did not resolve past errors nor did they solve complicated questions, and instead placed people in even greater confusion.

5. The moral teaching of the Buddha is superior to all.

6. When someone is separated from something that he loves, this becomes torture for him.

7. And if he finds something that he loves, this becomes a source of his bliss.  

8. The annihilation of desire leads to salvation.

9. In this world, salvation is at times achieved through correct knowledge, at times through correct action, at times through correct speech, and at times through correct conduct. At times, fair dealing with people becomes the cause of salvation, and sometimes a good relationship with God rids one of pain and suffering. And sometimes one pain serves to redeem other pains.

10. Speak the truth. Do not tell a lie. Shun things that are absurd. Do not hurt anyone, either with your deed or your word. Keep your life pure, do not backbite nor slander anyone. Do not let carnal passions overwhelm you. Get rid of malice and jealousy. Purify your heart of rancour. Do not do to your enemy what you would not

1. And a barrier will be placed between them and that which they long for (Surah Saba', 34:55) [Publisher]
want done to yourself. Do not advise others to do what you yourself do not act upon. Keep trying to increase your knowledge and understanding. Free your heart from ignorance. Do not be hasty in levelling objections at someone.

Hate does not remove hate but only increases it further. Love cools hatred and does away with it.

Meaning that purifying the hearts is the true sacrifice. The sacrifice of flesh and blood is not true sacrifice. While common people sacrifice animals, the elect sacrifice their [own] hearts.

But God has also not stopped these sacrifices so that it may be known that these sacrifices, too, are related to man.

God has described the good things of Paradise in the guise of things that were cherished by the Arabs so that their hearts would be drawn towards it. In reality, those things are of a different nature and not things of this world. But it was necessary to describe them in this way so that the hearts may be drawn towards them.

He who remains preoccupied in fulfilling his carnal desires utterly destroys himself. But he who walks on the true path, not only his body but his soul too will attain salvation.

He who remains preoccupied in fulfilling his carnal desires utterly destroys himself. He not only puts his body in peril but destroys his soul as well. But he who walks on the right path and is not the follower

---

1. Sūrah al-Ḥajj, 22:38 [Publisher]
2. A description of the Garden promised to the righteous (Sūrah Muḥammad, 47:16). [Publisher]
of his carnal passions not only saves his body from destruction but leads his soul to salvation as well.

1. Surely, he prospers who augments it, and he who corrupts it is ruined (Sūrah ash-Shams, 91:10–11). [Publisher]

2. And as a Summoner to Allah by His command, and as a radiant Lamp (Sūrah al-Ahzāb, 33:47). [Publisher]

3. Allah knows best where to place His Message (Sūrah al-An‘ām, 6:125) [Publisher]

4. They are deaf, dumb and blind; so they will not return (Sūrah al-Baqarah, 2:19). [Publisher]

5. Aye! It is in the remembrance of Allah that hearts can find comfort (Sūrah ar-Rad, 13:29). [Publisher]

6. And remembrance of Allah indeed is the greatest virtue (Sūrah al-‘Ankabūt, 29:46). [Publisher]

There were 100 houses in a village but only one had a burning lamp. When people learnt of this they brought their lamps and all of them lit their lamps with that lamp. In the same way, one light can multiply. Referring to this God Almighty says:

2. وَلِلْحَمَّالِ إِلَى الْمُهْتَدِيِّينَ وَلِيُعْلَمَ أَنَّهَا رَجْلٌ

Man does not own even his life, let alone be the owner of wealth. A spoon cannot taste the syrup even though it is dipped into it many times. A sweetmeat reaches the mouth by means of the hands, but the hands cannot taste the sweetmeat. In the same way, one who has not been granted the required senses by God derives no benefit even by becoming the medium for it:

4. يَرْجِعُوْنَ لَا فَهُمْ عُمْيٌ بُكْمٌ صُمٌّۢ

A greater pleasure makes one oblivious to a lesser pleasure, as Allah the Almighty says:

6. أَلَا يُؤْتَى الْمُؤْتَىٰ الْقُلُوبُ تَطْمَىِٕنُّ اللّٰهِ بِذِكْرِ اَلَا
(1) Faith is the seed; (2) Righteous deeds are the rain; and (3) Striving—
physical and spiritual—are the plough, the self that reproaches itself
being the disciplined ox, and the Shariah being the stick that drives
it—the harvest growing therefrom being Eternal Life.

An outcast is one who is devoid of righteous qualities, because it is
the righteous qualities of a person that constitute his personality. There
are very few who understand the inner promptings of their hearts.
Things in which they perceive their prosperity are not really the means
to prosperity.

He who does not counter evil with evil, but forgives, is undoubt-
edly worthy of praise. But even more praiseworthy is he who is not
constrained by forgiveness or retribution, but abides by God and does
what is appropriate for the occasion, because God, too, treats everyone
commensurate with his condition. He punishes the one who deserves
to be punished and forgives one who deserves forgiveness.

Two groups are plentiful in the world. One is those who like justice,
and the second is those who favour benevolence. And the third group
is those who are so overwhelmed by true sympathy that they are no
longer bound by the norms of justice or benevolence. Rather, guided
by true sympathy, they act as is appropriate for the occasion. This is just
like a mother’s treatment of her child, who gives sweet and delicious
food to him, but when necessary gives him bitter medicine, too, and in
both conditions her...

1. The recompense of an injury is an injury the like therefore; but whoso for-
gives and his act brings about reformation, his reward is with Allah (Surah
ash-Shura, 42:41). [Publisher]
In my discourse, there will not be a single word against the British Government. We are grateful to this government because we have found peace and comfort from it. I find it necessary to say this much with regard to my claim that I have not come on my own but have been sent by the will of God so that I may remove misconceptions, clarify obscure matters, and show the light of Islam to other nations. Let it be known that the unattractive face of Islam that is being projected by our opponents is not the true face of Islam. In fact, Islam is such a brilliant diamond that every side of it is brilliant. It is like a grand palace with many lamps, one being visible from one window and another from another corner.

The same is true of Islam. Its heavenly light is not just observable from one aspect; rather, its eternal lamps are visible from every vantage. Its teaching is itself a lamp, and its spiritual prowess is itself a lamp, and the signs of God’s succour that accompany it are each a lamp. And the one who comes from God to demonstrate its truth is also a lamp.

The greater part of my life has been spent studying the books of other nations, and I say it in all truth that I have not found the teaching of any other religion—be it with regard to doctrine, morality, social management, state politics or the doing of good deeds—to equal the exposition of the Holy Quran. I do not say this because I am a Muslim; rather, the truth forces me to give this testimony. And my testimony is not ill-timed. Indeed, it comes at time when a battle of religions has begun in the world. I have been given the tiding that Islam will finally emerge victorious from this battle. I do not say earthly things, for I am not from the earth, I say only that which God has put into my mouth. Worldly people might think that perhaps in the end the Christian faith will prevail in the world or the Buddhist faith will become dominant in the world, but they are mistaken in this notion.

Bear in mind, nothing transpires on earth until it has been decreed in Heaven. And so, the God of Heaven tells me that the religion of Islam will conquer the hearts in the end. And in this battle of religions I have been commanded to warn those who are looking for the Ħakam
[Arbiter]. My case is like that of a person who warns of some robbers who want to attack a village while it is unaware. Therefore, anyone who listens to him saves his possessions from the transgression of those robbers, and he who does not listen is ruined.

In our times there are two kinds of robbers—some come from the outside and some from within. And only the one who does not store his possessions in a place of safety is destroyed. In this age, the way to save the wealth of faith is to be aware of the excellences of Islam, to be aware of the spiritual prowess of Islam, to be aware of the living miracles of Islam, and be aware of the person who would be appointed as the shepherd for the sheep of Islam, because the old wolf is still alive—it is not dead. When it sees a sheep straying away from the shepherd it will surely snatch it away.

O creatures of God! You know that when there is a drought and it does not rain for a long time, its ultimate effect is that even the wells start to dry up. So just as in the physical realm, where heavenly water causes earthly water to well up, in the same way, in the spiritual realm, it is the heavenly water (i.e. revelation from God) that brings vitality to earthly intellects. And so, this age too stood in need of heavenly water.

I consider it necessary to say this much with regard to my claim that I have been sent by God at the very time of need. In this age many took on the character of the Jews, and not only bade farewell to virtue and righteousness but, like the Jews in the time of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā, became the enemies of truth; and so, as against them, God named me the Messiah. It is not just that I invite the people of this age to myself; rather the age itself has invited me.
Ahl-e-Bait  The members of the household of the Holy Prophet

Allāhu Akbar  Arabic expression meaning ‘Allah is the Greatest.’

Āryah Samāj  A Hindu sect founded by Pundit Dayanand in 1875. Their first and foremost belief is that Parmeshwar [God] is not the Creator of matter and souls. Rather, that all of these things are eternal and self-subsisting like Parmeshwar.

Ašhābus-Ṣuffah  A term used for those indigent emigrants who lived in the Mosque of the Holy Prophet in Madinah and dedicated themselves to the worship of Allah, company of the Holy Prophet and recitation of the Holy Quran.

Auliya’  Plural of wāli. See Wāli

Avatār  A term in Hinduism referring to the appearance of a deity upon earth in reincarnated form.

Bai’at  An oath of allegiance to a religious leader; initiation at the hands of a Prophet or his Khalifah. Literally means ‘to be sold’.

Barāhin  Convincing arguments or proofs; the singular is burhān.

Brahmū Samāj  A Hindu revival movement that believes in the One God, but believes that reason alone is enough to guide mankind towards Him. They do not believe in divine revelation.

Dajjāl  An Arabic word literally meaning a ‘great deceiver’. In Islamic terminology Dajjāl refers to those satanic forces which would be unleashed in the Latter Days to oppose the Promised Messiah and Imam Mahdi.

Furqān  Another name for the Holy Quran, meaning the discrimination between right and wrong.

Ḥadīth  A saying of the Holy Prophet Muhammad. The plural is aḥādīth.

Ḥaḍrat  A term of respect used to show honour and reverence for a person of established righteousness and piety. The literal meaning is: His/Her Holiness, Worship, Eminence, etc. It is also used for God in the superlative sense.

Ḥakam  Arbiter. A title bestowed upon the Promised Messiah and Imam Mahdi by the Holy Prophet.

Ḥaqqul-Yaqīn  True certainty.
Holy Prophet Аа A title used exclusively for the Founder of Islam, Ḥadrat Muhammad Аа.

Holy Quran The final and perfect Scripture revealed by Allah for the guidance of mankind for all times to come. It was revealed word by word to the Holy Prophet Muhammad Аа over a period of twenty-three years.

Ijmā  A Concensus of Muslim scholars regarding a religious matter.

Istighfār Seeking forgiveness of Allah.

Jamā'at Community.

Ka'bah The first house built for the worship of God. Located in Makkah. Muslims face the Ka'bah while performing their daily Prayers and perform circuits around it as an act of devotion.

Kāfir Disbeliever.

Kazzāb Liar.

Khairul-Qurūn The Best of Centuries—of early Islam

Khalifatullāh Viceregent of God.

Khalq-e-Ākhar The sixth and highest stage of physical and spiritual development. Literally means ‘the other creation.’

Khātam-e-Nubuwwat Bearer of the Seal of Prophethood.

Khātam-e-Wilāyat Bearer of the Seal of Sainthood.

Khātam-ul-Anbiyā’ The Seal of the Prophets, a title accorded to the Holy Prophet Аа.

Kufr Disbelief.

La'nat Curse. Literally means ‘Absence of exaltation’.

Maulawī A Muslim religious cleric.

Mubāhalah A prayer duel.

Muḥaddith A scholar of the Hadith.

Muḥaddath A recipient of divine revelation. Plural is muḥaddathīn or muḥaddathūn.

Muḥaddith A scholar of the Hadith.

Muhammad Аа Founder of Islam. see Holy Prophet Аа.

Mujaddid A Reformer.

Nafs-e-ammarāh The self that incites to evil.

Nawwāb An honorific title ratified and bestowed by Mughal emperors to semi-autonomous Muslim rulers of princely states in South Asia. The female equivalent is ‘Begum’ or ‘Nawwab Begum’.

Parmeshwar A term in Hinduism for God, sometimes also written as Parmeshar.

Qasidah An ode.

Quran see Holy Quran.

Raḥim Merciful—an attribute of God as mentioned in Ṣūrah al-Āl Fātihah and throughout the Holy Quran.
The verbal noun of this attribute is *Raḥīmiyyat*.

**Raḥmān** Gracious—an attribute of God as mentioned in *Sūrah al-Fātiḥah* and throughout the Holy Quran. The verbal noun of this attribute is *Raḥmāniyyat*.

**Rubūbiyyat** The divine quality of sustaining or nurturing; the verbal noun of the attribute *Rabb* or 'Lord'.

**Shariah** Religious Law of Islam. The term is also used in a general sense for any religion’s revealed legal code.

**Shurtī** Any Vedic text.

**Sūrah** A chapter of the Holy Quran.

**Taba’ Tābi‘īn** The generation after that of the *Tābi‘īn*.

**Tābi‘īn** The generation of pious Muslims after the generations of the Companions.

**Tafrīd** Uniqueness.

**Takfīr** The practice of adjudging Muslims as non-Muslims, used chiefly by Muslims.

**Taqwā** Righteousness.

**Tauhīd** The Oneness of God—the fundamental Islamic belief that there is none worthy of worship except Allah.

**Tawāf** To perform circuit.

**Vedas** The most ancient Hindu scriptures, written in Sanskrit and containing hymns, philosophy, and guidance on rituals for the priests of the Vedic religion. There are four Vedas—Rigveda, Samaveda, Yajurveda, and Atharvaaveda.

**Walāyat** The state of being a friend of God, or *walīyyullāh*.

**Wāli** Literally, ‘friend’. In the terminology of Islamic mysticism, it refers to a very pious person or a friend of Allah. The singular form is *wāli* [friend] or *walīyyullāh* [friend of Allah], the plural form is *auliyā‘ullāh* which is sometimes abbreviated as *aulīya‘*.
BIBLICAL AND QURANIC NAMES

Names of Prophets

Ādam  Adam
Dāwūd  David
Ibrāhīm  Abraham
Ibn-e-Maryam  Son of Mary (Jesus)
Ilyās  Elijah
‘Īsā  Jesus
Ismā‘īl  Ishmael
Masih  Messiah
Muḥammad  Muhammad
Mūsā  Moses
Nūḥ  Noah
Yaḥyā  John the Baptist
Sulaimān  Solomon
Ya‘qūb  Jacob
Yasū‘  Jesus
Yasū‘ā  Joshua [son of Nun]
Yūnus  Jonah
Yūsuf  Joseph
Zakariyyā  Zachariah
Other Foreign Names

Dhul-Qarnain Lit. One who lives in two centuries or one with two horns. Historical figure mentioned in the Holy Quran. Also contains a prophecy about the Promised Messiah.

Hāmān Senior official of Pharaoh

Khīḍr A divine who met Moses

Maryam Mary

Ya’jūj and Ma’jūj Gog and Magog.

Zulaikhā Potiphar’s wife.
Index of the Verses of the Holy Quran

Chapter 1, al-Fātihah
verse 6–7 .................. 399, 405, 475
verse 7 ..................... 90, 537, 538

Chapter 2, al-Baqarah
verse 3 .......................... 313
verse 11 .......................... 303
verse 19 .......................... 562
verse 24 .......................... 261
verse 25 .......................... 511
verse 31 .......................... 139
verse 35 .......................... 301
verse 37 .......................... 395, 522
verse 113 .......................... 48
verse 137 .......................... 552
verse 138 .......................... 552
verse 156–157 .................. 308
verse 187 .......................... 548
verse 201 .......................... 548
verse 208 .......................... 548
verse 209 .......................... 548
verse 225 .......................... 549
verse 257 .......................... 547
verse 265 .......................... 549
verse 272 .......................... 547
verse 275 .......................... 548
verse 287 .......................... 372

Chapter 3, al-Îmran
verse 32 .......................... 554
verse 56: 391, 426, 467, 468, 469,
470, 486, 487, 504
verse 60 .......................... 67, 525
verse 82 .......................... 396
verse 114–115 .................. 549
verse 119–120 .................. 550
verse 145–74, 378, 427, 502, 518
verse 170 .......................... 516

Chapter 4, an-Nisâ’
verse 50 .......................... 550
verse 59 .......................... 550
verse 86 .......................... 550
verse 94 .......................... 551
verse 95 .......................... 551
verse 126 .......................... 551
verse 129 .......................... 551
verse 136 .......................... 551
verse 137 .......................... 551
verse 141 .......................... 552
verse 148 .......................... 553
verse 151–152 .................. 552
verse 158: 455, 456, 457, 459, 461,
509
verse 158–159: 70, 456, 464, 465,
504
verse 159 .......................... 72, 459, 460
verse 160 .......................... 539
verse 166 .......................... 552
verse 172 .......................... 553

Chapter 5, al-Mâ’idah
verse 4 ............................. xiii, 3, 4, 553
verse 9 ............................. 553
verse 14 ............................. 391
verse 15 ............................. 539
verse 65 ............................. 539
verse 76 ............................. 520
verse 91 ............................. 553
verse 117 .......................... 229
verse 118: 68, 69, 375, 426, 522,
530, 532
verse 120 .......................... 229

Chapter 6, al-An‘âm
verses 28 230
verse 22 ............................ 559
verse 31 ....................................... 230
verse 125 ..................................... 562
verse 163 ..................................... 554
Chapter 7, al-A'raf
verse 25 ....................................... 529
verse 26 ...................................... 395, 522, 529
verse 27 ....................................... 316
verse 41 ....................................... 73
verse 45 ....................................... 230
verse 58–59 ................................... 554
verse 95 ....................................... 554
verse 96 ....................................... 554
verse 97 ....................................... 555
verse 98–99 ................................... 555
verse 144 ...................................... 252
verse 158 ....................................... 555
verse 159 ....................................... 556
verse 171 ....................................... 556
verse 173 ..................................... 279, 556
verse 199 ....................................... 302
Chapter 8, al-Anfâl
verse 30 ....................................... 556
verse 35 ....................................... 557
verse 62 ....................................... 557
verse 63 ....................................... 557
Chapter 9, at-Taubah
verse 13 ....................................... 558
verse 24 ....................................... 558
verse 103 ..................................... 558
verse 112 ..................................... 558
Chapter 10, Yûnus
verse 47 ....................................... 490, 507
Chapter 11, Hûd
verse 44 ....................................... 287
Chapter 12, Yûsuf
verse 25 ....................................... 321
verse 27 ....................................... 123, 126
verse 29 ....................................... 123
verse 34 ....................................... 123, 125, 126
verse 54 ....................................... 125, 286
verse 102 ..................................... 506
Chapter 13, ar-Ra'd
verse 29 ....................................... 562
Chapter 15, al-Ḥijr
verse 10 ....................................... 468
verse 48 ....................................... 229
verse 49 ....................................... 515
Chapter 16, an-Nâhâl
verse 21–22 ................................... 526
verse 91 ....................................... 553
Chapter 17, Bânî Isrâ'il
verse 73 ....................................... 232, 343, 554
verse 94 ....................................... 384, 499, 528
Chapter 18, al-Kahf
verse 85 ....................................... 148
verse 86 ....................................... 149
verse 87 ....................................... 146
verse 90–92 ................................... 150
verse 93–103 .................................. 151
verse 100 ..................................... 134
Chapter 19, Maryam
verse 58 ....................................... 513
Chapter 20, Tâ Hâ
verse 56 ....................................... 499
Chapter 21, al-Anbiyâ'
verse 8 ......................................... 384
verse 110 ..................................... 340
Chapter 22, al-Ḥajj
verse 38 ....................................... 561
verse 48 ....................................... 207
Chapter 23, al-Mu'minûn
verse 2–3 ....................................... 267, 313
verse 4 ....................................... 264, 276, 278, 279, 281
verse 5 ....................................... 264, 283, 284
verse 6 ....................................... 285
verse 9 ....................................... 264, 267, 288, 316, 324, 325
verse 10 ..................................... 264, 267, 293, 298, 318
verse 14 ....................................... 264, 265
verse 15 ................................ 227, 260, 262, 264, 265, 267, 276, 282, 287, 291, 297, 312, 317, 329
verse 51 ....................................... 534
verses 2–3 ................................... 264, 265, 279
verses 6–8 ................................... 264
Chapter 24, an-Nūr
verse 23 ........................................ 257
verse 56 ........................................ 135

Chapter 25, al-Furqān
verse 33 ........................................ 248

Chapter 26, ash-Shu‘arā’
verse 4 ........................................... 308
verse 63 ........................................... 122, 127

Chapter 27, an-Nāmīl
verse 35 ........................................... 322

Chapter 29, al-‘Ankābūt
verse 46 ........................................... 562
verse 58 ........................................... 512

Chapter 30, ar-Rūm
verse 2-4 ........................................... 249
verse 55 ........................................... 523

Chapter 32, as-Sajdah
verse 12 ........................................... 512

Chapter 33, al-‘Āhzāb
verse 12 ........................................... 343
verse 47 ........................................... 562
verse 73 ........................................... 324

Chapter 34, Saba’
verse 55 ........................................... 560

Chapter 36, Yā Sin
verse 21 ........................................... 515
verse 52 ........................................... 229

Chapter 38, Ṣād
verse 7 ............................................. 493
verse 51 ............................................. 73, 530

Chapter 40, al-Mu‘min
verse 61 ........................................... 308

Chapter 42, ash-Shūrā
verse 41 ........................................... 563

Chapter 47, Muḥammad
verse 16 ........................................... 561

Chapter 51, Adh-Dhāriyāt
verse 57 ........................................... 298

Chapter 53, an-Nājm
verse 9–10 ......................................... 302
verse 29 .......................................... 393

Chapter 54, al-Qamar
verse 3 ............................................. 106
verse 46 .......................................... 336

Chapter 55, ar-Raḥmān
verse 2–3 .......................................... 6

Chapter 61, ṣaḥ-Ṣaff
verse 3–4 ......................................... 559

Chapter 67, al-Mulk
verse 26–27 ...................................... 340

Chapter 72, al-Jinn
verse 27–28 ...................................... 111

Chapter 73, al-Muzzammil
verse 16 ........... 135, 335, 398, 535
verse 26 ........................................... 395
verse 26–27 ...................................... 528, 529

Chapter 79, an-Nāzi‘āt
verse 7–8 ........................................... 345, 350

Chapter 81, at-Takwīr
verse 5 ............................................. 481

Chapter 89, al-Fajr
verse 28–29 ...................................... 73
verse 28–31 ......................... 459, 512
verse 30 .......................................... 514
verse 31 .......................................... 513, 528

Chapter 91, ash-Shams
verse 10–11 ...................................... 554, 562

Chapter 99, az-Zilzāl
verse 2 ............................................. 217

Chapter 110, al-Naṣr
verse 2–4 .......................................... 362

Chapter 111, al-Lahab
verse 2–3 .......................................... 230, 243
**Index of Aḥādīth**

Actions are judged by their intentions 491
In the Latter Day the Star of Dhus-Sinīn [comet] will rise. 374
‘Īsā ibn Maryam [Jesus son of Mary] will descend 69
Khyber has been ruined. And inauspicious is the morning for the people who are warned—when we descend upon the courtyard of that people. 244
Majority of maulawīs in the Latter Days would develop similarity to the Jewish...to the extent that if a Jew had committed incest with his mother, they, too, would do the same. 370
O my Lord! If you were to destroy these people, none would worship You till Doomsday. 343
O our Lord, forgive us our sins and create a distance between us and our shortcomings. 362
O our Lord, we were not able to discharge the obligation of Your worship as was its due. 362
People would be barred from performing the Ḥāj in Latter Days 375
The Messiah to come would be known by the fact that he will be Dhul-Qarnain 147
There is no Mahdi except ‘Īsā. 478
The saintly ulema of my ummah are like the Prophets of the Israelites. 476
Two ailments afflicting the Promised Messiah 101
Whoever safeguards two of his limbs out of fear will go straight to Paradise by the grace of God; one is the tongue, the other the private parts. 29
Whosoever is an enemy to My friend, I warn him to prepare for combat with Me. 116
Your Imam from among you 135, 377, 391, 474
Allah the Exalted

Are you unaware that God has power to do all that He wills; nothing is impossible for Him? 112

God is He who sends down rain after people have despaired of it. After they have lost hope, He spreads His grace. And He chooses as Messenger and Prophet whomsoever of His servants He wishes. 121

He said, 'I know what you know not.' 105

I know what you know not. 105

They said: What! Wilt thou place in it such as shall make mischief in it? He said: I know what you do not know 349

Allah the Exalted, Commandments of

Say, I have with me proof from Allah, then will you not believe? 126

Say to them: “It matters not what you think, true guidance is indeed only that which comes directly from God Almighty”, as man is otherwise prone to distort the meaning of the Book of Allah with his erroneous judgement and arrive at all manner of ... 112

Say to them that I have with me the testimony of God, which is superior to the testimony of human beings; so will you or will you not believe in this testimony? 127

So say to them, ‘If you love Almighty God, then come follow me, that God too may love you, and know with certainty that God will revive this dead land’ 107

Tell them: I have come from Almighty God having been commissioned by Him, and I am the first of the believers. 88

Tell them that I have testimony from my Lord, which is superior to the testimony of human beings 124

Treat people with kindness and courtesy. You are among them like Mūsā, so be patient in the face of their uncouth remarks. 144

Allah the Exalted, Help of

And slacken not, nor grieve. Is not Allah sufficient for His servant? 112

A Warner came unto the world, but the world accepted him not; yet God shall accept him and demonstrate his truthful-
ness with mighty assaults. 250, 357, 396
Financial and material assistance shall come to me from everywhere and from far-off countries, and letters, too, shall come. 97
God has willed that it be exactly so and His help is nigh. The roads by which monetary assistance and letters of allegiance shall arrive, those streets shall become broken and rutted. 93
God is not such that He would leave you until He manifestly distinguishes the pure from the impure. And God prevails over every one of His decrees, but most know not the power of God. 102
God will help you from Himself. Such people will help you whose hearts We Ourself shall inspire from the heavens. 93
God will Himself save you even if people be bent on trying to ensnare you. 123
God will set all your affairs right and will bestow upon you all that you desire. 120
Have We not facilitated everything for you? 148
I am your Indispensable Helper and I am the Remedy for your anguish, and I am indeed the One who has given you life. I breathed into you the Spirit of Truth, and I put love into you from Myself. 113

It shall come about by the power of God for the support and succour of His servant? 355
You will be helped; divine support will be with you, and such support will it be that true reality will be openly manifest. 106

Allah the Exalted, Signs of
Do people marvel at this, wondering how this will come about? Then reply to them that manifesting marvellous Signs is the concern of God; He is not questioned about what He does, but people are so questioned. 107
Spring is here again, and again God’s word is fulfilled 347
When I help My Messenger, the one I have appointed, by sending down terrible and devastating Signs, it will be said to the deniers: ‘Say now whether I am your Lord or not?’ 118
When the help of Allah and victory comes and the world will turn towards me, it will be said: ‘Was this enterprise not from God? And despair not of the mercy of Allah.’ 118
Why do you marvel that God will bring this about like so? Was there not a time when you were absolutely non-existent and there was no trace of you in this world? Is it then beyond God’s power to grant you such help and bring about the fulfilment of... 93
Bai’at and Seeking of Forgiveness

Build an ark before My eyes and according to My command. Those who enter into ba’at [the pledge of allegiance] with you, enter into a covenant with Allah. It is the hand of God that is upon their hands. 140

They will fall down on their chins crying, ‘O God, we were wrongdoers and we have sinned; forgive us our sins.’ God will say, ‘There is no blame on you this day, for you have believed. God will forgive your sins for He is the Most Merciful of those who... 129

They will fall down prostrate on their faces, supplicating: Lord, forgive us, we were in error 349

They will supplicate: ‘O our Lord! We have heard the cry of a Caller, calling people to faith. So we have believed.’ Write down all these prophecies, for they will be fulfilled at the appointed time. 94

Companions of Promised Messiah

Give the glad-tiding to those who believe that in the eyes of God their steps are the steps of truth 93

There is a group from among the first ones and a group from among the last ones. 133

There will even be such people who will migrate from their homes to dwell in your quarters. These are the very ones who are called Aḥbāḥuṣ-Ṣuṭḥah in the estimation of Allah 93

Two goats shall be slaughtered 109

Demise of Promised Messiah, Revelations about

Your determined term of life is nearing its end, and We shall not leave any mention of anything concerning you which might become the occasion of your humiliation and reproach. 115

Your event will take place after all other happenings and natural wonders have been demonstrated. 115

Earthquake

A portion of this country will be so devastated that all its buildings will be obliterated 226

He will bring the mountain to testify to his innocence. And when He will manifest Himself upon the mountain, He will shatter it into pieces. And with this Sign He will frustrate the designs of those who deny. 117

Shock of earthquake 231, 237, 238, 246, 332, 333, 334, 336

Temporary residences and permanent ones will be wiped out 227, 231, 233, 235, 236, 237, 238, 242, 244, 245, 246, 247, 259, 332, 333, 334, 335, 336, 360, 361, 364, 365, 366, 367

There is death everywhere. 226

The rending asunder of the mountain shall be by the power
of God—in support of His servant. 358
We shall make it a Sign for the people. 356
We shall make the rending asunder of the mountain a Sign for the people. 355,358
When God shall manifest His Glory on the mountain, He will cause it to break asunder! 250, 354,369,372

Enemies of Promised Messiah, revelations about
As for those who are cruel and do not desist from their cruelty, do not address Me about them, for I will drown them. 108
Build an ark before My eyes and do not say anything to me by way of intercession for those who have transgressed. I shall cause them to drown. 140
I shall humiliate him who designs to humiliate you. 127
It did not behove him to interfere in this matter except with extreme caution 109
I will frustrate them in their designs, and will certainly protect you from their attacks. 108
O woman, repent! Repent, for a calamity is to befall the daughter of your daughter! 494
People will mock you and ask, ‘Is this the one whom God has raised? He is either a fool or a madman.’ 139
Remember the deceit of the deceiver, who will declare you a kafir and will deny your claim. He will get a companion of his
to make out a fatwa in reply to a requisition for one, in order to incite the people. Perished be the two hands of ... 108
Then will the opponents say: ‘Now there is nowhere to escape.’ They will say, ‘We are a large party who can retaliate.’ But soon will they run away turning their backs. Upon witnessing the Signs of God, they will say, ‘This is a clear deception.’ 106
These people have made you the target of their mockery, remarking sarcastically: “Is this the person who has been raised among us by God to invite us to Him?” Reply to them: “I am but a mortal like you. It is revealed to me that your God is One God... 112

Exalted Status of Promised Messiah
As for you, when you say concerning a thing, “Be!” then it happens. 153
Holy is God who augmented your eminence. He will cut off mention of your ancestors and will start the family from you. 142
Holy is He who took His servant on a journey during the night. 138
Holy is that God who bestows many blessings and is Most High. He has raised your status. The mention of your forefathers will be cut off and from now on the line of genealogical
descend shall originate from you. 102
I have breathed into you the Spirit of righteousness from Myself. 136
I love you. I will give you a large party of Islam. 131
The earth and heaven are with you as they are with Me. 102
You are before Our eyes [under Our watchful care]. God will exalt your praise and perfect His bounty upon you in this world and the Hereafter. 93
You are to Me like My Tawhid [Oneness] and Tafrîd [Uniqueness]. Thus has the time come when you will be helped and your name will be proclaimed throughout the world. 93
You have been blessed, O Ahmad, and the blessing that God has bestowed upon you, has been bestowed with truth. 141
You were indeed entitled to it. 141
Your status is wonderful and your reward is near. 102
Your status with Me is that which the world knows nothing of. 139

Friends of Allah the Exalted
The love of Allah rains down upon their face; this is the hallmark of the friends of God 305
The one who becomes God's, God becomes his. Say to them: ‘If I have falsely imputed against God, then I have committed a great sin for which I will be punished.’ 107

Holy Prophet as
Every blessing is from the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him. 483
His Holiness Muhammad—the Chosen One—is the Chief of all the Prophets. 120
Thus, greatly blessed is the person who taught—the Holy Prophet, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon him—and, thereafter, greatly blessed is the one who was taught—this humble one. 483

Holy Quran, Promised Messiah’s knowledge of
It is God who taught you the Quran—He informed you of its true meaning —so that you might warn a people whose ancestors had not been warned, and so that the way of the guilty ones might become manifest and they may be held accountable for rejecting you. 88

Names and Honours bestowed upon Promised Messiah
And so did We have mercy on this Yusuf, so that We may ward off and turn away from him all the sin and indecency that had been imputed to him. 121
And We cast a look upon this Ibrâhîm and said, “O fire, be-
come a source of coolness and peace for Ibrāhīm!" 143
Enter Paradise O Maryam, you and your companion. 136
He created Ādam and thus honoured him. 138
I desired to establish a Khalīfah [Vicegerent] of Mine upon the earth, so I created this Ādam. 104
I willed that I should create My Vicegerent, so I created Ādam 138
May peace be upon you, O Ibrāhīm. 141
Names and Honours bestowed upon Promised Messiah 136
O ‘Īsa! I am with you. I have planted the tree of My mercy and omnipotence for you, and I will deliver you from every sorrow. Before that, however, I shall cause many trials to come your way so that you may be thoroughly tested and... 113
O Ahmad! God has blessed you. You did not throw when you threw, but it was Allah who threw. 87
O Ahmad, you have been blessed and this blessing was indeed yours by right. 102
O Ibrāhīm Stay away from him; he is not a good person. You are only an admonisher and are not a keeper over them. 142
O ‘Īsa, I will cause you to die, and exalt you towards Me, and demonstrate your innocence, and I will cause your followers to prevail over your deniers till the Day of Judgment. 119
O ‘Īsa, I will cause you to die and will raise you to Myself like believers. 485
O Maryam, I have breathed into you the spirit of truth. 484
O Mary! You and the one who is your companion, enter both into Paradise. 484
O My Ahmad! You are My purpose and remain with Me. I have planted the tree of your greatness with My own hand—in other words, you are truthful and are from Me, so I will bestow upon you great honour and prestige among the people. 107
O Yūsuf, say to those who accuse you that I have with me the testimony of God that proves my innocence; will you or will you not accept this testimony? Also say to them that I cannot be made guilty by any of your calumnies, for my God is with me... 122
Peace unto this Ibrāhīm. Our love for him is pure and without blemish. We shall save him from sorrow. And this love is unique to Us; none else can show such love. 142
The Messenger of God in the mantle of all the past Prophets 145, 146
The Messenger of God in the mantle of all the past Prophets, may peace and blessings of Allah be upon them. 144
Prayers
O God, I pray to You to deliver me and release me from difficulties. We have delivered. 130
Pray, "O God! I am overcome; they are many and I am alone. They are a horde, so arise Yourself to confront them on my behalf. O my Lord! O my Lord! Why have You forsaken me?" 112

Promises of Allah the Exalted
And they remark: 'How will you be granted this rank? This appears to be your own fabrication.' Say, 'Nay! These are promises from God,' then leave them in their sport and play; that is, whatever suspicions they entertain, let them continue to do so. 108
God will give you a great and openly manifest victory, so that He may forgive your past and future sins. 113
I have done this so that you may be brought up before My eyes and may flourish in My presence. You are like the seed sown in the soil; it was just a tiny grain concealed within the dust, but then it began to sprout and grow day by day until it became... 113
I shall demonstrate My light and shall raise you with a demonstration of My power. 250
I shall give you a large party of Islam. 130

Is not Allah Sufficient for His servant? He will clear him of all the charges that will be levelled against him. He has a high standing in the estimation of God. 117
I will free you of all the objections and accusations of the deniers. 119
Jump with joy and happiness upon the earth for your time is nigh and the feet of the Muhammadis have been planted firmly on a lofty and secure tower. 119
People would throng to me from far-off places, so that the roads they travel upon would be rutted. 97
Recite to them whatever has been revealed to you from your Lord. Remember that a time is coming that people will come to you in large numbers. It is incumbent upon you not to be discourteous towards them and you must not get tired of receiving them in... 93
Your Lord will cover you with His shadow; He will hear your supplication and have mercy on you. And even if people do not wish to save you, God will yet save you. God will absolutely protect you, even though people intend to entrap you. 108
Your progeny will spread throughout the world and your fame will spread across nations. You will be the foundation stone of your family's edifice. 102
### Index of Topics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>'Abdullāh Ātham</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>demonstrated fear of, on hearing the prophecy about his death</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>difference between, and Lekh Rām</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdullah bin Abī Sarāh</td>
<td>330</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misguided way of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdul Latīf, Maulawī</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>martyrdom of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Abdur-Raḥmān</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>martyrdom of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstinence</td>
<td>195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unblessed, not the spirit of Islam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absurd preoccupations</td>
<td>320</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turning away from, at second spiritual stage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abū Bakr</td>
<td>503</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>argument made by, precludes return of Jesus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Companions agreed on the death of all Messengers at the time of 73</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>response of, to Holy Prophet's prayer during Badr</td>
<td>343</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>role in bringing about the first consensus</td>
<td>378</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wisdom and leadership shown by, upon the demise of Holy Prophet</td>
<td>502</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ādam</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philosophy behind giving the name, to Promised Messiah</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re-advent of 158</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>significance of submission to</td>
<td>301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adultery</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abomination of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aḥmad Baig</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional nature of the prophecy about the daughter of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aḥmadiyya Jamā‘at</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>will live long and prosper</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Ā‘ishah</td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>malicious calumny against</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘Ala‘qah</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>definition and characteristics of,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second stage of development of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Allah the Exalted. see God Almighty</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>help of, 167</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wonderful works of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anecdotes</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>abound in other faiths</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argument</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for truth of Islam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrogance</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letting go of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atheists</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>humbled by earthquake</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Awâ
meaning and significance of the word 534

Awe of God
creates humility in the heart 319

Bai‘at (pledge of allegiance)
is the ark to save lives and faith 140

Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya
anonymity of Promised Messiah at the time of, 196
conditions during the writing of, 98
introduced 87, 92, 98, 100, 102, 130
name of fifth part of, 8
names used for Promised Messiah in, 143
prophecies in, 180
prophecy in, about two groups of converts 133
wisdom underlying the delay in, 2, 6, 7

Batâlawi, Maulawî Muḥammad Ḥussain
brazenness, audacity, and temerity of 356
sincere advice to, 387
wicked schemes of, against Promised Messiah 387

Battle of Badr
Divine verdict in, 253

Brahmū Samājists
beliefs of 409

British Government
freedom of religion under, 388
instigations by Muḥammad Ḥussein to, 388

Calamity
prophecy of an unprecedented 248

Carnal passions
a righteous person develops a repulsion for the forbidden, 322
renunciation of unlawful, in fourth stage of spirituality 285, 315, 319

Certainty
of faith, attained through Signs 80

Christians
corrupted after the death of Jesus 375
enmity between, and Jews 540
erroneous belief that Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā was cursed for three days 71

Clerics
false assertion of, that door of revelation is closed 408

Companions
consensus of, on death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā 536
consensus of, that all earlier Prophets have died 502

Consensus
the first, in Islam 377

Criminal cases
successful outcome for Promised Messiah in all 388

Cross
dying upon, considered accursed by Jews 70
suspicion and not reality of death of Ḥaḍrat ‘Īsā upon, 70

Crucifixion
amounts to negation of spiritual exaltation 72

Day of Judgment
believing merely in, does not denote faith 62

Denial of the Messiah
visible consequences of, 184
Devotion and obedience
necessary for the seeker of prayer
311

Dha‘b (sin)
meaning of, when used for the
elect of God 115

Dharamshala
Prophesied collapse of temples
in, 244

Dhul-Qarnain
Name applicable to Promised
Messiah 147
Promised Messiah is 412
significance of the name 147
story of, in Holy Quran 411

Divine converse and discourse
descend upon pure hearts 406
is a means of realizing God’s
existence and powers 406

Dreams
interpretation of going to heaven
with physical body 498

Earth
destined to be the abode for the
living and dead humans 395
every human shall die in 499

Earthquake
humbled the hearts of people
280
magnificence of the prophecy
about, xiv, 231, 237, 238, 246
prophecy about, details in 342
prophecy of a severe, 217
prophesied devastation caused by,
of 1904 125
repeated announcements of, 238
repeated publication of prophecy
about, 360

Elect of God
dearer to Him than an only child
to a mother 309

Envy
and deprivation of reason,
thought, and reflection 198

Exaggerations
introduced into Islamic concepts
132

Exaltation
erroneous interpretation of, by
Christians 71
meanings of, 72

Faith
characteristics of, 7, 13
requires believing when there is
some aspects hidden 62

Faqirs of Islam
ever practices of, 270
pretence of many 273

Favour of God Almighty
two kinds of, 268

First stage of development
characteristics of, 266
risks of loss in, 265
success in, depends entirely on
establishing a relationship with
Merciful God 271

Forgiveness
of God Almighty, sought by
Prophets. 363

Friends of Allah
granted miracles to establish their
distinction. 61
hallmark of a, 305

Frivolities
abstention from, in second stage
of spirituality 281
attraction with, during childhood
272

Furqân. see Holy Quran
Gangohi, Rashid Ahmad
absurdities of 497
review book of, 497
Garments
the word used for both physical and spiritual embellishment 316

Glorious manifestation
prophecy of, in Barahin-e-Ahmadiyya 251

God Almighty 43, 49
astonishing response of, to those with spiritual beauty 307
complete faith in, depends upon Signs 80
concept of, in other religions 14
descent of, in perfect men of God 84
expressions of love and support for Promised Messiah 113
faith in, 7
gratitude to, is beyond expression 11
has ordained the trial of apostacy to bestow even greater love 109
love of, for Prophet Ibrāhīm 142
miraculous life of a righteous person is proof of the existence of, xiv, 56
not obligated to fulfil any promise 344
promises of help and succour to Promised Messiah 91, 112
Sign from, in support of Promised Messiah 29
teaching from, 5
those who love, 22
undertakes the growth of the righteous 57
union with, 19

God-fearing
do not need too many Signs to be guided 162

God’s personal love
beauty of 300

God’s relationship with the believer
friendly nature of 308

Gospel
distortion of, by Christians 352
has nowhere claimed perfection 4
on the re-advent of Isā 535

Hades
Christian belief that Ḥaḍrat Isā went to, for three days 71

Hadith
of maulawīs of Latter Days resembling Jewish divines 370

Ḥakam (Arbiter)
rationale for the coming of Promised Messiah as 74
reason for obeying 503

Ḥaqquqyaqīn
attained through Signs 57

Ḥassān bin Thābit
elegy of 379

Heaven
gates of, opened for the believers 529
no elemental body will enter 529

Heedlessness
of opponents does not wear off, despite repeated admonitions 182

Ḥijajul-Kirāmah
on the destined life of a Mujaddid for 25 years into the century 390

Holy Prophet 43, 535
conditions in early days of being commissioned 91
dream about migration from Makkah 241
erlier view of, of migration to Yamāmah or Hijr 251
full accomplishment of his goal in his lifetime 386
istighfār of, 362
mention of, in Torah 3
named as like of Mūsā 401
passionate prayers of, 308
prayer during the battle of Badr 343
Prophecy in Torah in accord with Holy Quran 535
some dreams of, and their interpretation 500

Holy Quran 328
a miracle of knowledge 311
came to eradicate errors and adjudicate between Jews and Christians 70
claim of perfection regarding Islam xiii, 3
defeats satanic insinuations 11
exortations for love of God 194
guidance for those who are righteous 313
is proven to be Word of God 13, 311
miraculousness of 311, 329
on change in sovereignty 322
on spiritual ascension of believers 73
on the death of all false deities 526
praise for, 11
proclaims that ʻĪsā died a natural death 501, 504
prophecy about severe agitations upon the earth 344
prophecy in, about Latter Days 133
righteousness needed to benefit from 313

Holy Spirit
and God’s personal love are the same 317
at sixth spiritual stage bestows light and understanding beyond human power 326
descent of 326
help of, to the righteous 57
reason for special mention of, with reference to Ḥaḍrat ʻĪsā 524

Hūdaibiyah
journey of 251

Human Beings
created for a high purpose of loving God 298
no one unique in creation 67

Humility
causes for the futility of 270
does not, in itself, indicate a relationship with God 280
in prayer, is the first movement towards success 313
is like a seed for future excellences 281
sometimes created by the descent of calamities 319

Ibn al-ʻArabi
on descent of ʻĪsā in a new manifestation 386

Ibrāhīm
blessings of Allah upon 141

Idolatrous creed
adopted by St. Paul 77

Ignorance
combined with ill-thinking, blows faith away 166

Ikrāmullah Khān of Shahjahanpur
critique of 259

Ill-thinking
consequences of, about Prophets 128
damage done by 165
is at the root of man’s ill fortune, 167
Ilyâs (Elijah)
interpretation of Jesus of the
descent of 382
prophesied return of 60
Imâm Mâlik
on the death of Îsâ 71, 385
Impostor
inevitable end of an, 197
never helped by God 175
‘Îsâ [Jesus]
belief of being alive contrary to
Holy Quran and Ahâdîth 119, 504, 521, 537
Christians’ belief about 525
death of, according to Holy
Quran 375
death of, the real issue of contention 497
distinctions attributed to him by
our opponents 523
false deification of 527
Holy Quran speaks categorically
of the death of 68, 522
idolatrous adulation ignorant
people have for 351
incompleteness of his teachings 4
irrationality of belief in ascension
of 76
literal re-advent ridicules Islam 396
philosophy of giving the name, to
an Ummati 536, 537, 538, 539
prophesied to be the last Prophet
in the House of Isrâ’îl 357
raised towards God with a
spiritual, not physical, body
530
reason for the title of, for last the
Khalifah in Islam 535
reasons why Jews declared him
accursed 75
similarity with Âdâm 68
victim of the misguided 75
will not return, according to Holy
Quran 376
Ishmaelites
destined to be parallel to the
Israelites 398
erected in the image of the Israelite
dispensation 399
Islam
argument for proving truth of, 4
claim of perfection of, xiii, 3
life of, depends upon Jesus’ death
536
plight of, because of mistaken
notions 378
Islamic morality
forgiveness a part of, 257
Islamic worship
denied and ridiculed by some so-called Muslims 132
Istighfâr
reason for, of Holy Prophet and
other Prophets 359
Jahûl
defined 324
Jews
almost all, considered ‘Îsâ an
impostor 65
awaiting for two Messiahs 381
believe that ‘Îsâ was accursed 71
denial of ‘Îsâ, due to literal inter-
pretation of prophecies 59
derived no benefit from ‘Îsâ’s
miracles 60
distortions of, mentioned in Holy
Quran 366
enmity between, and Christians
540
in the Latter Days some people
of this ummah would become
like, 537
opponents of Promised Messiah
following the example of, 399
reason for disbelief in ‘Îsâ 380
reason for incurring displeasure 399

Jihād
false expectation of a Mahdi to wage 184

Jilānī, Ḥāḍrat Sayyed 'Abdul Qādir
couplets in praise of 306
spiritual kinship of, with Promised Messiah 306
stories about the supposed miracles of, 66

Judas Iscariot
apostacy of, 352

Kangra
Prophesied collapse of temples in, 244

Kāram Dīn 96
litigation by by, 143
unjust attacks of, 173
Vile intents of, in filing criminal charges 96

Kashmir
abundance of Hebrew names in 532
Hebrew origin of the word 532
Kashshāf
on the word tawaffī 504

Khalat
only used to connote death in Holy Quran 519

Khalq-e-Ākhar
defined 296
refers to sixth stage of development 328
sixth stage of development 290

Khīdr
killing of an innocent child based on revelation by, 154

Khyber
saying of the Holy Prophet before the victory over 244

Kingdom of Heaven
‘Īsā’s prophecy about 352

Knowledge
all love and fear is based on 406

La‘nat [Curse]
defined 72

Labīd
line of, received as revelation by Promised Messiah 330
meanings of the couplet of, 330
ode of, 242, 243

Lekh Ram
difference between, and Atham 255
false prophecy of, about Promised Messiah 64
fulfillment of prophecy of Promised Messiah about 64
insolance of, and vilification by, 255
visit to Qadian and irrational demands of 63

Light of Truth
fall like the shining sun upon the true faith 170

Lisānul-‘Arab
on the word tawaffi 504

Love
to cry and roam the wilderness, a sign of 189
visible manifestations of true, 190

Love of God
blessings of, 188
imbued in man’s nature 279
inebriation with, needed at fifth spiritual stage 323

Lovers of God
traits of, 190

Lustful desires
mercy of God needed to get rid of, 321
Maghfirat
defined 116

Manifestation of God
takes place on earth with the spiritual beauty of His true servants 301

Ma’rifat (Cognition)
leads to fear and love of God 405

Martyn Clark
evil intents of, in filing murder charges 96
murder case filed by 143

Maryam (Mary)
a pious woman 520

Means of communication
proliferation of, in this age 148

Messiah
coming of, is no surprise 168

Metaphors
abound in the discourse of God Almighty 345

Miracles
are never obvious 60
belief in, calls for the light of intuition 62
defined 59, 303
exaggerated accounts of, lead to idolatry 75
explanation of the nature of 60 irrational demands of deniers of 63
manifestation of, in Islam 5
need for 77
the entire Holy Quran is, 311
true nature of 75

Miraculous life
of the elect of God 85

Mi’raj (Spiritual Ascension)
Holy Prophet saw the bodies of all of the Prophets in 515

Miserliness
faith in providence of God needed to cure, 321
leaving of, at the third spiritual stage 284

Mission
to call out to everyone in every direction 184

Mistrust
of the pious is a sign of misfortune 202

Mother of Mūsā
revelation of, which put her child in danger 154

Mountains
renting asunder of, denotes an earthquake 356

Mount Sinai
breaking asunder of, by an earthquake 252

Movement
preservation and progress of Ahmadiyya, 254

Mūsā

drew attention to coming Prophet 4

Muslims
present day, have attributed to Jesus miracles in contravention of Holy Quran 66

Mutawaffika
by saying, God testified to natural death of Isā 510

Nabī (Prophet)
means one who receives knowledge from God as revelation and converse with Him 403

Nafkh
import of the use of the term in Holy Quran 134

Nūḥ’s (Noah’s) ark
invitation to board 203

Nūr (light)
upon the faces of true lovers of Allah 305
Old age
weakness of, destined for who live long enough 523

Oneness of God 44

Opponents of Promised Messiah
prophecy of defeat of 106
prophecy of drowning about 108

Paraclete 4

Paradise
a body is needed in, that is not elemental 515
consists of living according to will of God 81
glorious body bestowed upon those who enter 528
righteous servants of God enter Paradise without delay 514

Path of love
the surest way of meeting the Beloved Lord 194

People
characteristics of worldly, 15

Perfect believer
Gods miraculous support for, 328
guarding of prayers by, at sixth stage of spirituality 318
immaculate transformation of, 328

Perfect cognition
strengthens faith, good deeds, and actions according with the will of God 405

Physical and spiritual progress
parallelism between 263

Plague
a magnificent Sign 158

Pledges of faith
defined 290

Prayers
etiquettes for those who seek prayers of the men of God 310
Over-awed by early revelations 91
painful supplications of 160
pain of, for Islam 171
plots hatched against, 96
prophecy about the age of, 347
purpose of advent 401
reason for being called ‘Īsā 538
reason for being named Ādam 104
recipient of the names of earlier Prophets 171
relationship with God beyond the ken of common people 105
religious zeal among all people during time of, 155
significance of the name Ghulām Āḥmad, 483
solitary early life of, 159
spiritual journey of 137
title of Prophet 483
to be from within the Ummah 377
types of people reformed by, 151
was destined to suffer from two illnesses 500

Propagation
duties of a Prophet relate only to injunctions, not prophecies 372

Prophecies
characteristics of true, 338
entire truth of, only revealed upon fulfillment 332
essential characteristics of 346
fulfillment of, about financial support 96
fulfillment of, about honour, large number of visitors, and Āshāb-us-Ṣuffah 96
fulfillment of, about large number of visitors 96
fulfillment of, about security from people’s onslaughts 96
fulfillment of, of people thronging to me from far off 97
in general, do not specify the time 338
Prophets and Messengers can misunderstand the implications of 240
should be viewed for their extraordinary import 337
some, of every Prophet, remained doubtful to the disbelievers. 403
test of the truthfulness of 346
types of, 94
Use of past tense in, 243

Prophecies of wa’id
can be averted or delayed through repentance 255

Prophets
all are part of the ummah of the Holy Prophet 396
can make errors in interpretation of prophecies 332
cannot disobey God Almighty 116
ever concerned to fully discharge their obligation of propagation 361
opponents of, always deny their Signs and miracles 390
sandering and criticizing, is path to destruction 116

Providence of God
complete trust in, at the third spiritual stage 320

Purity
all blessings lie in 328
lies in seeking God’s pleasure 328

Qadian
obscurity of, before Promised Messiah’s advent 179
Qiyāmah
precise hour of, not disclosed to
man 349, 350

Quran. see Holy Quran

Rafa‘
means spiritual elevation after
death 513

Raḥimiyyat
defined 268
worship of God brings one under
the shade of, 279

Raḥmānīyyat
defined 268

Rajab Ali
amazement of, upon reading
Promised Messiah’s prophecies
104

Rajafa
defined 345

Rancour
of enemies against Promised
Messiah“a 170

Rational arguments
cannot fully cleanse the hearts
128

Rā‘ūn
meanings of 288, 299

Reason
cannot lead to certainty about
God’s existence 56

Redemption
false Christian concept of 67
truth about 67

Refrined vision
needed to recognize subtle
prophecies 402

Relationship with God
weaning away from vain activities,
a requite for 279

Religion
characteristics of true, 13
criterion for establishing the
truth of a, 3

must provide guidance 15
true, cannot be beholden to mere
reason 64
true, possesses distinguishing
Signs 83
truth of, depends upon congnition of God. 80

Religions [other than Islam]
filled with anecdotes, not light
13

Remembrance of God
as food for believers at the sixth
spiritual stage 294
continuously, at the sixth spiritual
stage 293
prayer as, 294
sharpens spiritual faculties 295

Renunciation of wealth
for the sake of God, in third stage
of spirituality 314

Revelation
light of, shines on Promised
Messiah like the sun. 392

Righteousness
complete fulfillment of require-
ment of, is a type of death 316
demands of, 160
of supplicant, the first condition
for acceptance of prayer 309
unsurpassed beauty of the colour
of, 189

Righteous people
in benevolent embrace of God,
like a beloved child in its moth-
ers lap 412
obstacles in the path of, removed
by God Almighty 57
who are, in the eyes of God 178

Saffron
coloured sheet denotes illness
500
**Salvation**
attained by the sincere through the righteous 58
humility in prayers and, 265
lies in being held captive by Allahs love 187

**Sayyed Aḥmad Barelī**
misguided notions about re-advent of, 386

**Scriptures**
contain Signs of distinction 82

**Second stage of the physical being**
described 278

**Self-annihilation**
in the fifth stage of spirituality 315
ultimate point of 297

**Self-negation**
is the first step on the spiritual journey 187

**Saʿadi, Shaikh**
couplet of, about spiritual beauty 306
parable in Bostān by, 258

**Signs**
are the mark of true piety 81
heavenly, must be shown by true religion 64
manifested among friends as well foes 403
the only reliable means of establishing truthfulness 115
thousands of, to affirm Promised Messiah’s truth 254

**Sin**
spread of, 21
things that stop one from, 7

**Sincere conviction**
condition for those who seek prayers of the elect of God 310

**Six stages**
affinity between, of physical and spiritual progress 263

**Sixth millennium**
both Jews and Christians await the second Messiah in, 381

**Soul**
philosophers’ speculations about 297
unfathomable nature of 297

**Spirit**
brings out the full beauty and splendour 299
refers to the personal love for God 300
role of, in uplifting spirituality 296

**Spiritual battle**
being fought between Promised Messiah’s and Satan 213

**Spiritual beauty**
makes one the beloved of the entire creation 301
of Nūh, Mūsū, and Holy Prophet 302
universal appeal and attractiveness of, 305

**Spiritual development**
in fifth stage of spirituality 325
six stages of, 263

**Spiritual ecstasy**
saves from gross pleasures 321

**Spiritual journey**
three conditions for 154

**Spiritual revolution**
destined to take place through Promised Messiah 107

**Sūrah al-ʿAṣr**
reckoning age of the world by letters of 348

**Sūrah al-Fātihah**
promises the bounty of converse with the Divine 405, 408

**Syria**
frequency of earthquakes in, 352
Ta'alluq billâh
defined 282

Takfîr [declarations of apostasy]
proliferation of, against Promised Messiah“ 174

Taqwâ
root of, 27
treading the finer paths of, in fifth spiritual stage 288

Tauhîd
essential requirements of belief in 84
perfect reality of 84

Tawaffî
dictionary meanings of, 504, 505
extensive research by Promised Messiah on the meaning of, 506
Promised Messiah’s challenge about the meaning of 510

Teaching
bestowed of perfect, 3
time of perfect 3

Thomas
Haḍrat ‘Isâ had chosen him to accompany him to Kashmir 531
meeting of, with ‘Isâ after crucifixion 517

Torâh 3
deficiency of, 4

Total devotion
at fifth spiritual stage 323

Traditions
possibility of error in 206

Trial
caused by uncertain inspirations 153

Tribulations
prophecy about 113

Trinity
intellectuals are bidding farewell to 168

True Beloved
Charm and loveliness of, 172

True dreams or revelations
granted to common people as a specimen 295

True faith
signs of 13

True piety
calls for the testimony of God 82

True religion
brings one out of darkness 404
must possess a distinguishing quality 83

True revelation
imparts full determination to carry it out 407

Truly righteous
must demonstrate Sins of divine support 83

Trusts and covenants
fulfilment of, in fifth stage of spiritual development 288
watching of, in fifth spiritual stage 324

Truth
criterion for establishing a religion’s, 3
deep roots of 107

Two-fold beauty
possessed by man 299

‘Umar
great grief of, upon the demise of the Holy Prophet 502
taqwa of, 500

Upper echelons of heaven
clamour caused in, by the anguished prayers of the beloveds of God 304

USA
early converts to Islam/Ahmadiyyat in, 132
Vain pursuits
discarding of, in second stage of spirituality 314
shunning all kinds of, in the second stage of spiritual development 277

Wealth
spending, as a trust from God Almighty 316

Western countries
zeal in, to establish contacts with our Community 132

Will of God
ultimate prevailing of, 127
Wisdom
underlying the delay in publication of Barāhīn-e-Ahmadiyya 2

Word of God
distinction between words of man and, 261
lofty meanings inherent in, 262

Works of God Almighty
miraculousness of, 262

Worldly love
transient nature, and ill-fatedness of 305

Yahyāʿ (John)
declared by Jesus to be Ilyās 60
Ḥadrat Iṣāʿ with, in the second heaven 513
represented the coming of Ḥadrat Ilyās 382

Yūnus (Jonah)
deferment of the chastisement in the prophecy of, 256

Yūsuf (Joseph)
similarity of Promised Messiah with, 124

Yuz Asaf
is none other than Ḥadrat Iʿsā 534
name of Israelite Prophet who migrated to Kashmir 533

Zakāt
as a means of self-purification 284
definition and benefits of, 283

Zalūm
defined 324

Zamakhsharī
called ‘Allāmah and Imām only for linguistic art 508
on meaning of tawaffī 508, 509